



















COLUMBUS LEAVING PALOS

[Frontispiece]



A

# GRAMMAR SCHOOL HISTORY

OF THE

## UNITED STATES

BY

L. A. FIELD

FORMERLY OF ATLANTA PUBLIC SCHOOLS; NOW OCCUPYING THE CHAIR OF LATIN  
AND LITERATURE IN AGNES SCOTT INSTITUTE, DECATUR, GA.



NEW YORK ·· CINCINNATI ·· CHICAGO  
AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

1585 380

COPYRIGHT, 1897, BY  
AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY.

---

FIELD'S GR. SCH. HIST.

W. P. I

E178  
1  
F45



## PREFACE

LONG experience in public school work has afforded the author ample opportunity for appreciation of the needs of children and teachers in our academies and common schools, and the GRAMMAR SCHOOL HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES has been prepared with special reference to those needs. To write a history free from sectional prejudice, brief and accurate in statement, though always attractive and interesting, and yet so simple in style as to be readily within the comprehension of the children who are to use it, has been the constant aim in its preparation.

Only leading facts have been presented; but the effort has been to give these in such a way as to make a clear picture in the mind of the pupil, and to keep the thread of the story unbroken by needless details. Cause and effect are carefully traced, showing how each event is the result of preceding incidents, becoming in turn an active cause in the chain of following events.

After an account of the early discoveries, the history of each of the English colonies to the beginning of the Revolution is concisely given. Then follows a description of the chief actions and results of that war, including an account of the condition of the country at its close and of the events which led to the adoption of the Federal Constitution. The development of the new government, and the rapid expansion of its territory, are described through successive presidential administrations. The steps leading to secession are carefully traced through the sectional controversies prior to the civil war, in order that the principles by which the men of the South were actuated may be clearly understood. The war between the states is treated in a brief and impartial manner. The closing period contains an account of the development of the South and West, of our wonderful advancement in invention, and of our progress in literature and art.

Progress in education, and in social and domestic life, is traced from one period to another. This breaks the monotony of the history of

war and politics, by bringing before us scenes in the home life and school life of long ago—in striking contrast with the domestic and educational machinery of to-day.

Sketches of the lives of the Presidents and other prominent men, explanatory statements, and interesting facts intended to cultivate a taste for historical research and the study of biography, are added in notes.

The arrangement into chapter, section, and paragraph has been carefully made, and the paragraph headings in heavy type will assist the teacher in topical recitations.

The dates are placed in the margin, and only those of the most important events are introduced into the text.

The pronunciation of every difficult proper name is given the first time it occurs, and a brief explanation follows each new term.

Questions for Study at the close of each chapter, and Topics for Review after the different eras, are intended to awaken the mental activity and interest of the pupil, and to help him to think for himself. The answers to some are not to be found directly in the book; but none of the questions require extended research, and they will give practice in outside study.

Much benefit may be derived from collateral reading, by which deeper insight into the subject and a wider range of information are acquired. A short, but suggestive, list for the use of pupils is added at the close of each period, and one carefully selected for the use of teachers is found at the close of the last period.

The author's thanks and acknowledgments are tendered to Professor Henry A. White of Washington and Lee University, Lexington, Virginia, and to Professor John R. Ficklen of Tulane University, New Orleans, for their valuable assistance in reading and criticising the manuscript.

The statements of the number of men engaged in the various battles of the late war have been taken from the "Official Records of the Rebellion," as far as they have been issued; also from the reports of General Walter H. Taylor, adjutant general of the Army of Northern Virginia, as published in his book, "Four Years with Lee."

# CONTENTS

## I—DISCOVERIES

CHAPTER	PAGE
I. COLUMBUS AND OTHER EARLY DISCOVERERS . . . . .	11
II. THE AMERICAN INDIANS . . . . .	22
III. SPANISH EXPLORERS . . . . .	25
IV. THE FRENCH . . . . .	31
V. ENGLISH ATTEMPTS AT COLONIZATION . . . . .	34
VI. THE DUTCH IN THE HUDSON RIVER . . . . .	38

## II—THE THIRTEEN COLONIES

I. THE SETTLEMENT OF VIRGINIA . . . . .	42
II. THE SETTLEMENT OF VIRGINIA (Continued) . . . . .	50
III. NEW ENGLAND COLONIES — Massachusetts . . . . .	55
IV. NEW ENGLAND COLONIES — Rhode Island . . . . .	63
Connecticut . . . . .	65
New Hampshire . . . . .	67
Vermont . . . . .	69
Maine . . . . .	69
V. CONFEDERATION OF NEW ENGLAND . . . . .	70
VI. MARYLAND . . . . .	75
VII. NEW YORK . . . . .	79
VIII. NEW JERSEY . . . . .	84
IX. PENNSYLVANIA . . . . .	85
X. DELAWARE . . . . .	88

CHAPTER	PAGE
XI. NORTH CAROLINA . . . . .	90
XII. SOUTH CAROLINA . . . . .	93
XIII. GEORGIA . . . . .	97
XIV. CONFLICTING FRENCH AND ENGLISH CLAIMS . . . . .	105
XV. THE FRENCH AND INDIAN WAR . . . . .	109

### III—THE AMERICAN REVOLUTION

I. CAUSES OF THE WAR . . . . .	125
II. BEGINNING OF THE CONTEST . . . . .	137
III. NEW YORK, TRENTON, AND PRINCETON . . . . .	152
IV. BRITISH INVASIONS FROM CANADA . . . . .	156
V. THE CONTEST FOR THE CAPITAL . . . . .	160
VI. INVASION OF THE SOUTH . . . . .	167
VII. AMERICAN SUCCESS IN THE SOUTH . . . . .	176
VIII. CLOSE OF THE WAR . . . . .	181
IX. THE CONFEDERATION . . . . .	193

### IV—THE UNITED STATES

I. ORGANIZATION AND DEVELOPMENT—Washington's Admin- istration . . . . .	215
John Adams's Administration . . . . .	223
Jefferson's Administration . . . . .	227
II. WAR OF 1812-5—Madison's Administration . . . . .	237
III. PEACE AND PROGRESS—Monroe's Administration . . . . .	251
J. Q. Adams's Administration . . . . .	260
IV. SECTIONAL DIFFERENCES—Jackson's Administration . . . . .	265
Van Buren's Administration . . . . .	272
Administrations of Harrison and Tyler . . . . .	274
V. WAR WITH MEXICO—Polk's Administration . . . . .	279



CHAPTER	PAGE
VI. SLAVERY AND STATE RIGHTS — Administrations of Taylor and Fillmore . . . . .	286
Pierce's Administration . . . . .	289
Buchanan's Administration . . . . .	292

## V — WAR BETWEEN THE STATES

(Lincoln's Administration)

I. BEGINNING OF THE WAR . . . . .	305
II. SECOND YEAR OF THE WAR . . . . .	316
West of the Mountains . . . . .	318
On the Coast . . . . .	322
The Peninsula Campaign . . . . .	324
Later Campaigns in the East . . . . .	328
III. THIRD YEAR OF THE WAR — In the East . . . . .	332
In the West . . . . .	336
IV. FOURTH YEAR OF THE WAR — Florida, Mississippi, and Louisiana . . . . .	340
"On to Richmond" . . . . .	341
Sherman in Georgia . . . . .	347
V. CLOSE OF THE WAR . . . . .	353

## VI — RECENT HISTORY

I. RECONSTRUCTION — Johnson's Administration . . . . .	363
Grant's Administration . . . . .	369
II. PROGRESS — Hayes's Administration . . . . .	377
Administrations of Garfield and Arthur . . . . .	380
III. LABOR TROUBLES AND THE TARIFF — Cleveland's First Administration . . . . .	386
Harrison's Administration . . . . .	392

## CHAPTER

## PAGE

## IV. THE SILVER QUESTION AND THE TARIFF — Cleveland's Sec-

ond Administration . . . . . 399

McKinley's Administration . . . . . 405

## V. DEVELOPMENT — LITERATURE — ART . . . . . 412

DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE . . . . . 1

CONSTITUTION OF THE UNITED STATES . . . . . 5

STUDIES ON THE CONSTITUTION . . . . . 20

INDEX . . . . . 23

## COLORED MAPS

## 1. THE COLONIES AT THE TIME OF THE FRENCH AND INDIAN

WAR . . . . . 110, 111

## 2. THE COLONIES AT THE TIME OF THE REVOLUTION . . . 140, 141

## 3. THE WAR OF 1812 . . . . . 240, 241

## 4. THE MEXICAN WAR . . . . . 278

## 5. THE WAR BETWEEN THE STATES . . . . . 312, 313

## 6. TERRITORIAL GROWTH OF THE UNITED STATES . . . 410, 411

# A GRAMMAR SCHOOL HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES



## I—DISCOVERIES

### CHAPTER I

#### COLUMBUS AND OTHER EARLY DISCOVERERS

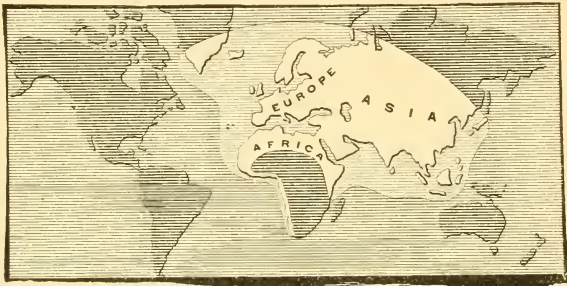
**1. America Unknown.**—Our maps of the world show us the vast continent of America, reaching from the frozen waters of the Arctic Ocean, far beyond the equator toward the south pole. A little more than four hundred years ago, the people of Europe and Asia knew nothing about this great country. They believed that the earth was flat, and that the ocean lay around its edges. Few of them had sailed very far into this ocean, and they could not tell what might be found beyond it. Many of the more learned and scientific men thought the earth might be a sphere; but the maps and charts drawn by them represented only parts of the Eastern Continent and of what is now called the Atlantic Ocean, because they believed there were only one continent and one ocean. Some of the Northmen, or Norsemen,—people who lived in Norway, Sweden, and Denmark, and spent much of their time upon the sea,—had



A CARAVEL

gone as far west as Iceland, and had made settlements there during the ninth century. Others had extended their voyages to Greenland. There were stories told, too, in those days, of ships that had been driven westward by storms, until they reached the shore of a country that had never before been visited.

**2. Vinland.** — In the royal library of Copenhagen are kept old pieces of parchment, yellow with age, which contain the stories of the old sea kings of the North. They were written by the monks about 1400 A.D., and are called "sagas." The saga of



THE WORLD KNOWN BEFORE 1492 IS IN WHITE

Leif (līf) tells the adventures of the son of Eric, an old Norwegian sea wanderer. Leif started (it is supposed to have been about the year 1000 A.D.) with thirty-five companions, and sailed westward over unknown waters in search of a new country, intending to begin new settlements. At length they reached a land, far to the southwest of Greenland, in which they found grapes in great abundance; from this circumstance they called the country Vinland. After spending some time upon its coast, they returned home. From their description of the place, some have supposed that they reached New England. Because of this story, the people of Norway claim to have been the real discoverers of North America.

Wales and Ireland also claim, in a similar way, the discovery of the New World.



But all evidence of such visits had vanished, the settlements in Greenland had disappeared, and even the story of these early voyages had been forgotten, long before the discoveries by which America was really made known to the world.

**3. India.** — During the fifteenth century, the merchants of Europe were engaged in a profitable trade with India. From that country they brought gold and pearls, rich silks, spices, and jewels. But the journey, in ships over the Mediterranean Sea and by caravans overland, was very difficult and consumed much time, and the Turks had begun to attack and rob the ships. For these reasons, the nations of Europe were seeking a shorter and easier way. Many voyages were undertaken in different directions in the hope of finding one, though many doubted whether it would ever be possible to reach India by water.

**4. Christopher Columbus,**<sup>1</sup> a native of Genoa in Italy, had spent much of his life upon the sea; he had sailed to the Madeira Islands and to the Canaries. His belief that the earth is round, and his careful study of the maps, assured him that India must be on the west of the unknown ocean, and that by sailing westward he would find that passage to India which so many were seeking.

**5. Preparations for the Voyage.** — But he could not go alone. Ships and men and supplies were necessary for this great undertaking. He applied to Portugal, and then



COLUMBUS

<sup>1</sup> **Christopher Columbus.** — It is generally believed that Christopher Columbus was born about 1436, or perhaps 1446, in the town of Genoa, one of the sea-

to Spain, and also to France, for aid, while he sent his brother to England on a similar errand. Long years were spent in efforts to convince the kings of these countries that a westward voyage would lead to India; but the geographers did not encourage him,<sup>1</sup> and the kings would not consent to give the money he needed. At last, his plan was explained to Isabella, the queen of Spain. She listened with deep interest. She saw how valuable such a discovery would be to Spain, and she determined that the effort should be made. Three vessels were fitted out for him and manned by more than one hundred sailors. The names of these caravels were the *Pinta* (peen'-tah), the *Santa Maria* (ma-re'-ah), and the *Nina* (ne'-nah).

**6. His Departure.** — At last, after many years, his toil and perseverance were to be rewarded. On Friday, August 3, 1492, he started out upon his great voyage of discovery. The last moments before his departure were spent in prayer for the guidance and protection of Heaven, and then he and his companions sailed out from Palos (pah'-los), a port of Spain, upon the untried sea. Their friends,

ports of Italy. He was the son of a wool comber, and the eldest of four children. Though his father was too poor to give him many advantages, he was sent to school long enough to learn something of mathematics and astronomy. When he was fourteen, he went to sea; the greater part of his life, from that time, was passed on shipboard, or in preparation for his great enterprise of discovery. His business, when on land, was making maps and charts. He saved a share of his small income for the support of his father and for the education of his younger brothers. He was devotedly pious, and believed that he had been chosen of God to "carry the true faith into the uttermost parts of the earth." During the eighteen years through which he labored and waited, from the beginning of his plans to their accomplishment, nothing turned him from his brave purpose.

<sup>1</sup> Some of the wisest men of those days could not believe that the earth is round. In opposition to the idea of Columbus, they said: "Is there any one so foolish as to believe that there are antipodes with their feet opposite to ours—people who walk with their heels upward and their heads hanging down; that there is a part of the world in which all things are topsy-turvy, where the trees grow with their branches downward, and where it rains, hails, and snows upward?" They imagined that the distant waters of the ocean were inhabited by hideous monsters, which devoured every living creature within their reach; and that the region of the torrid zone was so intensely heated that even the waves of the sea boiled upon the shores.

fearing they would never return, wept as the ships left the shore.

**7. The Voyage.** — A month passed before they reached the Canary Islands. There they were detained to repair one of the vessels, which had received an injury on the way. After leaving the Canaries, the sailors lost courage. Storms tossed their frail ships, and the waters widened between them and home. When they saw the needle of their compass turning toward the northwest, they believed they were lost upon a trackless sea, and were only moving onward to destruction. The trade wind, wafting them so steadily toward the west, day after day, was a new source of alarm. They were sure they could never sail back against it. The bravest among them shed tears; others uttered wild cries of grief and despair. When they entered the Sargasso Sea and found the waters for many miles around them covered with seaweed, they were in constant terror lest their vessels might be wrecked by striking against the shallow bottom, from which they supposed the weeds were growing. Columbus knew that they were anxious to turn back, and that some of them were desperate enough to throw him overboard if he refused to yield to their wishes; yet, firm in his purpose, he pushed bravely forward.

**8. Land.** — Days and nights of anxiety and dread dragged by. At length they saw birds flying before them, and pieces of timber and cane floating in the water. One of the sailors picked up a branch of fresh berries which had drifted near them. These things made them hope that land was not far off. Great excitement prevailed; each one was eager to catch the first glimpse of the shore. The sun went down, but still they watched and waited. About ten o'clock, Columbus saw before them the light of a fire shining over the water. A gun was fired from one of the other vessels. This signal had been agreed upon and was understood by all; it was followed by a shout of joy announcing that land was in sight.

**9. San Salvador.** — The morning of October 12<sup>1</sup> showed them a beautiful green island. Columbus, dressed in his scarlet uniform, stepped into a boat that had been lowered from the ship. He carried the Spanish flag in his hands, while his men rowed him to the shore. In gratitude for the success which had rewarded his anxiety and peril, he knelt to kiss the ground and give thanks to God.

Oct. 12,  
1492



THE LANDING OF COLUMBUS

Then drawing his sword, he took possession in the name of Spain. He named the island San Sal'vador<sup>2</sup> (Holy Savior).

**10. The Indians.** — The natives were wild men of a copper color. They flocked around the newcomers, staring with wonder. They supposed the ships to be huge sea birds, and the men, visitors from heaven. Columbus did not yet realize the importance of his discovery. He thought he had only found the country he sought. It was for this reason that he called the islands he visited the Indies, and the natives, Indians.

**11. Other Discoveries.** — For the double purpose of extending his discoveries and of searching for gold, Columbus sailed

<sup>1</sup> According to our calendar, October 21.

<sup>2</sup> One of the Bahama Islands, probably that now known as Watling Island. It was called by the natives Guä-nä-hä'-nñ.

beyond San Salvador and visited Cuba, Haiti, and several other of the West India Islands, but he did not reach the mainland.

**12. His Return to Spain.** — At their own request, a party of his men were left to found a colony on the island of Haiti. One of his vessels had been left a wreck on a wild coast; another, after it had spread its sails for Spain, was separated from him in a storm, and he was left with but one small ship in which to make the long voyage home. His arrival in the port of Palos produced the most intense joy among the people. Bells were rung throughout the town; all places of business were closed, that every one might take part in welcoming the famous seaman whom they had regarded as lost.

From Palos, Columbus hastened to Barcelo'na to report his discoveries to the king and queen. He had brought with him several of the natives, dressed in their savage costume and decked with their simple ornaments of gold. Many curiosities had also been collected — specimens of the productions of the island, and stuffed birds such as had never been seen in Spain. Hundreds crowded to see the procession as it journeyed to Barcelona. Near the city Columbus was met by a party of young Spanish noblemen, who accompanied him to the presence of the king and queen. Ferdinand and Isabella rose and extended their hands to greet him. This honor was never paid to any but men of rank or military fame.



FERDINAND AND ISABELLA

**13. His Second Voyage.** — Believing that he had reached the rich islands of India, and understanding only imperfectly what he had learned from the Indians, Columbus imagined that the New World contained the richest countries

1493



paring another expedition to make sure their claims to these newly discovered regions. Men of every class crowded to the ships, eager to embark under so renowned a captain, and hopeful of acquiring sudden wealth in the land of gold to which they believed he would lead them. Twelve hundred men sailed with him on his second voyage. With these he expected to strengthen the little Spanish colony that he had left on the island. But when they reached Haiti, few traces of the colony could be found; not a man remained to tell where his companions had gone. The little fort lay in ruins; but they landed near it and began to build houses. Their principal fort was afterwards at Santo Domingo, in Haiti, which they called Hispanio'la (Little Spain). Columbus spent three years in exploring other islands, after which he again returned home.

**14. South America discovered.** — Six years after his first discovery, he reached the coast of South America near the mouth of the Orinoco. This river was so much wider and  
1498 so much deeper than any stream that he had seen in the islands, that he felt sure that he had found the continent of Asia; he never knew that he had discovered the mainland of North America.

Columbus did not succeed in governing well the crowd of adventurers who went out with him. Gold was not found in the abundance which they had expected, and their disappointment made them unfriendly to him. While he was absent from Santo Domingo, the colonists revolted against his brother, who had been left in command. Charges were made against Columbus and sent to the king of Spain. To satisfy these complaints, an officer was sent out to take charge of the colony. The new governor ordered that Columbus should be arrested and sent home in chains. The king and the people were greatly displeased at this, and he was quickly released.

Though he was not made governor again, another fleet was fitted out for him, and he went on his fourth voyage. All the

money he had made had been spent in attempts to extend his discoveries, many of his friends had deserted him, and he returned home broken in health and spirits. May 20, 1506, he died at Valladolid; and, at his own request, his chains were buried with him.<sup>1</sup> 1506

**15. John Cabot.** — A great many navigators now became anxious to try the new route to India. John Cabot, an Italian sailor who lived in Bristol, England, thought India and China lay just beyond the islands Columbus had discovered, and he supposed the shorter route would be a northwest passage. Therefore, steering his ship to the northward, fourteen months before Columbus reached South America he arrived at Cape Breton Island, or, as some think, at a point on the coast of Labrador. He landed, set up a large cross to which he attached the flag of England, and took possession for the king. 1497

**16. Sebastian Cabot,** his son, went in command of the second voyage, and the next year anchored amidst icy waters near the cold, barren shores of Labrador. Turning his course southward, he sailed along the coast until he came to Albemarle Sound. There he found fish in great abundance; so numerous, he said, as sometimes to hinder the movements of the ships. He landed at several places, found many natives clothed with skins of animals, and saw large numbers of bears feeding upon fish.



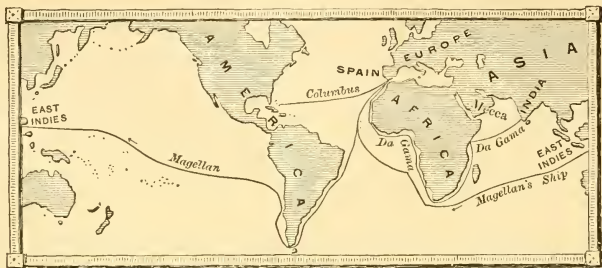
SEBASTIAN CABOT

This voyage is important because the claim of England to North America was afterwards based on the fact that the Cabots were the first to reach and explore the shores of the mainland.

<sup>1</sup> Columbus was first buried in Valladolid, but his body and that of his son were finally conveyed to Havana in Cuba.

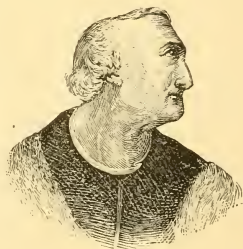
17. Vasco da Gama, a Portuguese sailor, about this time sailed around the southern point of Africa, and on to India.

1497-9 His ships returned laden with gold, pearls, silks, and spices.



HOW COLUMBUS FOUND AMERICA IN TRYING TO REACH INDIA, HOW GAMA SAILED TO INDIA, AND HOW MAGELLAN'S SHIP CIRCUMNAVIGATED THE EARTH

18. Naming America. — While the lands discovered by Columbus and the Cabots were still believed to be parts of Asia, an Italian navigator, Amerigo Vespucci (a-mā'-rē-gō ves-poot'-che) (his name in Latin is Americus Vesputius) made several voyages to the New World. In letters to one of his friends, he gave interesting accounts of his voyages. After Gama had discovered the route around the Cape of Good Hope, the king of Portugal fitted out a fleet to sail west to India. It sailed farther



AMERIGO VESPUCCI

1499 west than was intended, and reached the coast of Brazil. The commander sent one of the vessels back to Lisbon to tell the news. It carried a number of brilliantly colored paroquets, and one of the names given to the new country on the maps after that was "The Land of Paroquets."

This discovery aroused so much interest that, in 1501, an expedition was sent out to explore the new coast, and Amer-



icus was employed as pilot. The ships reached South America and sailed along the coast from Cape St. Roque to the La Plata River. This proved the existence of a continent before unknown. Geographers had 1501 called Europe, Asia, and Africa the three parts of the earth. They now called this new southern continent the Fourth Part. Afterwards Waldseemüller, a German professor, published an essay on geography, with which he printed the letters of Vespucci. He said this Fourth Part ought to be called America in honor of Vespucci. This name appeared on the maps of South America, and in time was extended to the northern portion of the continent also. In this way Vespucci received the honor which should have been given to Columbus.

### QUESTIONS FOR STUDY

What name would you have given to the New World? Give your reasons. What did the nations of Europe gain by the discovery of America? Which nation reaped the most immediate benefit? Who was to blame for the injustice done Columbus? How has the world recently shown its appreciation of his great achievement? Was England's claim to North America a just one?

Draw a map, and trace the voyage of each discoverer.

Make a table of the discoveries about which you have learned. Use the following form :

EARLY DISCOVERIES

DATE	LAND DISCOVERED	NAME OF DISCOVERER	CLAIMED BY WHAT NATION	RESULTS

## CHAPTER II

## THE AMERICAN INDIANS

**19. Appearance.** — The natives whom Columbus and the explorers who followed him found in this new country were copper-colored people, with very bright dark eyes, and straight black hair. They were very different from the inhabitants of Europe.

**20. Dress.** — The English settlers became acquainted with the Indians who lived in what is now the eastern and central portions of the United States. They wore little clothing; their only covering was made of the skins of wild animals. For the feet they made loose shoes of buckskin, which they called “moccasins.” The warriors painted themselves and decked their heads with feathers. They were fond of bright colors and ornaments, and wore beads made of shell. These shell beads, which they called “wampum,” they also used as money.



BELT OF WAMPUM



INDIAN MOCCASINS

**21. Language.** — They had no written language, and had never seen books. The words they spoke were entirely new to the Europeans. Many of the geographical names in our country are the names originally given by the Indians.

**22. Customs.** — These red men lived by hunting and fishing, and never remained long in one place. Their houses were called “wigwams.” They were made by bending saplings or poles together and fastening them at the top with a piece of bark. The skins of animals were then stretched over the poles; an opening was left at the top to allow the smoke from

the fire to pass out. These wigwams were often grouped together in villages.

The men spent their time chiefly in the chase and in the wars which the tribes were constantly waging with each other; they left all the work in the field and in the wigwam to be done by the women, whom they called "squaws." The squaw was indeed a servant for her husband. Besides building the home which sheltered him, she gathered the wood for the fires, cooked his meals, and cultivated the corn and beans. When wandering from place to place, she carried the burdens, while he hunted and kept watch for enemies.



INDIAN WIGWAMS



INDIAN WARRIORS

The habits of their wild life taught the Indians many things that seem wonderful to us. They could travel in a straight course through the pathless forest, with nothing to guide them but the sun, or the stars, or the moss and bark on the trees. They had so trained themselves to listen for unusual sounds that it was difficult to surprise them. They could discover when they were pursued by placing one ear on the ground and listening for the sounds of footsteps. The Span-

iards tried to do this, but their untrained ears could not detect a sound.

**23. Weapons.** — They had attained wonderful skill in the use of the bow and arrow. Their arrowheads were made of sharpened pieces of flinty stone, or sometimes of bone. The tomahawk also was a weapon in common use among them; it was a kind of stone hatchet with a wooden handle about a yard in length. Their knives were made of sharp stone or shell. Besides these, their warriors also carried a sharp wooden spear. They were trained for war from childhood, and were taught to suffer pain without uttering a groan or shedding a tear.

**24. Religion.** — They believed in a Great Spirit and did not worship idols. When an Indian died, they supposed he had gone to a better hunting ground, and they buried with him his tomahawk, his bow and arrows, and his pipe, all of which they believed he would need in that distant country.

**25. The Totem.** — Each tribe was called by its own name, and governed by its own chief, or “sachem.” A tribe was a collection of clans — a clan meaning one large family, or a group of families. It was the custom for each clan to select a tutelar, or protecting, god, called the “totem.” This was usually some beast, bird, or insect which they tattooed or painted upon their bodies, and from which they took their names, as Bear, Wolf, Eagle, Turtle, Spider. The tribes that lived longer in one place had their totem poles, in which they took great pride. This pole, twenty feet in height, stood in front of the Indian’s home. It was covered with strange carvings and paintings, which told the wealth, social standing, and, in many cases, the history of the family. The principal tribes were the Algonquins, the Iroquois (Ir’-o-kwoi), the Cherokees, and the Dakotas.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> **The Aztecs.** — The Spaniards found in Mexico a half-civilized tribe who called themselves Aztecs, and who were greatly superior to the roving Indians farther north. They had built several cities, in which were castles of stone; the remains of several of their large pyramids may still be seen. Unlike most of the other natives, they had made some advancement in the arts of stonecutting, basket making, and weaving.

**The Peruvians.** — In South America the explorers met with a similar race. They were called Peruvians, and were even more cultivated than the Aztecs. Their wealth in gold and silver was immense. They had built paved roads

## QUESTIONS FOR STUDY

Describe an Indian whom you have seen. To what tribe did your state once belong? Are there now any signs that your state was once inhabited by Indians? Mention some of our geographical names derived from their language. Give the meanings of some of them.

## CHAPTER III

## SPANISH EXPLORERS

**26. Wonders in the New World.**—The nations of Europe soon endeavored to make the discoveries beyond the sea profitable, by fitting out fleets to sail in search of the gold which they imagined to be so abundant there. Every man who visited the New World returned with something strange to tell, or curious to show. One story told of a king who lived in a city where the streets were paved with precious stones,

through their country, and terraced and irrigated their lands. They cultivated cotton, corn, potatoes, and cocoa, and understood the arts of dyeing, spinning, and weaving. Their temple of the sun contained an untold amount of golden ornaments and vessels. The Spaniards treated these peaceable people with great cruelty, and robbed them of their gold. Remains of the work done by the Peruvians may still be found in Peru.

**The Mound Builders.**—Throughout the Mississippi valley were found mounds of earth of various shapes and sizes, upon which were growing large trees—a proof that they must have been thrown up many years ago. Some are round and smooth, others are square, and some have the shape of a serpent or other animal. Some of them are miles in extent, and it is supposed that they were fortifications. The bones of men, pottery, copper axes, shell beads, and stone pipes and arrow-heads have been dug from them.

No one knows who were the builders. Some believe that they were ancestors of the Indians, others think that they were of a different and superior race. As we know no other name for them, we call them the Mound Builders.



A SERPENT MOUND

and the roofs were made of gold. Another told of a wonderful fountain whose waters would restore youth and health to those who bathed in them. All this made the daring navigators of those times very eager to know more of this distant country. The Spaniards, who had already made settlements on the West India Islands, went farther westward; some of them even reached the continent and established a colony on the Isthmus of Darien.



COSTUMES OF SPANISH  
EXPLORERS

**27. Ponce de Leon** (pon'-thā dā lā-on'), a brave Spanish soldier who went out with Columbus on his second voyage, later was made governor of Puerto Rico. But he had lost his office as governor, and was growing old. Hoping to prolong his life and increase his fortune, he sailed in search of

1513

the fabled fountain of youth. The land, when he reached the shore, was covered with the green leaves and bright flowers of early spring. From "*pascua florida*," the Spanish for Easter Sunday, the day on which he arrived, he named the beautiful country Florida. Vainly he searched among the streams and groves for the spring of youth; his fruitless labors brought only disappointment, and he returned home. Eight years afterwards, he again visited Florida. This time he was wounded by an Indian arrow and went back to Spain to die.

**28. Discovery of the Pacific.** — A company of Spaniards, led by Vasco Nuñez (noon'-yēth) de Balboa, crossed the Isthmus of Darien in 1513. After a long, weary march under the scorching sun of a tropical summer, they came to a range of mountains, beyond which, they had been told, lay a country rich in gold. Balboa climbed up the rugged slope, and from the top looked down upon the Pacific Ocean. He had made a discovery almost as great as that



made by Columbus. He was now convinced that he had not been exploring a part of Asia, but that he was upon a new continent. His companions joined him, and together they went down to the shore. There Balboa, with his flag and his sword in his hands, rushed into the water, and claimed all the countries touched by the waters of the new ocean for Spain. He called it the great South Sea.<sup>1</sup>

**29. Efforts to conquer Florida.** — A great deal of money was expended upon expeditions for the conquest of Florida. It was then thought to be an island rich in gold, its rivers glittering with diamonds; but it was known to be inhabited by savage tribes who would resist every attempt to take possession of the country. For years these efforts failed. Many of the Spanish soldiers who were sent to Florida were killed by the natives, many were lost in a storm which wrecked one of the fleets, and but few ever returned.<sup>2</sup>

**30. Fernando de Soto,**<sup>3</sup> who had been appointed governor of Cuba and Florida by the king of Spain, hoping to meet

<sup>1</sup> **Ferdinand Magellan**, a Portuguese sailor, started from Spain in 1519, and, after sailing around South America through the strait that has received his name, crossed the ocean, which he called Pacific because of its freedom from storms during his voyage. He was killed by the natives on the Philippine Islands; but one of his ships continued the voyage westward, and reached the port he had left in Spain, after an absence of three years. This voyage proved the roundness of the earth and discovered the western route to India.

<sup>2</sup> **Coronado.** — About this time, the Spaniards conquered the rich country of Mexico. Afterwards (1540), Coronado was sent by the governor of Mexico, in command of a force of Spaniards and Indians, to search for the Seven Cities of Cibola. They had heard that these cities, in the country north of them, contained a vast amount of wealth in gold and silver, such as had been found in Peru and Mexico. Coronado explored the country as far north as the 40th parallel, probably to some point in Kansas or Nebraska, but failed to find anything but Indian villages.

<sup>3</sup> **Fernando (Ferdinand) de Soto**, the son of a Spanish nobleman, had joined several expeditions to the New World; in 1532, he accompanied the famous Pizarro to Peru, as one of the leading officers in his army. With the vast amount of gold which he obtained in that conquered country, he returned to Spain. There he married and lived in a most luxurious style, and he and his bride were received among the honored guests at the court of Charles I. But he could not long remain quietly at home, while there was so much abroad to tempt his love of adventure. The king allowed him to undertake the conquest of Florida, which he did at his own expense.

with better success, made preparations for again invading Florida. Many of his soldiers were sons of the wealthiest nobles of Spain, and the ships were laden with everything that money could provide for their comfort. Besides a bountiful supply of provisions and arms, tools were purchased for



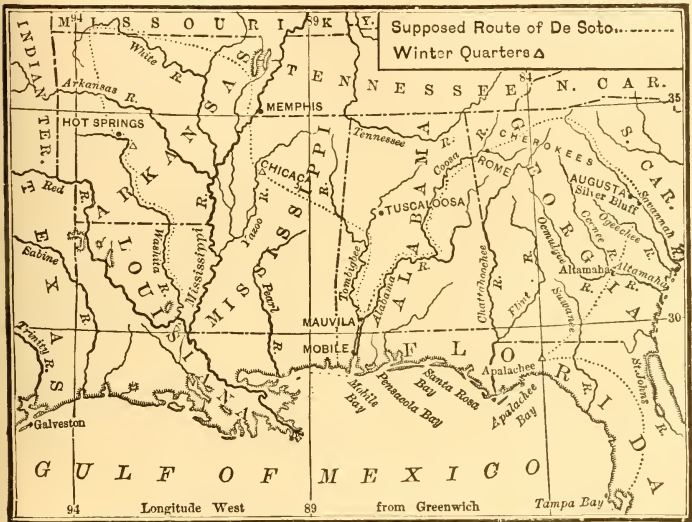
SOTO AND HIS CAVALIERS

the carpenters and smiths. A herd of swine and a pack of bloodhounds were also taken on board. The swine were to be driven along the route; the bloodhounds were trained for recovering captives who might escape.

With six hundred men and three hundred horses, Soto landed at Tampa Bay, Florida. The angry natives lurked in the groves through which the army marched, wondering at the strange sight. Trumpets were sounding and banners streaming; the prancing horses and shining spears



were a new terror to the frightened savages, whose arrows glanced harmlessly from the bright steel armor of the cavaliers. Indian captives guided them with repeated promises of gold, from one tribe to another, through Florida,<sup>1</sup> Georgia, and Alabama to the northwest. After two years of slow and toilsome



MAP OF SOTO'S SUPPOSED ROUTE

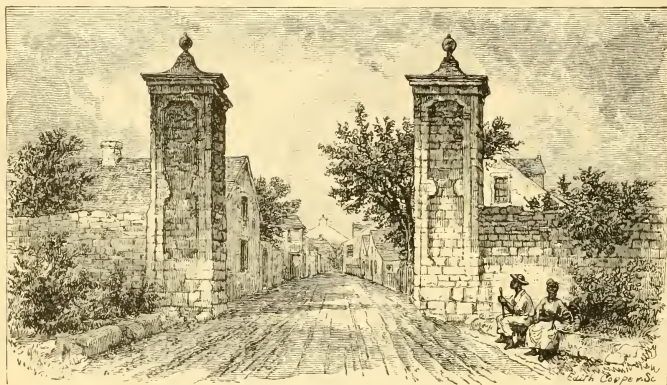
marching, they arrived at the banks of the Mississippi, near where is now the city of Memphis. Another month was spent in wandering still farther westward, and then, worn out by repeated failures, they retraced their footsteps to the Mississippi. While they were encamped there, Soto died. His companions buried him beneath the waters of the great river he had discovered.

1541

<sup>1</sup> Soto's route has been described by historians as follows: In 1539, he left his ships in Tampa Bay, while he marched north and west through Florida, toward Apalachee Bay. After spending the winter near that part of the coast, with Indian guides he continued his journey through Georgia. From the Ogeechee River, he turned his course to the northwest, leading his army

The survivors built boats in which they sailed down to the mouth of the Mississippi, and, following the coast southwestward, reached the Spanish settlements in Mexico.

**31. St. Augustine.** — Menendez (mā-něn'-deth) made the year 1565 famous by founding St. Augustine, the oldest city in the United States. The old town looks like a foreign city yet, and remains of the old Spanish fortifications may still be seen there.



OLD GATE AT ST. AUGUSTINE

**32. Santa Fé.** — The Spaniards traveled into the central part of the country, and reached the banks of the Rio Grande.

1582 There they found the natives living in houses built of stone or sun-dried brick, some of which were four stories high. These differed from the other Indians in many respects; their clothing was made of leather and cotton.

through the northern portion of the state to the sources of the Savannah and the Chattahoochee. Upon the top of one of the highest mountains in Murray County, Georgia, have been found the remains of an old fort, which is supposed to have been built by Soto's men, and the mountain is called Fort Mountain, from the old fort. From north Georgia, he turned southward, through Alabama, until he came to an Indian village, on the Alabama River, called Mauvila (Mobile). There the Spaniards engaged in battle with the Indians, and nearly destroyed the town. After this, he marched north and northwest until he arrived at the Mississippi.

Because of the rich discoveries of silver made there, other Spaniards followed, and a town was built which they called Santa Fé (fâ). It is less than twenty years younger than St. Augustine.

### QUESTIONS FOR STUDY

What strong attraction drew men to America? Why was Balboa's discovery important? What was the object of Soto's expedition? What classes of men accompanied him? Trace on the map his line of march.

## CHAPTER IV

### THE FRENCH

**33. Verrazano.** — After John Cabot's return from the New World, his accounts of the immense shoals of fish that he had seen interested the people of other countries, and French fishing vessels from Brittany in France began to gather around Newfoundland. It was they who gave to Cape Breton Island its name. Verrazano (ver-rä-tsä'-no), an Italian from Florence, went to France, and became a sailor. During the war between France and Spain, he became noted among the French corsairs, or pirates, who sailed against the Spanish. He captured, on its way from Mexico to Spain, a ship which Cortes had sent laden with spoils worth one and a half million dollars. He reached the shore of North Carolina, and before his return



VERRAZANO

1524

explored the coast as far north as Nova Scotia. He gave the country the name of New France; it was afterwards called Canada.

**34. Cartier.** — Ten years later, another Frenchman, Jaques Cartier (kar-tyā'), reached on St. Lawrence Day a gulf which he named the Gulf of St. Lawrence. He extended his discoveries as far as the present sites of Quebec and  
 1534-41 Montreal, then occupied by Indian villages. He built a fort at Quebec, but one winter in that severe climate was enough, and he returned in the spring to his home in sunny France. His departure left all America, north of Mexico, without a white settlement. In 1541 he made another unsuccessful attempt to plant a settlement.

**35. The Huguenots.** — Twenty years passed before another company of Frenchmen crossed the Atlantic. In 1562, a band of French Protestants, called Huguenots, landed near Port  
 1562-5 Royal, South Carolina, and built a fort which they called Carolina, in honor of their king, Charles, or Carolus, IX. They were so much pleased with the country that they desired to build homes around the fort. Twenty-six of them offered to remain while the fleet returned for supplies. The soil, though rich and productive, would not yield a harvest without labor. The ships did not come back and there was no escape from starvation when their provisions should be exhausted. They built a small vessel, loaded it with their goods, and turned toward France. They would have been lost but for an English vessel which rescued them from shipwreck. Thus this attempt at settlement failed; but the name of the fort has descended to the state upon whose soil it stood.

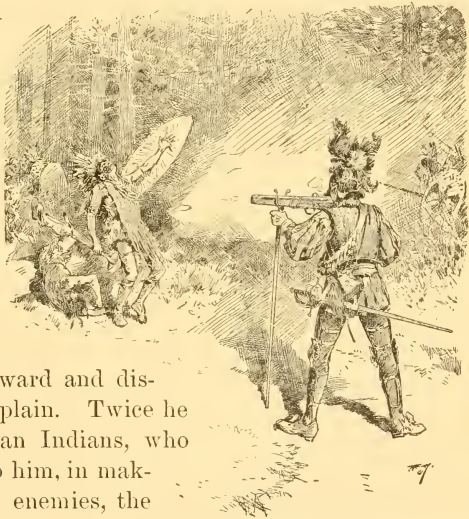
Two years after the return of these colonists to France, another colony of the same people, sent out by Coligny<sup>1</sup> (kō-lēn'-ye), settled in Florida, and built a fort on the St. Johns River. The next year they were joined by several hundred more colonists, who followed them from France because of the persecution which they had suffered there. But the Spaniards

<sup>1</sup> Coligny was the leader of the Huguenots in the civil war between the Catholics and Protestants in France. He proposed the plan of founding a colony of Frenchmen in America, that they might escape the persecution which they suffered at home.

would not allow these French settlers to remain in the territory claimed by their government, and Menendez was sent with Spanish troops to drive them out. He murdered nearly all of the French people at the fort. Only a few escaped.

**36. Acadia.** — In 1603 the French king granted to De Monts (mong), who also was one of the Huguenots, control of the fur trade in all the country between the Delaware River and Cape Breton. It in time received the name of Acadia. 1603

A few years later Champlain<sup>1</sup> built forts on the St. Lawrence River, and the Frenchmen who came with him built homes around them. They gradually traveled out into the wilderness, and established trade in furs with the Indians, which became very profitable. Champlain selected the site and laid the foundations of the city of Quebec. He then traveled southward and discovered Lake Champlain. Twice he assisted the Canadian Indians, who had been friendly to him, in making war upon their enemies, the Iroquois, of New York. He did not go very far into their country, but he succeeded in arousing the bitter hatred of that powerful tribe. Consequently, the French explorers and French



CHAMPLAIN FIGHTING THE INDIANS

<sup>1</sup> **Samuel Champlain**, a native of France, was among the first to establish French settlements in America; he was afterwards appointed lieutenant general of Canada by the French government. He spent his last days in the land he labored to win for France, and died in Canada in 1635.



trading parties were obliged to confine themselves to the region north of the Great Lakes, and along the Mississippi and its tributaries.

### QUESTIONS FOR STUDY

Draw an outline map, and mark the discoveries of Champlain. Why was Quebec chosen as a place for settlement? What do you think of Champlain's character? Why were fish so abundant near Newfoundland?

## CHAPTER V

### ENGLISH ATTEMPTS AT COLONIZATION

**37. North America.** — It was a long time before the name of North America appeared upon the maps of the world. The new country was called Florida by the Spaniards, and New France (or Canada) by the French. England still asserted her claims because the Cabots had been the first to reach the continent; yet, though many of her seamen had been out upon expeditions to explore its coasts, eighty years passed before Englishmen decided to make settlements in the New World.

**38. Sir Humphrey Gilbert**<sup>1</sup> was the first to attempt to take possession of this vast territory. He had read accounts of the immense shoals of codfish that had been seen  
1579 near Newfoundland, and he thought more would be gained by establishing colonies to fish and trade in the New World, than by continuing the search for gold. After obtaining permission from Queen Elizabeth, he and his half-brother, Sir Walter Raleigh, sailed from England to carry out these

When Sir Humphrey Gilbert obtained a charter to explore the new country claimed by England, Queen Elizabeth did much to aid and encourage him. She said she wished "as great good-hap and safety to his ships" as if herself were there "in person." She also sent him a golden trinket in the form of an anchor guided by a lady, with the request that it should be worn by the brave commander of the fleet.

new plans; but their voyage was unsuccessful, and they returned.

New preparations were made for Gilbert to go again. In 1583 he landed on the coast of Newfoundland and took possession in the name of the queen of England. From this island he sailed southward. Two of the largest vessels of the fleet were wrecked, and Gilbert embarked in a small frigate which proved unfit for the sea. During a violent storm his vessel disappeared; but one ship returned to England with the news of his sad fate.<sup>1</sup>

**39. Sir Walter Raleigh**<sup>2</sup> began making arrangements to send out another party of Englishmen to America. He obtained the right to settle them in any portion of the country lying between the parallels of 33° and 45° north latitude. This embraced all the land between that claimed by the French on the north and by the Spaniards on the south. He sent out two vessels to explore this coast. Their commanders returned with pleasing accounts of the country. It was named Vir-



RALEIGH

ginia, in honor of Queen Elizabeth, who was never married and for that reason was called the "Virgin Queen."

1584

<sup>1</sup> On the voyage he was heard to say, "Be of good heart, my friends, we are as near to heaven by sea as by land."

<sup>2</sup> Sir Walter Raleigh was famous in England during the reign of Elizabeth as soldier and mariner, courtier and statesman. For seventeen years of that time he was a member of Parliament. He was a favorite of the queen; she rewarded him richly for his services by granting him valuable estates, containing in all about twelve thousand acres. He was one of the commanders of the English fleet which conquered the "Invincible Armada" of Spain;

40. **The Roanoke Colonies.** — In 1585 Raleigh sent out a colony, expecting the men to cultivate the soil and trade with the natives in the territory called Virginia. This colony, consisting of one hundred and eight men, landed on Roanoke Island. After their departure, Raleigh prepared supplies which he sent forward without waiting to hear that they were in need. But before these supplies reached them, the Indians became unfriendly, the stock of provisions ran low, and when an English fleet approached the shore, the colonists persuaded the commander to take them back to England.<sup>1</sup>

41. The next year, a company of families was sent out by Raleigh, with Captain John White. These also settled on Roanoke Island. To avoid the trouble which the former colony had suffered, Governor White sailed to England for supplies, but Spain and England being then at war, he was unable to return. Even the ships sent out by Raleigh did not reach them. Governor White was absent three years; he left with the settlers his little granddaughter, Virginia Dare, the first child of English parents born in America.

after his return she made him one of the honored knights of her kingdom. While quite a young man he was under the command of Coligny, in France, by association with whom he became interested in plans for forming settlements in America. He made two voyages to Guiana, in South America, and expended two hundred thousand dollars of his own money for the support of colonies in America.

The Spaniards hated Raleigh, and James I, wishing to preserve the friendship of Spain, arrested Raleigh on a false charge of treason. He was tried and convicted. During the thirteen years of his imprisonment in the Tower, he wrote the "History of the World." He was at last condemned to death. On the scaffold he asked the executioner to show him the ax. After touching its edge and kissing the steel, he said: "This gives me no fear. It is a sharp and far more sure to cure me of all my diseases." He begged earnestly for the prayers of all who heard him, then knelt with his head upon the block; his lips were moving in prayer while he waited for the fatal blow.

**Tobacco and Potatoes.** — Although Columbus and his men were the first who saw tobacco and potatoes used by the Indians, the colonists sent out by Sir Walter Raleigh are said to have been the first to bring these articles into use in England.

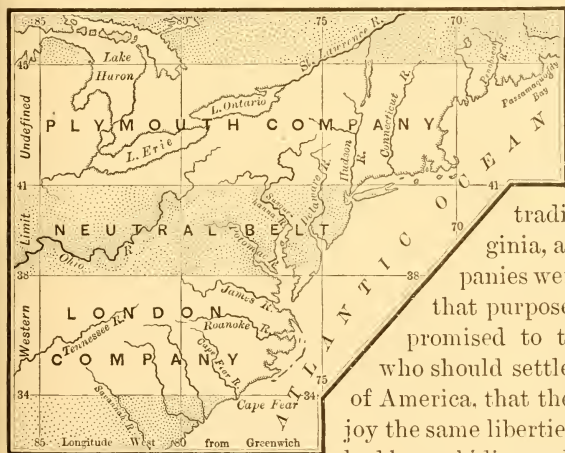
A story has been told of Raleigh that once, while he sat smoking in his room, a servant entered and saw the smoke. Supposing that his master was being smothered by fire, he emptied a mug of beer upon him to quench the flames, and then ran for help.



When he returned he could find no trace of the colony he had left, except the word "Croatan" carved on a tree.

**42. The London and Plymouth Companies.**—Nearly thirty years passed after Gilbert's first expedition, before any permanent settlements were made in Virginia. The efforts for colonizing the country had accomplished little during the reign of Queen Elizabeth, yet the way had been opened for new colonists to push forward the work with better results.

English sailors and fishermen continued to visit the shores of America; cargoes of furs, for which the hatters of Europe paid high prices, and of sassafras root, which was then much used for medicine, were brought back and sold at a fine profit. A number of merchants and wealthy men in England thought



KING JAMES'S GRANTS

they could increase their fortunes by making settlements and

trading in Virginia, and two companies were formed for that purpose. The king promised to the colonists who should settle in this part of America, that they should enjoy the same liberties "as if they had been abiding and born within this our realm of England."

King James divided the country that had been given to Gilbert and Raleigh into two portions. The northern division, between Newfoundland and the Hudson River, was to belong to the Plymouth Company, and was called North Virginia. The southern portion, between the Potomac and Cape Fear rivers, was given to the London Company, and it was known

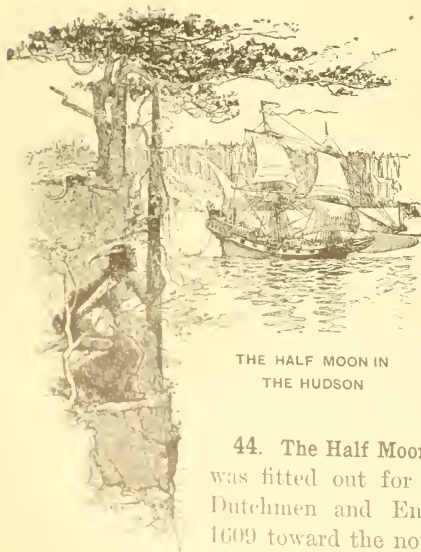
as South Virginia. Both companies were allowed to settle in the region extending from the Hudson to the Potomac, upon the condition that neither should make a settlement within one hundred miles of any colony begun by the other. These privileges were secured to the companies by written charters, or grants, signed by the king.

### QUESTIONS FOR STUDY

What was Sir Humphrey Gilbert's plan for making America a source of profit to England? What first awakened Raleigh's interest in colonization? What were Raleigh's traits of character? What American products did he introduce into Great Britain? Give your definition of a charter and tell something of its value.

## CHAPTER VI

### THE DUTCH IN THE HUDSON RIVER



THE HALF MOON IN  
THE HUDSON

#### 43. Henry Hudson.

—The people of Holland, who were called the Dutch, had built a great many ships, and these ships were sent to trade in different parts of the world. Henry Hudson, an English sailor, was employed by those people to take command of one of their trading vessels.

44. The Half Moon, a ship of eighty tons, was fitted out for him. With a crew of Dutchmen and Englishmen he sailed in 1609 toward the northeast. He was on his

way to China, but finding the route closed by ice, he concluded to turn to the west and seek an opening through North America. A storm drove his vessel among the French fishermen on the banks of Newfoundland. A few days later, 1609 he stopped in a harbor of Maine to mend his torn sails and to cut a new mast from the woods. Then starting anew on his voyage, he sailed southward. While the Frenchmen with Champlain were rowing their boats on Lake Champlain, Henry Hudson approached Sandy Hook.

**45. The Hudson River.** — A crowd of Indians stood on the southern point of Manhattan Island, where New York city now stands, and watched with wonder the coming of the ship. Hoping to find a strait through which he might reach the Pacific, Hudson passed up the river which has received his name, to a point a little north of Albany. Along the banks the Indians met him with valuable furs, which he bought from them. On his return, the English government detained his ship, claiming that his services belonged to his own country. He sent to Holland an account of his voyage and discoveries.<sup>1</sup>

**46. Conflicting Claims of the European Nations.** — Because of the discoveries of Columbus, the Spaniards claimed all the continent of America except Brazil, which had been yielded to the Portuguese. They had explored through to the Pacific the southern part of what is now the United States. To this they laid special claim, and gave it the name of Florida.

The French claimed the region about the Gulf of St. Lawrence, and afterwards extended their possessions along the Great Lakes and down the Mississippi River to its mouth.

By right of the discoveries made by the Cabots and later

<sup>1</sup> **Hudson's Last Voyage.** — On another voyage, Henry Hudson discovered the great bay of North America, where he spent some time trying to find, in the northwest, the passage to India he had sought so long. The severities of a winter amidst the ice of those northern waters made his men discontented and rebellious. They seized him and his son, with eight others, and, placing them in an open boat, left them to perish. Cold and hunger ended the life of the brave Hudson upon the bay that perpetuates his name.

explorers, the English claimed all the land from Labrador to Florida, as far west as the Pacific.

The share which the Dutch appropriated to themselves was the Hudson valley, and the country from the Delaware to Cape Cod.

### QUESTIONS FOR STUDY

How did the claims of European nations conflict? What part of America does Spain now own? What part belongs to England? to France? to Holland? Has Russia any possessions in America? Which are the most prosperous portions of America? Why?

Draw a map and locate the places explored. Make a table of the explorers of whom you have learned, using the following form :

#### EARLY EXPLORERS

DATE	NATION	NAME OF EXPLORER	EXTENT OF EXPLORATION

### TOPICS FOR REVIEW

1. Give a sketch of the life of Columbus, telling about his discoveries.
2. Give an account of the voyages of the Cabots.
3. Tell the events connected with the discovery of Florida.
4. Tell the circumstances under which the Pacific was first seen.
5. Describe the travels and discoveries of Soto.
6. Describe the appearance and habits of the American Indians.
7. Give the history of the early French explorers and settlers.
8. Write a sketch of the life of Sir Walter Raleigh, giving an account of his efforts to found colonies in America.
9. What part had the Dutch in the exploration of the New World?
10. Write an account of the settlement of the two oldest towns of the United States.

### CHRONOLOGICAL TABLE OF IMPORTANT EVENTS (1000-1609)

*English Sovereigns*

EDWARD II

1000. Leif Ericsson discovered Vinland.

## HENRY VII

- 1492. Columbus discovered America, October 12.
- 1497. John Cabot discovered the mainland of America at Labrador or Cape Breton Island.
- 1497-99. Vasco da Gama found the way to India around the Cape of Good Hope.
- 1498. Columbus reached the mainland of South America.
- 1499. Amerigo Vespucci made a voyage to South America.

## HENRY VIII

- 1513. Ponce de Leon discovered Florida.
- Balboa discovered the Pacific Ocean.
- 1519-22. One of Magellan's ships circumnavigated the earth.
- 1524. Verrazano explored part of the North American coast, and named the country New France.
- 1534. Cartier entered the Gulf of St. Lawrence.
- 1539-42. Soto explored a great part of the Southern States, and discovered the Mississippi in 1541.
- 1540-41. Coronado explored New Mexico.

## ELIZABETH

- 1562. French Huguenots attempted to settle at Port Royal, South Carolina.
- 1564. French Huguenots settled on St. Johns River, Florida, but the settlement was destroyed by Menendez in 1565.
- 1565. Menendez founded St. Augustine.
- 1582. Santa Fé was settled by the Spaniards.
- 1585. Sir Walter Raleigh sent a colony to Roanoke.
- 1587. A second colony sent by Raleigh to Roanoke.

## JAMES I

- 1608. Champlain founded Quebec.
- 1609. Henry Hudson ascended the Hudson River.

## PARALLEL READING

FISKE'S *Discovery of America*. — PARKMAN'S *Pioneers of France in the New World* (Chapters VII-IX). — AMERICAN HISTORY LEAFLETS: *Extracts from the Sagas*; *Letter of Columbus to Sant Angel*; *Voyage of John Cabot in 1497*. — OLD SOUTH LEAFLETS: *The Voyages to Vinland*; *The Discovery of America*; *Columbus's Letter to Gabriel Sanches*; *The Voyages of the Cabots*; *Amerigo Vespucci's Account of his First Voyage*; *Verrazzano's Voyage, 1524*; *Coronado's Letter to Mendoza, 1540*; *Cortes's Account of the City of Mexico*; *The Death of De Soto*.

## II—THE THIRTEEN COLONIES

### CHAPTER I

#### THE SETTLEMENT OF VIRGINIA—1607

47. Jamestown. — In 1607 the London Company sent out a colony which settled at Jamestown on the James River, named in honor of the king. The colony numbered  
1607 one hundred and five men; there were no women in the party. Captain Newport commanded the vessel in which they came. As they entered Chesapeake Bay, they named the capes on the right and left Cape Charles and Cape Henry, for the sons of the king. They landed May 13, when the whole forest was beautiful with the fresh green of the springtime. Everything had been arranged for their government, and a charter, containing the laws which were to control them, had been given by the king, who was to have one fifth of all the gold they should find. They were to enjoy the same rights that they had enjoyed in England. A governing council in England had been appointed by the king, and seven of the colonists had been chosen for a resident council in Virginia. Mr. Wingfield, who was made president, proved to be an unsuitable man and did not manage affairs well for the people.

48 Troubles of the Colonists. — Captain Newport returned to England before the colonists had become accustomed to the new way of living, but he left with them a brave and able man, Captain John Smith.<sup>1</sup> There was much sickness among

<sup>1</sup> Captain John Smith was born in Lincolnshire, England. When a boy of thirteen, after the death of his parents, he left England and went to France



them during the summer, and many died. Many of them had been gentlemen at home, and, unaccustomed to labor, found life in the wilderness very hard. They had come expecting to find fortunes in gold, and then to return to England. Most of them were idle and took no care to provide themselves with food for the next year; when all their supplies were exhausted, they were left in a state of want and suffering.

#### 49. Captain Smith's Management.

—By quarreling among themselves, the colonists made matters worse. Through jealousy, they had excluded Captain Smith, though appointed by the king, from the council, but they were at length compelled to turn to him for help. Under his skillful management, they were relieved of many troubles. He worked hard himself and compelled the idlers to follow his example. Their work added many comforts, which the cold winter made necessary, for their rude homes. At first they stretched an old sail on the limbs of trees, to shelter them from the sun and rain, and built walls of rails; but later, under his leadership, they learned to



CAPTAIN JOHN SMITH

and Holland. Once while he was on a voyage in the Mediterranean, the sailors, during a storm, threw him overboard as a Jonah, but he succeeded in swimming to an island, from which he was picked up the next day by a French vessel. This vessel was fired upon by a Venetian ship. A fight followed. The Venetian ship was captured, and it proved to be a rich prize. Smith's share was £225 and a box of silks and velvets worth much more. After landing he traveled through Italy to Austria, where he enlisted in the army to fight the Turks, with whom Austria was then at war. He became very famous by killing three of the Turks in single combat, but was finally captured and sold as a slave. His Turkish master treated him with great cruelty, and he determined to make his escape. One day he killed his master with the flail with which he had been threshing grain, and ran away. He went to Russia, then to Austria and Spain, and on to Morocco. At last he came back to England and, when he was nearly thirty years old, joined the new expedition with Captain Newport. These are some of the wonderful stories he has told us of himself.

cut down trees and build houses. He also made treaties of friendship with the Indians, and procured from them food for the needy colony.

**50. Smith captured by Indians.** — After Captain Smith had trained the men to some degree of order, he prepared for an exploring expedition up the Chickahominy River. When he had gone about thirty miles, he and his party were attacked by Indians, who killed his companions and captured him. He amused them by showing them his pocket compass, and by writing a letter for them to carry to his friends. The Indians were so much impressed by this strange way of sending messages, and by many things he said and did, that they kept him imprisoned a long time, thinking they had no right to kill such a wonderful man. The chiefs met and consulted about what they should do with him. Powhatan', their king, determined to put him to death.

**51. Pocahontas.** — Captain Smith's hands were tied and his head laid upon a log of wood. A club was raised to strike



POCAHONTAS

the fatal blow. But, if we are to believe Captain Smith's own story, a strange deliverance was at hand. Powhatan's youngest daughter, Pocahon'tas, threw herself beside the prisoner, and clasping her arms around him, with tears besought her father to spare him. The chiefs were all greatly moved by this, and her father consented to release him. Captain Smith made a treaty of peace with Powhatan, and, after an absence of seven weeks, returned to Jamestown.

**52. The Colony saved by Pocahontas.** — Soon after this, Powhatan broke his promise of peace to the English, and made a plot



to destroy the whole colony. The night before the Indians expected to make the attack, Pocahontas went through the rain and darkness to tell Captain Smith to prepare for the approach of the savages. She walked back the same night to her father's village. By this act of kindness the colony was saved and peace restored.<sup>1</sup>

**53. Gold.** — It has been estimated that Spain had by this time taken from America more gold and silver than would now be worth five thousand million dollars. Englishmen were eager for a share of it, and the next year  
1608  
Captain Newport came back with provisions and one hundred and twenty new colonists. Some of these were goldsmiths, and they had come to find gold, which they expected to see in quantities along the hillsides. Captain Newport loaded his ship with sparkling soil, gathered on the bank of a river, and took it to England; but when he returned and said that it was of no value, they gave up searching for the precious metal.

**54. Captain Smith wounded.** — The colony had been in Virginia two years, when Captain Smith was so severely wounded by an explosion of gunpowder that he was obliged  
1609  
to return to England. He never came back to Jamestown. A few years afterwards, he sailed to a point north of that place, and explored the shores between the Penobscot River and Cape Cod. He called that part of the country New England, and it still retains the name he gave it.

**55. The "Starving Time."** — Not long before Captain Smith

<sup>1</sup> **Capture and Marriage of Pocahontas.** — A few years later, Pocahontas, who had been a true friend to the colony, was stolen by a party of  
1613  
men under Captain Argall. These men sent a message to her father, that she would be released whenever he paid them the price they demanded. Powhatan refused to pay it, and prepared for war with the white men in order to rescue his daughter. A young Englishman named Rolfe, who had influenced her to become a Christian, fell in love with her, and persuaded her to marry him. Her father consented, and terms of peace were made. Three years after her marriage, while on a visit to England with her husband, she died, leaving an infant son. Some of the best families of our country claim to be her descendants.

left Jamestown, a fleet arrived, bringing two hundred additional colonists. This increased the number of settlers to five hundred; but after Captain Smith's departure, great suffering followed from the scarcity of provisions. Many died. Those who survived had just determined to leave Jamestown when the long-expected vessel, which had spent the winter in the West Indies, arrived with provisions and new emigrants. They found a miserable crowd of haggard, half-starved men, women, and children, scarcely able to totter about their cabins, their faces pinched with the keen pangs of hunger. Not more than sixty were alive. The new supply of provisions would hardly carry them through the summer, and they were determined to leave the place in which they had suffered so long. The beating of the drum called them together, and, after gathering from their deserted homes such things as they could carry with them, the wretched company went on board the boat. They had sailed down to the mouth of the river, when they met a fleet of English ships bringing Lord Delaware (De la Warr), their new governor, with men and supplies. He induced them to return to Jamestown. They always called the winter of 1609-10 the "starving time." This deliverance from famine and death led many of them to acknowledge the goodness of God; and they met in their little church every day to beseech His blessing.

**56. A New Charter.** — The king had given a second charter, which dismissed the council at Jamestown and appointed a governor, Lord Delaware. Their condition was at once improved by his wise management, and plenty and peace returned to them. Unfortunately, however, Lord Delaware's health soon failed, and he embarked for England. Sir Thomas Dale was his successor.

From the beginning every man had been required to bring the crop which he had raised, or whatever he had procured by trading with the Indians, and to place it in a common storehouse, from which it was divided among the settlers. Outside of his share of the public property, he could have very

little that he could call his own. If he planted corn, if he went fishing or hunting, if he helped with the building, whatever he did, he was working for the colony, and could have only his share of the profits. Under these conditions, the lazy ones would not work, and those who were willing to work gradually became discouraged. Sir Thomas Dale made a happy change from this plan. He gave each man his own tract of land, and the crop he raised was to be his own, except that he should pay a yearly tax of two and a half barrels of corn.

**57. Tobacco.** — Columbus had found the natives in Cuba smoking tobacco. It is said to have received its name from the island Tobago, where it was first cultivated. In Virginia it became the chief article of commerce. For a long time it was the currency of the country. The salaries of the clergymen, private debts, and even taxes were paid in tobacco. Ninety young women were sent by the London Company to Virginia, and each young settler who married one of them paid one hundred pounds of tobacco for her. Fines were also paid in this product, and whenever it could be proved that a woman was guilty of slander, her husband had to pay five hundred pounds of tobacco. People valued it so highly that they even planted it in their gardens, and often in the streets of Jamestown.<sup>1</sup>

**58. The First Legislative Assembly.** — Several years after Lord Delaware's return, Captain Argall was appointed governor of Virginia. He proved to be cruel and tyrannical, and complaints were sent to the company in England. After this, the people were allowed to share in the government by electing the members of a colonial assembly, which met at Jamestown. Each settlement, or borough, elected two representatives called burgesses, and on July 30, 1619, for the first time in the history of America, representatives of the people met to pass laws.

July 30,  
1619

<sup>1</sup> **Cows, Goats, and Hogs.** — In 1611, Sir Thomas Gates became governor at Jamestown, and brought with him the first cows, goats, and hogs in this country.

**59. Slavery.** — The soil was fresh and fertile, and the cultivation of tobacco was so profitable that most of the settlers lived, not in towns and villages, but on plantations scattered through the country. Men who had committed crime in England were sold to the planters to work on the plantations for ten years. Some of the Indians had been

captured and made to work as slaves in the same way, but they were not profitable laborers. In 1619, a Dutch vessel brought to Jamestown twenty African negroes, who were sold to the settlers and taught to work. This was the beginning of negro slavery in this country.

#### **60. Indian Massacre.**

— During the same year, twelve hundred persons, belonging to an excellent class of people, moved to Virginia from England. Two years of unbroken peace and prosperity fol-



FIRST ENGLISH SETTLEMENTS

lowed; but the next year a sudden attack by the Indians brought sorrow to the colony. Powhatan had died. The new Indian king hated the white men, and wanted to destroy their settlements. He called his warriors around his camp fire and made them promise to hide themselves in the forest around the plantations, and at noon, on a day which he had chosen, to rush upon the Englishmen in their homes and murder them without mercy. The plot was kept secret: the colonists knew nothing of it, until on the

morning of the appointed day a converted Indian told the people at Jamestown. Men were sent to warn all the settlers, but before the news could reach every plantation, twelve



INDIAN MASSACRE

o'clock came, and three hundred planters, with their families, were killed. A bloody war followed, in which the Indians were defeated and driven back into the forest.

**61. Virginia a Royal Province.** — The London Company had invested a large amount of money for the support of the colonies in America; and, because of the need of more money, the number of its members had been increased until it contained many of the most prominent men of the kingdom. The production and sale of tobacco having at length become a sure and steady source of wealth, the strength of the com-



pany was still further increased. More than one hundred members of the Parliament that opposed the king were enrolled among its members, and the king, wishing  
 1624 to crush this growing power, in 1624 revoked the charter of the company. He then took the government of the colony into his own hands, and himself appointed its governors. This made Virginia a royal province.

## CHAPTER II

### THE SETTLEMENT OF VIRGINIA (CONTINUED)

62. **Indian War.** — After their defeat, the savages professed to be at peace with the white men. But twenty-two years afterwards, in 1644, they made another sudden attack  
 1644 6 upon the plantations, and killed a large number of the settlers. The war which followed this attack lasted two years. Many red men were killed or captured, and after this the Virginia Indians gave but little trouble to the colony.

63. **The Old Dominion.** — After the execution of Charles I,<sup>1</sup> king of England, in 1649, many Royalists, called "Cavaliers," removed to Virginia, where the people had remained devoted to the cause of the king. Sir William Berkeley was governor, and Charles II, who was then banished from England, was invited to come and reign as king in Virginia. From this circumstance, and from the name "His Majesty's Ancient

<sup>1</sup> **Revolution in England.** — A quarrel between Charles I and Parliament brought on civil war in England in 1642. The people who took sides with the king were called "Royalists" or "Cavaliers." Those who were on the side of Parliament were called "Roundheads," because of their habit of cutting the hair short. Oliver Cromwell was one of the leaders of the army against the king. After some years of trouble, during which several battles were fought, the town into which the king had fled was surrounded by the Parliamentary army, and he was made a prisoner. He was tried by a court made up of members of Parliament; this court condemned him to be beheaded. Oliver Cromwell was then proclaimed Lord Protector, and the king's son fled from the country. In 1660, eleven years after the death of Charles I, his son, Charles II, was placed on the throne of England.



Colony and Dominion of Virginia," which was given in one of her charters, Virginia was called the "Old Dominion."

The Cavaliers obtained large tracts of land, and their dwellings were surrounded by broad acres, tilled by their slaves. The "quarters" built for their slaves, white and black, formed a small settlement not far from the house of the owner. Many of the Cavaliers belonged to the aristocratic class in England, and they lived in America as they had lived in their old homes. They delighted in hunting and fishing; and, as game was abundant, every gentleman had his horses and hounds. In their homes they entertained visitors with kindest hospitality. The influence of these Cavaliers did much to form the character of the people among whom they came to live. They brought with them their great respect for the king, and their love for the Church of England. Among them were the ancestors of Washington and Lee.

**64. Navigation Acts.** — While Cromwell was ruling in England, the ships of Spain were busy carrying gold from America, and those of Holland were sailing with cargoes of silks, tea, and spices from China and India. Cromwell determined that England should have a share of the commerce that was bringing wealth and power to those nations, and as early as 1651 laws were enacted which injured the commerce of the colonies. Between 1660 and 1670, the English Parliament passed the Navigation Acts. These declared that no goods should be carried to the colonies or brought from them except in English ships. The people were compelled, besides, to pay a heavy tax upon everything exported from the colonies, and upon everything brought in. The commerce of England was soon doubled, but at the cost of the colonists, who naturally thought they were unjustly treated.

**65. Grant to Culpeper and Arlington.** — Virginia had been a royal province about fifty years, when Charles II gave the whole of the province to two of his favorites— Lord Culpeper and the Earl of Arlington. This act of the king, added to the tyranny of Governor Berkeley,

aroused deep feelings of indignation among the people. As Virginia then contained a white population of forty thousand, the two men were too wise to attempt to take possession of the king's gift.

**66. Bacon's Rebellion.** — While this widespread discontent was increasing more and more, the Susquehanna Indians began plundering the plantations along the border, from the  
 1676 Potomac to the James, and Governor Berkeley did nothing to protect these settlements. Many thought that his unwillingness to fight the Indians came from a fear that war would interfere with the profitable trade that



RUIN AT JAMESTOWN

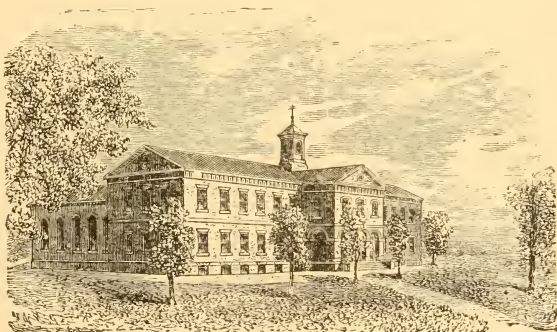
he was carrying on with them. The Virginians saw their families and their homes in constant danger, and having armed themselves, they chose for their leader Nathaniel Bacon, an ambitious and popular young lawyer. Berkeley pronounced Bacon and his followers rebels, but they pursued the savages and defeated them at Bloody Run, near the site of the city of Richmond. When Berkeley attempted to arrest Bacon, he found such opposition

among the people, that he was compelled to dismiss the assembly, which he had kept for a long time in session, and to order an election for new members. Bacon was elected as one of the representatives, and assisted in drawing up a petition to the king in which complaints were made of the despotism of Berkeley. The Indians again became troublesome, and Bacon again gathered his forces, marched to Jamestown,

and compelled the governor to give him a commission. He continued to drive the Indians from the frontier, and was again declared a rebel. He brought his men back to Jamestown, and Berkeley fled to collect forces who were friendly to him.

This was just one hundred years before the Declaration of Independence by the colonies. Civil war began to rage throughout the province. Property was destroyed, plantations plundered, and Jamestown burned to ashes. It was never rebuilt. Nothing but a ruined church tower now stands to show where the first settlement was made. Williamsburg became the capital. The king proclaimed Bacon a traitor, and sent over troops to assist Governor Berkeley. But before they reached the shores of Virginia, Bacon suddenly died, and the rebellion came to an abrupt end. Berkeley in revenge, and with the cruelty for which he was noted, hanged more than twenty of the rebels; the king recalled him to England, where he died, having been governor of Virginia through a period of thirty-five years, except for a few years during Cromwell's Protectorate.

**67. William and Mary College.** — Virginia continued to be oppressed by unjust laws and royal governors during the



WILLIAM AND MARY COLLEGE

reigns of Charles II and James II until William and Mary were placed on the throne and the affairs of government

became more settled. Then the people began to give more attention to education. There were already in the colony men of learning and character; by their influence free schools were begun, and in 1693 William and Mary College was established. This is the second oldest college in the United States.

**68. The Valley of Virginia.** — More than one hundred years passed after the first immigrants reached Virginia, before settlers found their way into the beautiful region beyond the Blue Ridge. Germans, Scotch-Irish, Presbyterians, and Quakers in Pennsylvania and New Jersey, hearing of the rich lands along the banks of the Shenandoah, came to make their homes in that valley. Instead of planting wide fields of tobacco, they depended upon their rich harvests of wheat and corn. In many respects they were unlike the people of Virginia east of them, for there the majority were members of the Church of England, and they lived in a manner altogether different from the people of the northern colonies. The Indians in the valley were hostile; and constant struggles against them helped to develop a hardy and independent people.

#### QUESTIONS FOR STUDY

Why did the English people wish to come to America? Mention some of the trials of the early settlers. Describe the Cavaliers who came to live in Virginia and the southern colonies, and mention some of the men who were descended from them. What part were the people of Virginia allowed to take in their government? Do you justify Bacon's rebellion? Give your reasons.

Draw a map of Virginia, and locate Jamestown and the James River.

## CHAPTER III

## NEW ENGLAND COLONIES

## MASSACHUSETTS — 1620

**69. Early Attempts at Settlement.** — About the same time that Captain Newport brought over the colony to Jamestown, the Plymouth Company sent a ship with settlers for North Virginia. They landed on the coast of Maine, near <sup>1607</sup> the mouth of the Kennebec River. The intense cold of the winter that followed made them unwilling to live in America, and the next spring they returned to England. After Captain Smith published his map of New England, others were induced to come to this wild country; but none of them remained very long, and no permanent settlement was made.

**70. The Pilgrim Fathers.** — The majority of the people in England were Protestants; that is, they were opposed to the Roman Catholics. Some of them had become dissatisfied with the Church of England, in which the sovereign was the head of the church and the people were taxed to support it. They wished to make some changes which they said would purify it; from this they were called "Puritans." Some of them determined to separate from the church, and this gained them the name of "Separatists." Any person who refused to worship in the English church was severely punished, and people were persecuted for attending any other religious service.

On account of this persecution a number of families went to Holland, where they could enjoy more freedom. These people observed strictly the rules of their religion, and they could readily be distinguished by their plain and peculiar dress. Because of their wanderings they received the name of "Pilgrims." They remained quietly settled in Holland for twelve years. Then they began to realize that their children were forgetting the language and customs of their fathers and intermarrying with the Dutch, and that their grandchildren

would be Dutch, not English. They determined, therefore, to go to a new land where they could preserve their own religion and their own speech. Some of them decided to embark for America, and one hundred of the youngest and strongest were chosen to go. Two were sent to ask the consent of the London Company. A patent, or written right, sealed with the company's seal, was given them for a tract of land in North Virginia. A company of merchants in London lent them money, which they were to repay with their labor. The profits of seven years of work were required to repay ten pounds of the money borrowed.

**71. The Mayflower.**—A small vessel called the *Speedwell* carried the Pilgrims from Holland to England. Before their departure, they worshiped together for the last time.

1620



THE MAYFLOWER

Their aged pastor, John Robinson, knelt with them on the shore and prayed for the blessing of Heaven upon them, after which they parted from their friends and went on board the ship. When they reached England, they found the *Mayflower*, a larger vessel, ready for them. There they were joined by a number of friends. The sails of both

vessels were spread, and the shores of England faded from their sight. The *Speedwell*, however, leaked badly, and they were compelled to return to England. The *Mayflower* at last started alone, with one hundred and two emigrants on board, September 16, 1620. They expected to land at the mouth of the Hudson River, but, after sailing sixty-six days, they reached Cape Cod, where they cast anchor.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Relics.—Some of the articles brought over in the *Mayflower* by these Pilgrims are still preserved. An iron dinner kettle, and a small oaken table with folding leaves which has never been touched by varnish, some of the spinning wheels on which the women and girls who came with them spun flax and the cradle in which Peregrine White—the baby born on the *Mayflower*—was rocked, are among the things that are still in the possession of their descendants.



**72. Form of Government.** — The Pilgrims had no charter from the king, like that of the Virginia colony, and, before they landed, a form of laws was written out and signed by the men — forty-one in all. Every man was allowed an equal share in the government, and John Carver was chosen governor for one year. They had established a democracy.

**73. Plymouth.** — A place which Captain Smith had called Plymouth, was selected for their settlement. They entered a pathless, unbroken forest, covered with the snow and ice of that severe climate, and went to work at once cutting down trees and building houses; but before they could protect themselves against the storms of snow and sleet, their sufferings were intense, and before spring more than half their number died from exposure and disease. Governor Carver and his wife and son were among those who were buried on the shore. William Bradford was then elected governor, and Captain Miles Standish, a brave man experienced in warfare, took charge of the defense of the colony.



MILES STANDISH

**74. Carver's Treaty with the Indians.** — A short time before his death, Governor Carver made a treaty with several Indian chiefs, and by this means the colony was protected from Indian depredations. This treaty was sacredly kept for fifty years.

**75. Indian Corn.** — As the spring came on, health and strength returned to the settlers. The Indians taught them to cultivate maize, or Indian corn, and to shoot fish with arrows; they also added to their store of provisions by killing deer and wild turkeys in the woods. They had no cattle then, and the wolves that howled around their houses at night would have killed cows, hogs, or sheep. After the harvest, Governor

Bradford sent four men out hunting, that they might "after a more special manner rejoice together," and give thanks.<sup>1</sup>

**76. Suffering for Bread.** — The next December a vessel with thirty-five Puritans arrived without a supply of provisions, and the following winter was one of intense suffering. A part of the time they had no grain of any kind. One of them wrote: "I have seen men stagger, by reason of faintness, for want of food." Many died, but the survivors leveled the graves and planted cornfields to cover them, so that the Indians might not know how small their number had grown. Much that they suffered was owing to the plan they had adopted of working together and keeping the proceeds of their work in one common collection, from which each man could draw his weekly allowance. The result of this common ownership was the same here as in Virginia; there were some who would not work so long as they could live by the labor of others, and the harvests were too scanty to supply all. After this system had been tried for three years, a portion of ground was given to each family for its own use, and afterwards there was no general suffering from famine.

**77. The Company of Massachusetts Bay.** — After this part of the country began to be settled, it was no longer known as North Virginia, but was called New England, the name Captain John Smith had given it. Eight years after the *Mayflower* reached Plymouth, a company of men in England purchased that part of this section "which lies between three miles to the south of the Merrimack River and three miles to the south of the Charles River, and extending from the Atlantic to the South Sea."

<sup>1</sup> **Thanksgiving Day** — This was the first general Thanksgiving Day in America. The celebration of the day became a custom in New England, and during the Revolution it was appointed by Congress. After that time it did not continue to be regularly observed, except when appointed by the governors of states. From New England the custom gradually extended to the Middle States. Since 1863 the President has annually requested the observance of the day, and the last Thursday in November has been adopted as the time.

They received from Charles I a charter, in which it was agreed that the government of the colonies settling in that region should be managed by the company, and that the company should be called "The Governor and Company of Massachusetts Bay in New England."

**78. Boston.** — Among the stockholders of this company were some prominent Puritans and other good men. They thought the country would be more valuable if it were filled with people to cultivate and improve it, and in order to encourage families to move out from England, they promised that the councilmen should be chosen by the settlers themselves. About fifteen hundred emigrants came to Massachusetts; and settlements were made at Boston and at other points within a few miles of that place.<sup>1</sup> John Winthrop was the first governor.

1630



JOHN WINTHROP

**79. Government.** — The next year a meeting of all the men of the Massachusetts Bay settlements was held in Boston, and John Winthrop was again elected

governor. They continued to meet together, vote for their officers, and decide upon all the affairs of the colony, until they increased to such a number that this plan became inconvenient; the citizens then voted for representatives in a legislature, who made laws for their government. Only church members were considered citizens and allowed to vote.

1631

**80. The Slave Trade.** — In 1636 the first American slave vessel, the *Desire*, was built and launched at Marblehead, Massachusetts. It brought back to Massachusetts the first shipload of African slaves or negroes, and they were bought by many of the most influential men of the colony.

1636

<sup>1</sup> **Salem.** — John Endicott came over with a colony of one hundred Puritans, who settled at Salem in 1628. They gave their settlement this name because the word in Hebrew means "peace."

81. **Harvard University.** — The Puritans were anxious about the education of their children, and common schools began to be popular among them at an early day. In 1636, a high school



PURITANS IN MASSACHUSETTS

1636 was established at Newtown (now Cambridge). The Rev. John Harvard, a graduate of Cambridge, England, left about four thousand dollars and his library for the use of this school. It afterwards became a college, and finally developed into what is now Harvard University — the oldest college in the country.

82. **The Printing Press** was introduced about this time by the Rev. Jesse Glover. Stephen Day managed the press; its first issue was a pamphlet called "The

1639

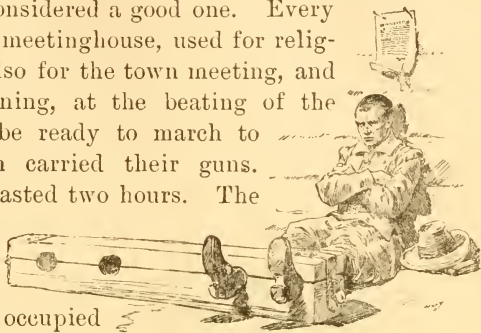
Freedman's Oath," and the first volume printed on it was the "Bay Psalm Book," in 1640. For a long time few books were published in the colonies. Men were busy clearing the forests, fighting the Indians, and making their living out of the soil or the sea, and there was little time for study. The only literature was that written by the ministers, then the educated men of this country, and it consisted of sermons and tracts upon religious subjects.



A COLONIAL PRINTING PRESS

83. **Laws.** — During the early years of the settlements the Puritans were very strict in the observance of their religious

laws, and every person was required to attend church every Sunday. Any who were absent were punished, unless the excuse given was considered a good one. Every settlement had its meetinghouse, used for religious services and also for the town meeting, and every Sunday morning, at the beating of the drum, all had to be ready to march to church. The men carried their guns. The sermon often lasted two hours. The seats for the women were always on the opposite side of the church from those occupied by the men. For a violation of law, the offender was sometimes made to stand during service, where he could be seen by the congregation, the name of his offense having been written upon a paper and fastened to his person. Commonly, such criminals were put in the stocks or the pillory.



THE STOCKS

**84. The Quakers,** or Friends, was a religious sect that originated in England. They believed that the government had no right to interfere with religion, and that no person should be imprisoned for debt. They could not believe that it was right for nations to wage war against each other, and they refused to be enrolled as soldiers. They would not take an oath in the civil courts, because they thought that speaking the truth was sufficient. Like the Puritans, they avoided all that was costly or ornamental in dress. They considered all men equal; they refused to remove their hats in the presence of a king, and to honor any man with a complimentary title, addressing each simply by his Christian name or by "thee" and "thou."

**85. Persecution of the Quakers.** — Laws were passed excluding the Quakers from Massachusetts. When one of this sect came into the colony, he was punished with the loss of an ear and banishment. If he were again found within the colony, he was driven out after being deprived of the other.



ear; and if he still persisted in returning, his tongue was bored through with a hot iron. These severe laws did not keep the Quakers away from Boston. They were whipped and tortured, and even put to death. Four of them were hanged; but after that, the king sent orders forbidding such executions, and people began to object to such cruelty. Therefore the laws were changed, the new laws requiring that these peculiar persons should be whipped from the colony.

**86. The First Houses in New England** were built near the meetinghouse, and generally contained two or more low rooms,

with an attic above. They were built of logs; the roof

was covered with thatch, and the chimneys were made of wood plastered with clay. The large kitchen was the sitting room for the family. Within its wide fireplace hung the crane, supporting pots and kettles over the wood fire. From the

rafters were suspended showy festoons of pepper and strings of dried pumpkins and dried fruit. Chairs were few, and the high-backed settle was in

use a long time. The spinning wheels were kept busily at work; heavy wooden looms were used for making the cloth for the household.

Articles of comfort were added one by one. The first clocks were made mostly of wood, and, reaching from the floor to the ceiling, occupied one corner of the room. The cupboard was a useful piece of furniture that, after a time, had its place in most of these houses. It also was made to stand



A COLONIAL FIREPLACE



in a corner; its shelves held the store of plain china and pewter ware used by the family. The windows and doors were small and low; oiled paper was used instead of glass. A narrow looking-glass and a few pictures ornamented the walls. The father's gun and powder pouch, hung near the door, were always ready for defense against an attack by Indians. The narrow space between the house and the low fence in front contained the flower garden, filled with old-fashioned hollyhocks and four-o'clocks. Borders of touch-me-not were on both sides of the walk from the gate, and the jack bean, gay with its scarlet blooms, twined itself over the low porch and window.

**87. Massachusetts.** — The colonies of Plymouth and Massachusetts Bay were united in 1692, and called Massachusetts. The name is said to mean "blue hills." 1692

## CHAPTER IV

### NEW ENGLAND COLONIES (CONTINUED)

#### RHODE ISLAND — 1636

**88. Roger Williams** came to Salem, Massachusetts, in 1631. He had been a minister in the Episcopal Church, when quite a young man, but he afterwards separated from that church. He preached in Plymouth and Salem, and 1631  
to the Indians, with great earnestness and eloquence, and explained the Bible according to his belief. He said that civil rulers ought to punish for crimes, but that they had no right to control men in matters of religion. He objected to the law which compelled men to attend church. The Puritans called him a heretic, and banished him from Massachusetts. He, with some of his friends, was preparing to settle on Narragansett Bay, when he heard that the Puritans intended to send him to England. In order to avoid this, he fled from Salem in the night. He made his journey alone and on foot, in the

middle of January, through a forest covered with snow and ice. When he reached the territory of the Narragansett In-

dians, he made  
friendly terms 1635

with them, and they gave him shelter and protection. There he spent several weeks, "not knowing what bread or bed did mean." He received permission from the chief to live on land belonging to that tribe, and he built his home in the unbroken wilderness. The next

spring he planted the ground and was joined by a few friends.

**89. Providence.** — Unfortunately he had located his home within the boundaries of Massachusetts, and the governor sent a messenger to say that he could not be allowed to remain where he was. Therefore 1636

he and his friends removed beyond the limits of the colony. The chief of the Narragansetts gave him land at the head of Narragansett Bay, and he began to build and plant once more. He named his settlement Providence, to express his confidence in the goodness of God. Many who were persecuted in Massachusetts and in England joined him, and the settlement grew rapidly. He received all who came without questioning their religious belief, but he was firm in maintaining the laws of order and justice. Every one was required to sign a written agreement to obey all laws made for the public good, and which had received the consent of the greater portion of the citizens.

**90. Newport.** — A short time after Roger Williams left Salem,



ROGER WILLIAMS

Mrs. Anne Hutchinson, a woman who preached and lectured in Boston, made such disturbance among the Puritans by her religious teachings, that she was condemned as a heretic by a number of minsters, and she and her followers were banished from the colony. William Coddington led a band of those who believed in her doctrines to Providence. Through the influence of Roger Williams, they bought from the Indians the Island of Aquidneck and paid for it with beads. They called it Rhode Island, settled at Newport, and established a democratic government like that of Providence.

**91. The Charter.** — A few years afterwards Roger Williams obtained from Parliament a charter, by which the two colonies were united in one ; and under it they were governed until Charles II was restored to the throne.

1643

## CONNECTICUT — 1635

**92. The Dutch,** in 1633, took possession of the valley of the Connecticut, or "long river," for that is the meaning of the Indian name, and built a fort on its bank.

1633

**93. Saybrook.** — When the people in England heard of the beautiful, fertile country west of the settlements in Massachusetts, the Plymouth Company granted it to the Earl of Warwick, who transferred it to Lord Say and Lord Brooke. Their agent in 1635 built a fort at the mouth of the Connecticut, and called it Saybrook, in honor of them. The Dutch attempted to prevent the Englishmen from sailing up the river, but did not succeed. The English vessels sailed past the Dutch fort, and built houses for their traders at Windsor. Both the English and the Dutch were striving to gain possession of the country for the fur trade.

1635

**94. Colonists from Massachusetts.** — A number of families, who had grown tired of the religious quarrels in Massachusetts, obtained permission from the general court to settle in this fertile region. They left Boston the following summer, with the Rev. Thomas Hooker as their

1636

leader. With only a compass to guide them, they traveled through the wilderness, driving their cattle before them. The Indians sold them land. But land sales were not made then



TRADING WITH THE INDIANS

as they are now. Money was not very plentiful with the early settlers, nor was it then of much use to the savages. For hatchets, knives, blankets, kettles, cloth, clothing, trinkets, and beads, the Indians bartered their fertile lands and valuable furs.

Some of the people settled at Hartford, and built new homes. Some went up the river to Windsor, and others down to Wetherfield. The colony which was made up of these settlements took its name from the river, and was known as the Connecticut Colony.

95. New Haven. — Not more than twelve months after this time, a rich merchant from London, with his friends, came to Boston. Religious disputes were so common among the people of that place, that this party also resolved

to seek a more peaceful home in the unsettled country toward the west. Sailing from Boston, they at last landed and established their settlement at New Haven.

**96. The First Written Constitution.**—These settlements of Connecticut were managed by the general court of Massachusetts, until the men of Windsor, Hartford, and Wethersfield in 1639 met at Hartford, where they prepared and adopted a written constitution for their government. It was called the Fundamental Orders of Connecticut, and was the first written constitution in the world. There were at first three separate colonies; namely, Saybrook Colony, Connecticut Colony, and New Haven Colony. In 1644, nine years after the founding of the Saybrook Colony, it was united with the Connecticut Colony, but the New Haven Colony continued under a separate government until King Charles II combined the two into one. This united colony was known as Connecticut. The king's new charter sanctioned Connecticut's written constitution, which continued in use two hundred years. 1639

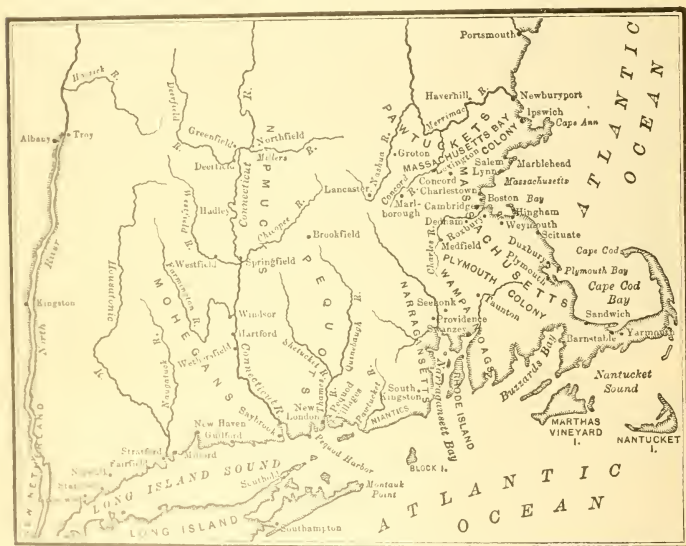
#### NEW HAMPSHIRE — 1623

**97. Gorges and Mason.**—Sir Ferdinando Gorges (gor'-jez) and Captain John Mason received from the Plymouth Company a grant of land extending from the Kennebec River to the Merrimac. In 1623, not quite three years after the Pilgrims landed at Plymouth, two settlements were made on the Piscataqua River. When the English ships arrived the banks were covered with wild strawberries. Captain Mason, who had come with the settlers, built his house near the river, and called his home "Strawberry Bank." The village which grew up around it took the same name. It is now the city of Portsmouth. The other settlement was made farther inland, and was called Dover. 1623

**98. Mason's Grant.**—In 1629 Captain Mason obtained another grant, which reached from the Piscataqua to the Merri-

mac, and included the settlements he had made. He named the region New Hampshire, from Hampshire, England, the place from which many of the settlers had come.

1629  
 99. Union with Massachusetts. — Seven years after receiving this new grant Captain Mason died, and no one succeeded him. The colony was left with no settled government, and the country was divided among many who claimed a right to it. Much disputing followed. The people



EARLY NEW ENGLAND SETTLEMENTS

of Massachusetts claimed that the Plymouth Company had given a part of New Hampshire to them. In addition to these troubles about government, the people suffered greatly from the hostility and cruelty of the Indians, and they finally decided to seek protection from Massachusetts. New Hampshire continued to be a part of Massachusetts during thirty-nine years. After that time the king made it a separate royal province.



## VERMONT

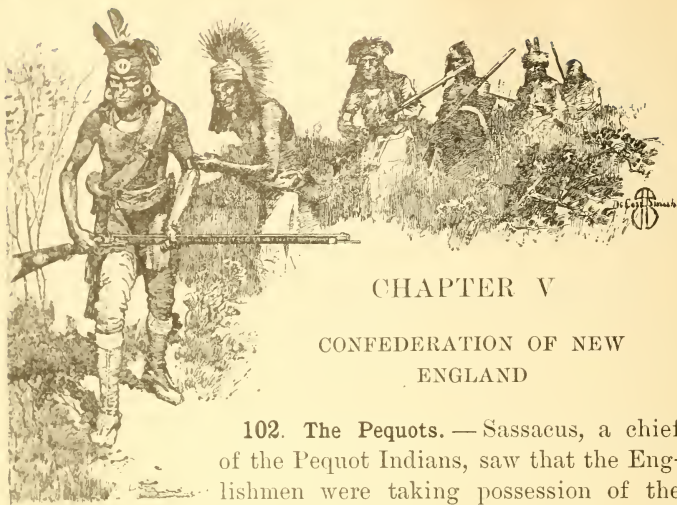
**100. The New Hampshire Grants.**—Governor Wentworth, one of the governors of New Hampshire, claimed that all of the land which is now called Vermont belonged to New Hampshire, and he gave away townships, or tracts of land, west of the Connecticut River, which were settled by people from the other colonies and from Scotland and Ireland.

This region had already been explored by Champlain, and it was claimed by New York as a part of its territory. Settlements were made so slowly that it did not become a separate colony before the Revolution. It was known as the "New Hampshire Grants," because of the land Governor Wentworth had granted.

## MAINE

**101. Gorges Grant.**—After Captain Mason obtained possession of New Hampshire, Gorges also received another grant, which gave him the land from the Piscataqua to the Kennebec. This part of the country had been called 1639 the mayne (main) land, to distinguish it from the islands along the coast. From this circumstance the name of Maine was given to this region. Massachusetts laid claim to this territory, and a long dispute followed. The question was settled when Massachusetts paid twelve hundred pounds for her right to it.

At first, there were only a few fishing stations. Settlers moved in so slowly that, like Vermont, it did not become independent of Massachusetts until a number of years after the Revolution.



ON THE WARPATH

## CHAPTER V

CONFEDERATION OF NEW  
ENGLAND

**102. The Pequots.** — Sassacus, a chief of the Pequot Indians, saw that the Englishmen were taking possession of the land that had belonged to his fathers. Indignant at this, he planned to destroy all the white settlements in New England, and tried to persuade other tribes to join him in his plot. Through the influence of Roger Williams, the Narragansetts and Mohawks refused to assist him.

Two English captains of trading vessels on the Connecticut were killed by Pequot Indians; and two years afterwards an English vessel was captured by a party of the same tribe, and its commander cruelly killed. The colonists of Massachusetts and Connecticut became so enraged by this that they resolved to declare war against the Pequots. Roger Williams persuaded the Narragansetts and Mohicans (or Mohegans) to join their forces with those of the colonists, again showing a beautiful spirit of forgiveness in protecting the people of Massachusetts, who had exiled him from among them.

**103. Destruction of the Pequots.** — During the winter of 1637, four companies were raised in Massachusetts to march against the Pequots. Captain John Mason of Connecticut commanded the companies from that colony. They were led by

a friendly Indian to the principal fort of the Pequots on the Mystic River. Lines of wigwams, protected by the fort, were filled with Indian families. Captain Mason directed the attack on the fort. The fighting was desperate. 1637

About seven hundred Indians were killed. Many perished in the flames when their wigwams were burned, and about two hundred women and children were captured. The fort was left in ruins, and the strength of the Pequots was completely broken. The white men lost but few of their number; some accounts of the battle tell us that on their return there were only two men missing.

Sassacus escaped, but was afterwards killed by some of the Indians. The soldiers from Connecticut and Massachusetts, and the Indians who had joined them, claimed the captives for slaves. A large number of these prisoners were sold into slavery in the West Indies.

**104. Confederation.** — After the war with the Pequots, the colonists of New England concluded that it would be well to form a union of all the colonies, the better to protect themselves against the savages, and against the Dutch and the French who also threatened trouble. Each colony was to retain the control of its own affairs; two commissioners were to be chosen from each of the four colonies in the confederation, who were to manage all its business. None but church members could be elected commissioners, and the colonies were not to be bound by any act of the general council of commissioners, until it had been agreed to by all represented. Plymouth, Massachusetts Bay, Connecticut, and New Haven formed this union in 1643, and gave it the name of "The United Colonies of New England." Rhode Island was not received because of its freedom in matters of religion. 1643

**105. Trouble with England.** — While the Virginians were showing their devotion to the king, the Puritans were opposing him, and when Charles II was restored to the throne, three of the judges who had condemned 1660

his father — Whalley, Goffe, and Dixwell — fled to New England for safety. The English government sent an order for their arrest, but they were allowed to escape to Connecticut.

The people of Massachusetts began to fear that the new king might punish them for their opposition to him, and they sent agents to England with the request that he would confirm their charter. He agreed to do so, but insisted that they should tolerate the Church of England, and allow those who were not church members to vote. Royal commissioners soon arrived in the United Colonies and Rhode Island. They disputed with Massachusetts about her claim to New Hampshire, but returned to England without settling the question. Other troubles at home occupied the attention of the king, and New England was neglected.

**106. Growing Hostility of the Indians.** — Great efforts were made to convert the savages to Christianity. Schools were established for them; the Bible had been translated into their tongue by John Eliot, the most enthusiastic and successful Indian missionary in New England, and it is said that quite a large number of the natives professed the Christian religion. This encroachment upon the religion of their fathers, and the appropriation of their old hunting grounds by the colonists, although the English made it a rule to pay the Indians for the land, finally aroused the animosity of many of the natives.



KING PHILIP

**107. King Philip's War.** — During the early years, the settlers had been protected by the friendship of Massasoit. After his death, his son, Philip, who looked with no friendly eye upon the growth of the colonies, became the chief of his tribe. The trial and execution of his brother and several members of his tribe, for murder, fanned his smouldering enmity into

burning hatred. Soon after the royal visitors had returned to England, Philip visited all the tribes from Maine to Connecticut, and persuaded them to join him in a league to drive out the English.

The first attack was made at Swanzev, in the Plymouth Colony. Troōps from Boston compelled the Indians to leave that neighborhood, but their line of retreat was marked by burning houses, and often by scalps 1675 and heads of the dead attached to poles along the way. Every settlement upon the western border was kept in a state of constant terror, and many of them were destroyed. A strong force was raised by the colonists to march into the country of the Narragansetts and break King Philip's league of destruction. Many of the red men and their families were killed, and their largest town was burned. Philip's death ended the war. His young son, one of the captives, was sent to Bermuda and sold as a slave. Many lives were lost and much property destroyed during this war, and a heavy debt had been incurred by the colonists, but the strength of three powerful tribes was broken.

**108. Sir Edmund Andros.**—The action of the people of New England had increased the anger of the king toward them, and he determined to punish them by depriving them of their chartered rights. Great excitement 1686 spread through New England when the news came. Sir Edmund Andros was sent over with a council, which the king had appointed to take control of the colonies of New England. He bore the title of "captain general," and had power to make laws and levy taxes as he chose. His treatment of the people in Massachusetts was tyrannical. He would not allow public meetings, and forbade any person to leave the country without permission from him.

**109. The Charter Oak.**—He took possession of the Rhode Island charter, and when he reached Hartford he ordered the legislature to deliver to him the charter 1687 of Connecticut, a charter highly prized because of the liberties

it allowed. Obedience to this order was delayed until late in the day. The charter was placed upon the table after the candles were lighted. When Andros attempted to take it, the lights were suddenly put out; when they were relighted, the charter had disappeared. One of the members had hurriedly left the room, and carried it with him. For some time it was kept safely hidden in a large hollow oak tree, which for many years afterwards was known as the "charter oak."

**110. New Charters.**—Although Andros failed to obtain this charter he exercised complete control over all the New England colonies. The people sent to England to ask relief from his tyranny, but they received no encouragement from the king. When the news came in 1689 that King James  
1689 had abandoned the throne of England and fled to France, and that William and Mary had been declared joint sovereigns, the people of Boston arrested Andros and put him in prison. During the reign of William and Mary new charters were granted to the colonies, and their liberties were once more restored, though they could no longer elect their governors, who were now appointed by the king. Men of all denominations were allowed to vote and have their own churches. In Connecticut, the old charter was brought out from its hiding place. The new charter for Massachusetts united Plymouth and that colony under one government.

**111. Witchcraft.**—In those days many people in England and Scotland believed that most of their diseases and troubles were caused by persons called witches, who were  
1692 supposed to have the power, given by Satan, of harming people and animals. This strange belief had crossed the Atlantic with the emigrants to the New World. Whenever persons were afflicted with nervous diseases, other persons were accused of witchcraft; trial and imprisonment followed. For example, the children of a minister in Salem were afflicted with convulsions, and their father believed they were bewitched by an Indian servant. By severe punishment, he made her confess the crime. In 1692, the witchcraft excitement reached



such a height that the lives of many persons were in constant danger. As many as twenty were executed in a few months, while the prisons were filled with people supposed to be in league with evil spirits. The very existence of the colony was threatened. The courts at last began to see the folly of punishing this supposed crime with death, and after they refused to notice the accusers the trouble ceased.

### QUESTIONS FOR STUDY

If you had known one of the Pilgrims, what would you have thought of him? Why did the people so highly value their charters? What is the meaning of toleration? Which of the colonies granted religious toleration? Which did not? What made this inexcusable in them? What sect suffered the most severe persecution? Who was Oliver Cromwell? What did the great rebellion in England have to do with the history of this country? What were Roger Williams's opinions about government? What was the object of the New England Confederation? Did it serve its purpose? Draw a map of the New England colonies, and show where the early settlements were made.

## CHAPTER VI

### MARYLAND — 1634

**112. Lord Baltimore's Grant.** — George Calvert, Lord Baltimore, obtained from Charles I a grant of land on the northern side of the Potomac River, as far

1632

as the fortieth parallel of latitude.

He called this part of the country Maryland, in honor of Queen Henrietta Maria, the king's wife.

**113. The Charter** given by the king made Lord Baltimore the proprietor, or owner, of Maryland, and he was to control it through the governors he sent out, without hindrance from the king. He was the first to receive a grant as proprietor. As a



FIRST LORD BALTIMORE

sign of his submission to the English government, he was to send the king every year two Indian arrows and one fifth of all the gold and silver found within his boundaries. The laws were to be made by a legislature chosen by the people, the settlers were to pay no taxes to the English, and were to enjoy all the rights of Englishmen. The charter had little to say about religion; but as Lord Baltimore desired to make Maryland a refuge for persecuted Catholics, he granted religious freedom to all Christians. Maryland and Rhode Island were the first of the colonies to practice religious toleration.

**114. St. Marys.**—Lord Baltimore did not live to see his plans carried out; but his son, Cecil Calvert, became the second Lord Baltimore and the proprietor of Maryland. His brother, Leonard Calvert, brought over two hundred settlers. They landed near the mouth of the Potomac River in 1634; the year before Roger Williams was banished from Massachusetts. They bought the site of an Indian village for their settlement, which they named St. Marys. Clothes, knives, axes, and hoes were given as presents to the Indians, and treaties of friendship were made with them. The Indian women taught the settlers' wives to make corn bread. The settlers raised a crop of corn the first year, and were saved much of the suffering from want which some of the other colonies experienced.



SECOND LORD BALTIMORE

**115. Prosperity of the Colony.**—The colony soon became prosperous, and other settlements were made. The lands were good, and the cultivation of tobacco with the help of negro slaves became general and profitable. The people lived on their plantations along the rivers and in the forests, and founded but few large towns, though commerce brought many ships to the harbors.

**116. Clayborne's Rebellion.**—The people of Virginia com-

plained because Lord Baltimore's grant covered a part of the territory embraced in their charter. William Clayborne, who lived in Virginia, had been employed by a company in England to buy furs from the Indians, and he wanted to exclude every one but himself and his company from the profits of that trade. Clayborne claimed Kent Island, in

1635



LANDING OF LEONARD CALVERT

Chesapeake Bay, under King James's charter to the London Company. The Virginians sided with Clayborne, but after a struggle with the settlers of Maryland, he was driven from the island. He afterwards raised a rebellion in Maryland, but was driven back into Virginia. When the case was carried to England for settlement, Charles I protected the Calverts in their rights.

The Indians were treated with kindness, and were peaceable until Clayborne returned some years later. He aroused their enmity and made trouble. The next year Clayborne gathered together his followers, and made an attack upon the colony. He succeeded in driving the governor of

1644-6

Maryland into Virginia, and did much damage by destroying the public records. Three years of trouble and disorder followed, until Calvert returned with troops to subdue the rebellion. Pardon was promised to all, and peace was restored.

**117. Religious War.** — During the early years of the colony, religious freedom was allowed to all Christians, and in 1649 the legislature passed the "Toleration Act." But at length the Protestants, having a majority in the legislature, passed a law forbidding Catholics the rights of citizens. A war followed, but in 1658 Oliver Cromwell sustained the power of the Calverts, and the former liberties were restored.

**118. Maryland a Royal Province.** — In 1691 King William made Maryland a royal province, and established the Church

of England; the people were taxed for its support. Some fifteen years later, the fourth Lord Baltimore gave up the Catholic religion; the province was restored to him as proprietor, and there were no further changes in the government until the Revolution.

**119. Public Improvements.** — A mail line between Philadelphia and the Potomac was established in 1695, and letters could be sent eight times



POSTAL SERVICE IN 1700

a year. Free schools were founded by law throughout the province.

## CHAPTER VII

NEW YORK — 1614

**120. Dutch Traders.** — The Dutch claimed that part of North America which Henry Hudson had discovered; and after his return the merchants of Holland sent out trading vessels to the new country. They established trading posts on the Hudson, or North, River and on Manhattan Island, and went back to Holland. Their ships were loaded with valuable furs bought from the Indians. 1610

**121. New Netherlands.** — Seven years after Captain Smith began his work at Jamestown, cabins were built on Manhattan Island, with a log fort for their protection, and the place was named New Amsterdam. After this, a number of Holland merchants united in forming the Dutch West India Company, and obtained a charter from their government allowing them to trade in the territory lying between South Virginia and New France. The country embraced in this charter was called New Netherlands, and extended from the Connecticut River to the Delaware. Trading posts for purchasing furs were soon established. 1614

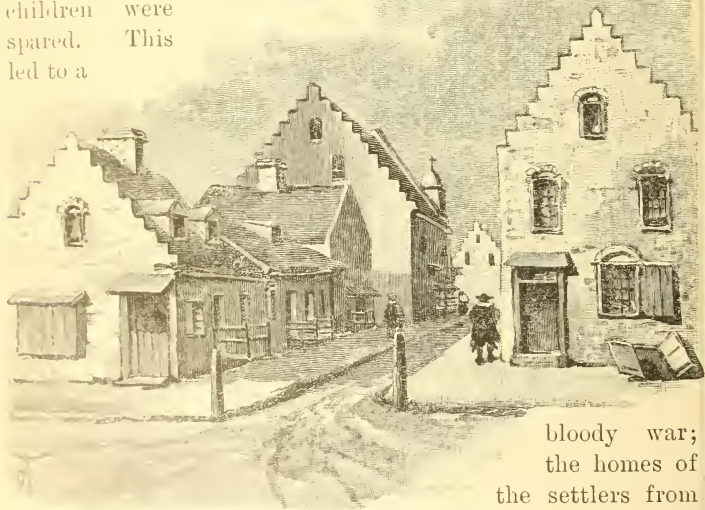
**122. Peter Minuit** (mĭn'-u-it) was sent to New Netherlands as its first governor. He bought Manhattan Island for beads, trinkets, and cheap goods worth sixty guilders, or about twenty-four dollars. The people of New Netherlands now proposed a covenant of friendship with the Plymouth colony. The Plymouth governor accepted the proposal, but reminded them that the forty-first degree of latitude was the boundary of New England and that the Dutch had no rights beyond it. 1626

**123. New Settlements.** — The settlers from Holland carried on a profitable trade in furs, but New Amsterdam grew slowly. Farther up the river Fort Orange was built. On Long Island, Staten Island, and out in New Jersey, wherever the rich soil or great numbers of beavers attracted, their settlements



were extended. They were careful to pay the Indians for all the land occupied.

**124. Trouble with Indians.** — The rum sold to the Indians sometimes made them quarrelsome. They did some things which the traders resented with cruelty, and the  
 1642 savages began to attack the settlements. A company of Indians who had been fighting with the Mohawks, fled to the banks of the Hudson, near Manhattan Island, and asked the Dutch for help. Instead of helping them, the governor sent a band of men to surprise and murder them. Neither the old, nor the sick, nor the mothers with their children were spared. This led to a



A STREET IN NEW AMSTERDAM

bloody war;  
 the homes of  
 the settlers from

the Hudson to the Connecticut were laid in ashes,

and the inmates killed by the furious savages. Among the victims was Mrs. Anne Hutchinson.

**125. Dutch Homes.** — The people in New Netherlands were very different from the Puritans in New England. Some of



themselves were rich men, and they brought with them costly furniture. Their houses were built of wood, with "many doors and windows," and with their gables toward the street. A stoop, or porch, formed the entrance, where the men often sat and smoked their pipes. Painted tiles were built around the fireplaces. Pine knots or tallow candles gave light at night. The Dutch housekeepers were cleanly and orderly. The floors were covered with white sand, in which fanciful figures were drawn with the broom. Instead of clocks and watches, the Dutch used hourglasses and sundials. There were also many windmills, such as were about their old homes in Holland.

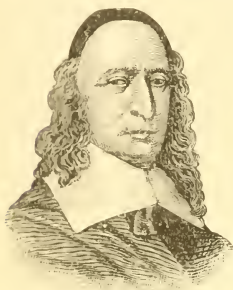
**126. Dutch Customs.** — Some of the old customs which these people brought with them from Holland are still retained by us. From them the children have learned to expect visits from "Santa Claus" or St. Nicholas, on Christmas eve, and to color eggs at Easter time. The women and girls learned to spin flax on the spinning wheel, which formed a part of the furniture in every house, just as the sewing machine does to-day. They wove all the linen used in the household; it was folded away in large chests made for the purpose. No young woman was considered ready to be married, until the linen chest was filled with all that she would need in her husband's home. Besides weaving the linen, the women knitted all the stockings and did all the sewing for the family.

The women wore high-heeled shoes with brightly colored stockings and skirts. They brushed their hair smoothly back under white muslin caps. The men wore woolen coats trimmed with large, bright buttons, and knee breeches and long stockings. At the knee and on the shoes were fastened large silver buckles. The hair was allowed to grow long and was gathered into a cue or long braid at the back of the head.

**127. The Duke of York.** — When the people in New Netherlands heard of the liberties which the charters had given to New England, they felt that their Dutch governors and patroon<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> **Patroons.** — The West India Company, which was composed of merchants in Holland, induced people to come to New Netherlands by offering to every

masters were making slaves of them, and they wished for more freedom. The English had always claimed New Netherlands, because it was discovered by the Cabots, and because Henry Hudson was an Englishman. When Charles II was restored to the throne, he gave this territory to his brother James, then Duke of York, who in 1664 sent over an armed fleet to take possession. When the troops arrived, the people, dissatisfied with their rulers, were unwilling to fight, and though Gov-



PETER STUYVESANT

ernor Stuyvesant desired to resist, he was obliged to sur- 1664

render to the British commander all the region claimed by the Dutch. Its name was changed to New York in honor of the duke, and Fort Orange was called Albany. New Amsterdam has been known as New York ever since.

#### 128. The Dutch and the English. —

The settlers did not receive from the English what they expected. They

were not allowed to choose their rulers, but had to submit to the control of governors sent over by the duke. When the English had been in New York about nine years, war began

1673

between England and Holland, and a Dutch fleet took possession of the city of New York. In little

more than a year from that time, a treaty between England and Holland gave New Netherlands again to the English. Major Edmund Andros, afterwards such a tyrant in the New England colonies, was sent out as governor by King James II, formerly the Duke of York. The settlers in New York complained so bitterly against Andros, that a new governor was appointed; and the people of that colony were allowed to

man who would bring a colony of fifty persons, a body of land sixteen miles in length, provided the land had not been occupied, and on condition that he paid the Indians for it. He was to have entire control of the colony with the title of "patroon" or "lord," but was not allowed to manufacture wool or cotton.

elect representatives for a legislature, and to adopt the same form of government as the other English colonies. New York continued to be an English colony until the Revolution.

**129. Indian Treaty.**—Because of some movements of the French, the governor of New York and the governor of Virginia in 1684 made a treaty with the Five Nations, or Iroquois Indians, living in the northern and western part of New York. This treaty protected the English from the French in Canada for many years. 1684

**130. Jacob Leisler.**—When the news of the crowning of William and Mary reached New York, the governor hurried back to England. Ten men, calling themselves a “committee of safety,” commissioned a captain of militia, named Jacob Leisler (līs'-ler), to take possession of the fort. About five hundred armed men joined him. He publicly promised to submit to the governor whom the king should appoint, whenever he should arrive. The next spring Leisler took possession of Albany, to which town the mayor of New York had fled. 1689

Leisler kept his place at the head of the government for nearly three years without opposition from the king. When Governor Sloughter was sent to New York, Leisler and his son-in-law, Milbourn, were imprisoned and tried for treason. Sloughter, while intoxicated, was persuaded to sign a warrant for their execution, and the next day they were hanged. Those who opposed Leisler were the aristocrats, the descendants of the old patroons, who wished a rich man to be allowed as many votes as he had estates.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> **The Pirates.**—At this period commerce suffered greatly from pirates. Their number had increased to a fearful extent, when several members of Parliament, encouraged by the king, fitted out a vessel and placed Captain Kidd of New York in command, to go in search of the sea robbers and to protect the commerce of the country. Soon after leaving England, Kidd made a bargain with his sailors to change the object of their enterprise, and he became one of the most notorious pirates. After several years of daring robbery, he was captured near Boston, and executed in England.

Some years after, Bonnet, Worley, and Blackbeard, three famous pirates, with their rendezvous on the southern coast, were also captured and killed.

## CHAPTER VIII

## NEW JERSEY — 1665

**131. Berkeley and Carteret.** — When the Duke of York took possession of New York, he gave the southern portion to two noblemen — Lord Berkeley and Sir George Carteret. These new owners were called “proprietors.” Sir George Carteret had been governor of the Isle of Jersey, near England, and the new province was called New Jersey in honor of his old home. It is said that when he landed he carried a hoe on his shoulder, to show that he intended to be a planter with the others. Lord Berkeley’s part was called West Jersey, Carteret’s East Jersey.

**132. The First Settlement.** — These noblemen, being anxious to encourage immigration, obtained promises in their charter that all sects of religion should enjoy equal rights, and that the government should consist of a governor

1665

and council appointed by the proprietors. No rent was to be paid for five years; no taxes were to be demanded except those imposed by the legislature of the colony. This liberal charter brought many persecuted families to the shores of this fertile region. The first English settlement was made at Elizabethtown, about one year after New Netherlands became New York. The town was named in honor of Sir George Carteret’s wife.



SETTLEMENTS IN THE JERSEYS, PENNSYLVANIA, AND DELAWARE

**133. The Jerseys sold.** — Some time after, two com-

panies of Quakers in England bought West Jersey from Lord Berkeley; and within a few years East Jersey also was purchased by a company largely composed of Quakers; William Penn, one of the new owners of West Jersey, was also one of the purchasers of George Carteret's share of the land.

**134. The Jerseys United.**—The rights of the proprietors were, after a time, given back to the queen of England, who, in 1702, united the two colonies into one, under the name of New Jersey. New York and New Jersey had the same governor, though New Jersey had its own legislature, elected by the people. This state of things continued through a number of years, and then the people of New Jersey sent a petition to the queen for a governor of their own. This was granted, and the crown continued to appoint its governors until the war for independence. 1702

**135. Princeton University.**—The settlers of this colony showed that they appreciated the importance of education by establishing the College of New Jersey. It was begun at Elizabethtown in 1746, but was afterwards removed to Princeton. It is now one of the leading universities of the country. 1746

## CHAPTER IX

### PENNSYLVANIA — 1681

**136. Pennsylvania Grant.**—William Penn's<sup>1</sup> investments in New Jersey had not been satisfactory. False reports about the government of the colony, and about the titles of land there, had reached England and kept people from emigrating. At his father's death, when he became the possessor of a large

<sup>1</sup> William Penn was educated at the University of Oxford, in England. His father, being much displeased because he had become a Quaker, sent him away from home to travel on the continent, hoping that, after he had seen more of the world, he would give up these new doctrines. When he returned, he became more firm than he had been before in the belief which his father opposed. He then engaged in the study of law. Once, after he had been released from prison, his father turned him from his door; he was saved from

fortune, he planned a new enterprise. A debt of sixteen thousand pounds sterling was due to his father's estate from the crown, and, desiring to provide homes for the Friends,

1681 he asked for a grant of land in America in payment. Charles II was very willing to pay him in that way. His grant included "three degrees of latitude by five degrees of longitude," lying beyond New Jersey and between New York and Maryland. The king called it Pennsylvania, meaning "Penn's Woods."

137. **Philadelphia.** — Penn immediately sent a large number of colonists to his territory.<sup>1</sup>

In 1682, four years before the rule of Andros in New England, he 1682 himself sailed from England with one hundred emigrants. They were nine weeks crossing the Atlantic. The vessel sailed up the Delaware, to a place "fringed with pines," between the Schuylkill and the Delaware rivers, which had been selected for his city. The Swedes, who had been the first to settle in that part of the country, sold them the land.

Penn called the city Philadelphia, or "city of brotherly love." In three years six hundred houses were built.

138. **Treaty with the Indians.** — Penn met a company of Indian chiefs on the banks of the Delaware, and made a treaty

suffering by his mother's kindness. The cruel treatment he received in England caused him to turn his attention to the colonies in New Jersey.

William Penn did more than any other man of his day to benefit his fellow-men. His faithfulness to duty and his firm adherence to the right made him great; and the good that he did made his name and his memory dear to thousands. He died in England in 1718, after his return from Pennsylvania.

<sup>1</sup> Lots of land containing one thousand acres were sold to the Quakers at one penny per acre.



WILLIAM PENN



with them. The old chiefs seated themselves in a semicircle on the ground, and the younger ones were grouped behind them. Penn had already sent them messages of friendship, which had made them ready to trust him. He said to them: "We meet on the broad pathway of truth and good will. No advantage shall be taken on either side, but all shall be openness and love. We are all one flesh and one blood."

The Indians accepted his presents and gave him a belt of wampum as a sign of their friendship. They replied to him: "We will live with William Penn and his children in love, so long as the moon and the sun shall endure." The red men were



QUAKERS IN PENNSYLVANIA

true to the promise they made, and this contract was never broken. While other settlements were suffering all the horrors of Indian wars, the people in Pennsylvania, as long as the colony was controlled by the Friends, lived in peace and safety. Penn paid the Indians for their lands, and refused to sell them spirits.

**139. Government.** — Every man who wished to vote or hold office was required to believe in God and to rest from labor on the Sabbath day. Penn was the proprietor, and appointed governors for the province; his sons succeeded him.

**140. Troubles.** — After remaining in America about two years, Penn returned to England. He left the colony in a happy and prosperous condition; it numbered seven thousand. During his absence, troubles arose.

1684

The people refused to pay the rents by which Penn hoped to be repaid for the land bought from the Indians, and for the other expenses which he had borne for the settlers.

**141. Growth.** — Many of the early settlers of this province were industrious farmers, and the rich soil rewarded their labors. The commerce of the colony also was profitable. Newspapers were printed in Philadelphia at an early day, though thirty years later than in Boston. Benjamin Franklin, who went there as a printer six years after the death of William Penn, became the editor of one of them.

The city of Philadelphia at the time of its founder's death had a population of ten thousand.

**142. Mason and Dixon's Line.** — As so little was known of the geography of America at the time the grants of land were given, serious mistakes were made. Such a mistake was the cause of a dispute between Lord Baltimore and William Penn, continued by their successors, about the boundary line between Maryland and Pennsylvania. At last the question was referred to England for settlement.

1767 Two surveyors, Charles Mason and Jeremiah Dixon, were employed. Their survey decided the matter by fixing the present boundary for the most part on the parallel of  $39^{\circ} 43'$  north latitude. At the end of every fifth mile was set up a stone, having the arms of the Penn family engraved on one side and of Lord Baltimore on the other. Between these the miles were marked with smaller stones. For many years this has been known as Mason and Dixon's line. At the time it was fixed, all the colonies were slaveholding, but later it became the dividing line between the slave states and the free states.

## CHAPTER X

### DELAWARE — 1638

**143. New Sweden.**<sup>1</sup> — Peter Minuit, who had been the first governor in New Netherlands, was afterwards employed by the

<sup>1</sup> Gustavus Adolphus. — While other nations of Europe were sending colonies to America, Gustavus Adolphus, the king of Sweden, anxious to extend the Protestant religion and to "benefit the persecuted," resolved to plant a

Swedish government, to bring over to America a number of Swedes and Finns. They bought land on the Delaware Bay from the Indians, and named it New Sweden. Their fort was called Christina in honor of the young queen of Sweden. Other colonists came afterwards and settled near the mouth of the Schuylkill. 1638

**144. The Dutch** claimed this part of the country, and built a fort five miles from Fort Christina. The Swedes destroyed the new fort, and drove the Dutch away. After this, the governor of New Netherlands went to New Sweden with six hundred armed men, and compelled the Swedes to surrender and acknowledge New Sweden to be a part of New Netherlands.

**145. The English.** — When the Duke of York asserted his claim to the Dutch possessions, this region was included in his territory; but William Penn obtained from the duke a deed to Newcastle and the country twelve miles around it, together with that extending southward along the river to Cape Henlopen. This region was called the “Three Lower Counties of the Delaware.”

The inhabitants of these counties were instructed to send delegates to the Pennsylvania assembly, in order that all the settlements might be under the same government; but jealousies caused by differences of religion and by desire for office led to a quarrel, and the members from the Lower Counties withdrew from the assembly. At their own request they were allowed a separate legislature and a lieutenant governor.

When Penn returned to England, he obtained a new charter, which provided for them a separate government; but they remained under the governor of Pennsylvania until the Revolution.

colony of Protestants in the New World. Before he accomplished this design, the German war engaged his attention, and he was killed in one of its battles. His little daughter Christina, who was then only six years old, succeeded him as queen of Sweden. One of her father's friends, Oxenstiern, strove to fulfill the king's wishes in regard to the colony.

## QUESTIONS FOR STUDY

Why did Lord Baltimore wish to found the Maryland colony? What special feature of the Maryland government made it attractive to emigrants? How did the Virginians feel toward their new neighbors? What induced settlers to come to New Netherlands? What made Manhattan Island a suitable place for a trading station? Why has New York become a great city? Who were the patroons? Tell about Leisler's rebellion. Who was Captain Kidd? What led to the settlement of New Jersey? How did the people show their appreciation of education? What causes led to Penn's ownership of Pennsylvania? How did he treat the Indians? What part did the Swedes take in the colonization of America? State the principal features of proprietary, royal, and charter governments.

## CHAPTER XI

## NORTH CAROLINA — 1653

**146. Carolina Grant.** — In 1663 a grant of all the territory between Virginia and Florida was given by Charles II to Lord Clarendon and seven other English noblemen who had helped him to regain the crown. They were to be the proprietors, somewhat as Lord Baltimore was in Maryland. The whole region was known by the general name of Carolina; and years passed before there was a division between the northern and southern provinces. Early French settlers who had built a fort at Port Royal, had named it Carolina for Charles IX of France. The name was now retained in honor of the king of England.

**147. The Grand Model.** — The proprietors expected to found a great empire, which would contain an order of nobility similar to that of the old countries of Europe. After consulting John Locke, who was a famous philosopher in England, a plan of government for the new colony was drawn up; this constitution was called the "Grand Model." The people under its rule were to enjoy freedom in religion, but the lands were to belong to noblemen, called earls and barons, and the country

was to be under the control of a few persons. The plan was found unsuitable for people who lived in log houses, on plantations often miles apart, and who dressed in homespun and deerskin. The proprietors and earls and barons lived in England, and the "Grand Model" was never fully carried out.

**148. Albemarle and Clarendon.** — Before the charter was given, people from Virginia had cleared, and built houses on, some of the rich lands in the northeastern part of this region. The tract of land which contained these settlements was named Albemarle, for the Duke of Albemarle, one of the proprietors in England. Another colony made its settlement on the Cape Fear River, and received the name of Clarendon, in honor of Lord Clarendon, another of the proprietors.

**149. Dissatisfaction.** — The people in Albemarle became dissatisfied, because the proprietors claimed all the land and the right to control the inhabitants, and because they could not own their plantations as the people of Virginia did. They soon began openly to rebel against their rulers; but when they were assured that the changes which they wished should be made, quiet was restored. They were then allowed a legislature, the representatives of which were to be chosen by the people, and a governor and council to be appointed by the proprietors.

**150. The Colonies United.** — The two colonies, Albemarle and Clarendon, each of which had been ruled by its own governor, were, the next year, united into one province and called North Carolina. The government was in the hands of bad men for a long time. Riots among the people and quarrels among their leaders kept the country in a state of discord many years.

**151. John Archdale.** — The misrule of incompetent governors sent out by the proprietors was stopped for a time, when John Archdale, a Quaker and a wise and upright man, was appointed governor. By his careful man-

agement, prosperity and peace were restored. He reduced the quitrents, allowed the colonists to elect representatives to an assembly, and treated the Indians and Spaniards in such a way as to preserve peace with them.

New settlements were made and churches were built; yet nearly all the country was still a wilderness. Instead of traveling over roads, the people found their way from one plantation to another by paths through the forest, where the trees had been "blazed" or notched with an ax, to show the right direction. Some of the settlers raised tobacco, others made tar and turpentine from the trees of the pine forests, and many of the men spent their time in hunting and trapping beavers and other animals for their furs, which they sold to the traders.

**152. Indian War.**—The Tuscarora and Coree Indians became alarmed at the rapid advance of the white settlements, and determined to drive the palefaces from the country.

1712 In 1712, twelve hundred of them joined in a plot of destruction. On the night appointed for the attack, they went in small parties to the houses throughout the colony, and were received as friends. Then, pretending to be displeased with the supper that had been set for them, they began to murder men, women, and children. The militia came together as soon as possible, and stopped the massacre.

**153. North Carolina a Royal Province.**—For a number of years the population increased very slowly; but as the fertility of the inland portions of the country began to be known, settlers came more rapidly. The proprietors sold their right to the king in 1729, and North Carolina became a royal province. Its governors were appointed by the king until the Revolution.



## CHAPTER XII

## SOUTH CAROLINA — 1670

**154. Charleston.** — Seven years after the grant of Carolina, and fifty years after the Pilgrims landed at Plymouth, William Sayle brought out a company of emigrants from England and made a settlement on the southern bank of the Ashley River. This was the first permanent white settlement made in what is now known as South Carolina, and was the beginning of Old Charleston. The situation of the first settlement was inconvenient for the approach of large vessels, and ten years after the people removed to the harbor of Charleston. The new settlement grew rapidly in size and in commercial importance.<sup>1</sup>

**155. Negroes.** — Soon after this settlement was made, a company of Englishmen came from Barbados and brought with them about two hundred negro slaves. These were the first negroes in this part of Carolina.

**156. Government.** — Although the settlement at Charleston was made under the same charter with Albemarle and Clarendon, yet as the two colonies were so far apart, it was thought best to have a separate government.

**157. Cavaliers and Dissenters.** — The people of South Carolina became divided into two political parties. One party consisted of men called "Cavaliers," who belonged to the Church of England, and who had received large grants of land from the proprietors. The other party was made up of "Dissenters" — persons who had left the English church, and who wished the people to adopt a democratic form of government. The Cavaliers thought all the laws sent from England ought to be strictly obeyed; the Dissenters contended, that only those laws that were for the good of the country in its condition at that

<sup>1</sup> After New Netherlands had passed into the hands of the English, a number of Dutch families left that province and settled in South Carolina. This increased the number of inhabitants, and also brought a good class of people into the new colony.

time should be binding. No governor was able to please both classes, and for that reason each was removed from his office in a short time.

**158. Quitrents.**—The proprietors charged the settlers a small amount, called quitrent, on the lands they had taken.

1686 Although it was a small sum on each acre, they felt unwilling to pay it, because so much of the land was not cultivated, and therefore brought them no profit. The officers whom the governor appointed to collect the rent did not succeed in getting it, and in 1686 he declared the country



RICE FIELD NEAR CHARLESTON

to be under martial law—that is, under the laws which govern in time of war. The legislature met, ordered the governor to leave the country, and declared him unworthy of holding an office in the colony.<sup>1</sup>

**159. Rice and Indigo.**—The captain of a ship from Madagascar brought to South Carolina a package of rice seed. He

<sup>1</sup> Seth Sothel. — In the midst of these troubles, Seth Sothel, who had been driven from North Carolina, arrived. Being one of the proprietors, he took upon himself the control of the government. Here he was as tyrannical as he had been when governor of North Carolina. Traders from Bermuda and other places were seized as pirates: plantations were taken from their owners, and the planters were obliged to pay large sums to be allowed to keep their lands.

described the plant, and said the rice was excellent as an article of food. The seed was divided among several gentlemen, who, after planting it, became so much pleased with it that they began to raise it in quantities. In 1694 time it became one of the chief products of the state, and a large number of slaves were employed in the rice fields in the lowlands of the coast. Indigo also was extensively raised, until the culture of cotton became more profitable.

The rice planters in South Carolina soon made fortunes, and were able to send their sons to the best schools of England. In this way, many of the young men became educated gentlemen.

**160. French Settlers.**—A large company of Huguenots, who had been persecuted in France because of their religion, came

1696 to South Carolina. The mild climate reminded them of the summers at home. They began to raise the mulberry and the silk-worm, and they were soon at work in their new homes as they had been in those they had left behind. They were industrious and peaceable, and many of them were educated gentlemen; but



FRENCH SETTLERS OF SOUTH CAROLINA

the English hated them because they were French. The Huguenots became anxious about the titles to their lands, and the feeling between the two grew to be so strong that one of the proprietors came over from England to settle their differences. He relieved them all of the quitrent, and had roads

His conduct became so unbearable, that the legislature determined to banish him and rid the people of his injustice. When the proprietors heard of his conduct, they recalled him to England for trial.

made through the country. He did much to soften the hatred toward the French settlers. They remained, and the influence of their refinement and culture was felt for a long time by the people among whom they lived.

**161. The Yemassee War.** — While England was at war with France and Spain, the Spaniards in Florida did much to annoy the people of Carolina. The traders in South Caro-

1712  
lina had paid the Indians in advance for their furs, and kept urging them to bring in the number for which they had been paid. At the same time, the Spaniards excited them against the white settlers. The Yemassees, the most warlike tribe of the southern Indians, sent a messenger with a bloody stick to all the tribes from Florida to Cape Fear, inviting them to join in a war which should drive the palefaces from their shores.

The governor called out all the men who could bear arms, and prepared to meet the savages. The Yemassees fought desperately, but were compelled to retreat. They left death and ruin behind them in South Carolina. After they were driven out, forts were built along the border to protect the colony. The Indians had learned that it was impossible for them to destroy the white settlements, and they never attempted that again, though they annoyed the plantations nearest them by their raiding parties.

**162. South Carolina a Royal Province.** — The unwise management of the proprietors, under which there had been so much bad feeling among the people, was brought to an  
1729  
end by the king. He bought all of Carolina, separated the settlements into North and South Carolina, and made them royal provinces. In return for his protection, they were required to give England all the benefit of their trade.

## CHAPTER XIII

GEORGIA — 1733

**163. The Thirteenth Colony.** — Georgia has been called the youngest of the thirteen colonies, because it was the last one to be settled. It was founded by James Oglethorpe, a member of Parliament, and at one time an officer in the British army. In those days, by the laws of England, men were imprisoned for debt. When Oglethorpe visited the English prisons, and saw hundreds of such prisoners confined within the dark walls and separated from their families, he thought of a plan to give them homes in America, where they might begin life anew free from the disgrace of debt.



JAMES OGLETHORPE

**164. The Charter.** — For this purpose, he obtained from King George II a charter for the country lying between the Savannah and the Altamaha rivers, and extending westward from their head waters to the Pacific Ocean. The new colony was named Georgia, in honor of the king, and placed under the control of trustees for twenty-one years. The men appointed as trustees were among the best and most prominent of Great Britain. Among them were noblemen, members of Parliament, and clergymen of the Church of England. Parliament contributed ten thousand pounds toward establishing settlements. The seal of the trustees showed silkworms at work, and bore the words "*Non sibi, sed aliis*," meaning "not for themselves, but for others."



**165. First Settlers.** — In November, 1732, one hundred and twenty-five years after the settlement of Jamestown, Virginia, Oglethorpe sailed with one hundred and twenty  
1732 emigrants. None had been allowed to join the party who had not been proved to be men of good character and respectable birth. All were unfortunate, but honest; and no one was taken without the consent of his creditor. In the other colonies every man who came had been admitted. But Georgia permitted no one to enter her borders who was not “by competent authority adjudged worthy of the rights of citizenship.” Freedom in religion was allowed to all but Roman Catholics. The great object in founding this colony was the relief of human suffering.

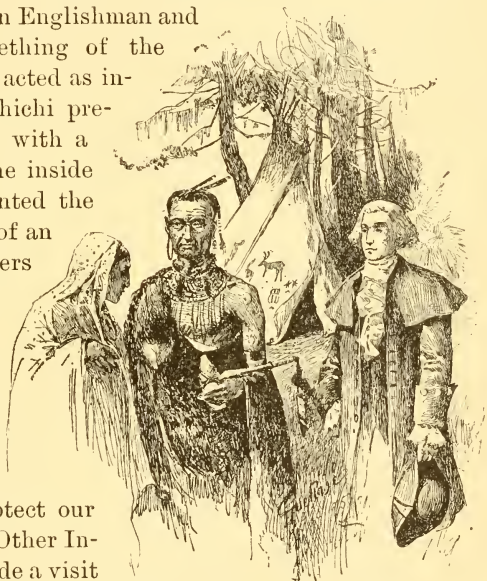
Each of the settlers agreed to clear and cultivate a certain portion of the fifty acres of land allotted to him, and to plant one hundred white mulberry trees upon every ten acres cleared. The ship *Anne* in which they sailed was supplied with everything they would need in their new homes — stores of provisions, farmers’ tools, and arms. The last Sabbath was spent at Milton, on the bank of the Thames, where they worshiped together in the parish church. Mr. Amatis from Piedmont, Italy, was on board. He had been employed to teach them to raise silkworms and wind silk. On their arrival at Charleston, the governor of South Carolina received them with much kindness.

**166. Savannah.** — About the last of January, 1733, Oglethorpe reached the coast of Georgia. He sailed up the Savannah River to select a site for his settlement. On a high bluff, shaded by pine trees interspersed with live oaks and magnolias, he chose a place and called it Savannah. A short  
1733 time afterwards, the immigrants reached this place. They found the yellow jessamine shedding its fragrance everywhere, and the forest filled with the songs of birds. The streets of the future city were laid out with great care, leaving spaces for public squares at regular distances. At first all the houses were built of rough boards, and on one plan.



**167. Rents.** — The colonists in Georgia were required to pay an annual rent of twenty shillings for every hundred acres of land, and if any part of this sum were unpaid, in six months after it became due the land was to become again the property of the trustees.

**168. The Indians.** — Not far away was an Indian village, in which lived an old chief of the Muscogee tribe named Tomochichi (tom-o-chē'-chē). Oglethorpe made him a visit, and Mary Musgrove, an Indian woman who had married an Englishman and had learned something of the English language, acted as interpreter. Tomochichi presented Oglethorpe with a buffalo robe, on the inside of which were painted the head and feathers of an eagle. "The feathers of the eagle are soft," said he, "and signify love; the buffalo skin is warm, and is the emblem of protection. Therefore, love and protect our little families." Other Indian chieftains made a visit to their English neighbors, and signed a treaty to give up the country as far south as the St. Johns. The trustees kept the Indians on terms of friendship by making them presents once a year of guns, ammunition, and other articles. The guns, useful to them in killing deer, were given in small numbers. Oglethorpe's kind treatment of the Indians secured their friendship, and opened the

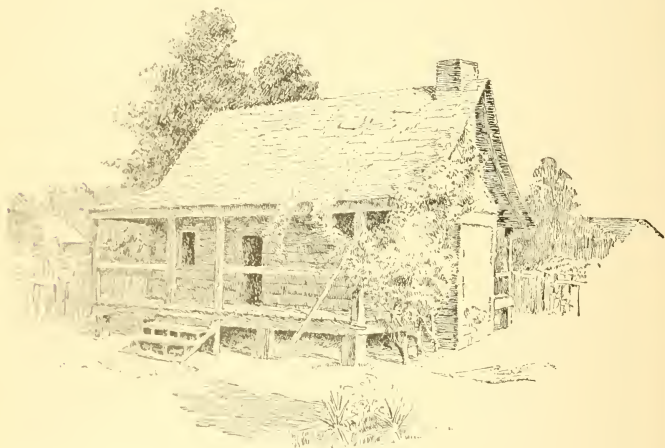


OGLETHORPE, TOMOCHICHI, AND  
MARY MUSGROVE

way for the missionaries, who came afterwards, to teach them of the true God.

169. The Salzburgers were inhabitants of a valley among the Alps, and many of them had become Lutherans. Leopold,

1734 Duke of Austria, persecuted these Protestants, and drove them from their country, often separating husbands from wives, and children from parents. The trustees in England collected money, and offered fifty of these suffering families a free passage to Georgia, a year's supply of provisions, and a home free of rent for ten years. In a few months after Oglethorpe and his party landed, these new



SALZBURG HOUSE

settlers came with their Bibles and hymn books and catechisms. Their leader was allowed to select a place for their settlement. The people wanted a country that abounded with hills and pure springs of water. Oglethorpe accompanied them on their journey to the interior. After traveling along the bank of the Savannah about thirty miles, they were so much pleased that they did not care to go farther. As an evidence of their gratitude to God, they sang a psalm and set

up a stone; they named the place Ebenezer, which means, "Hitherto hath the Lord helped us."<sup>1</sup>

**170. Augusta.** — The city of Augusta, on the Savannah River, was begun about 1735. Being near to the Cherokee country, it was at first inhabited only by traders, but it soon became a place of importance. 1735

**171. Negro Slaves forbidden.** — The trustees would not allow rum or African slaves to be brought to Georgia. They thought the white men would not care to work if they had slaves; they also feared that the Spaniards in Florida would incite the slaves to insurrection, or entice them away from their masters.

**172. The Wesleys.** — Thinking that the safety of the colony might be better secured by bringing the Indians more completely under the influence of the English people, Oglethorpe invited Tomochichi and several other chiefs to go with him on a visit to England. They were very much interested in all they saw, and were especially impressed with the strength and style of the London houses. Many attentions were shown them, and many presents given them, during their stay. They returned with feelings of lasting respect and affection for their white friends.



JOHN WESLEY PREACHING

This visit aroused the interest of the trustees in their race, and it was determined that the Gospel should be sent to them.

<sup>1</sup> This part of the country has since been called Effingham County, in honor of Lord Effingham, who believed the colonies were right in asserting their independence. He resigned his position in the army to avoid using his sword against them.

When Oglethorpe's party sailed for America, the Rev. John Wesley, a young minister who had been educated at the University of Oxford, was sent with him. His mission was to preach to the colonists and the Indians. He was afterwards the founder of the Methodist Episcopal Church. His brother, Charles Wesley, went as private secretary to Mr. Oglethorpe. A new company of emigrants, mostly Salzburger and Moravians, were on board the vessel. The deep piety of these people, and the patience with which they endured their trials, so impressed John Wesley that it was the cause of his conversion. He afterwards said, that, though he had started out to teach the Christian religion to savages, he had not yet been converted to God.

**173.** The Rev. George Whitefield, a friend of the Wesleys, also came to preach in Georgia. Mr. Charles Wesley suggested to him the need of an orphans' home. While on a visit to Ebenezer he noticed the good that was being accomplished by the orphan school which the Salzburger had begun, and resolved to establish one at Savannah. He sailed for England in order to raise the money needed for the buildings. There he preached to immense congrega-

tions in the open air, and asked for contributions. From the crowds attracted by his eloquence he collected more than one thousand pounds; and the trustees granted him five hundred acres of land, about ten miles from Savannah.



FIRST METHODIST CHURCH IN AMERICA

Two years after his first arrival in America the orphan house was begun: he called it Bethesda, meaning "house of mercy." It still remains — a monument to George Whitefield.

**174.** Silk, Indigo, and Rice. — Because mulberry trees grew

well in Georgia, and the climate seemed favorable to the silkworm, the trustees believed that raw silk of fine quality could be profitably produced by the settlers, and in that way much of the money paid to foreign countries could be saved. The Salzburger became very successful in this work, and in one year the raw silk that they sold amounted to ten thousand pounds. The queen was so much pleased with some sent to England, that it was woven and made into a dress for her, and she wore it at court on her birthday. But when the people found that they could earn twice as much money at other kinds of labor, they gave up the culture of silk. Indigo and rice, which had been raised extensively in South Carolina, became staples of Georgia.

**175. Homes of the Settlers.** — The house of the settler in the southern colonies was generally built of logs, cut from the forest of pines around it. The sides of the logs were hewn so as to make a flat side for the wall, and the spaces between them were filled with angular pieces of wood called chinks. The house consisted generally of two large rooms, with a wide, open hall running between them. Glass windows were not even thought of. A rude piazza often extended across the entire front, and the yellow jessamine or honeysuckle trailed over it. One end of this piazza always contained a shelf, on which stood a wooden bucket filled with spring water, and above was hung a gourd for the use of the family and their guests. A few steps back of the house was the kitchen, where the meals were prepared by a negro cook and sent to the family; and not far off stood the smokehouse, without which no country home was complete. It held the year's supply of meat. The cabins for the negroes were placed in groups at a convenient distance from the "big house," a name they gave the master's dwelling.

**176. Spanish Claims.** — The Spaniards claimed that the new province was a part of Florida, and they were constantly threatening the settlements. Forts were built upon the coast for the protection of the southern border.



After the breaking out of war between France and England, Oglethorpe invaded Florida and made an attack upon St. Augustine. The expedition was unsuccessful, but proved of great advantage to the colonists. Afterwards, when information was received that the Spanish intended to send an army to Georgia and drive out the English settlers, he returned to England and brought back with him six hundred soldiers to defend the colony. He was made commander in chief of all the militia of Georgia and South Carolina, with the title of general. In 1742 the Spaniards invaded Georgia, but the English were victorious, and Georgia was freed. The people returned thanks to God for their deliverance. The trouble was finally settled by a treaty made at the close of the Seven Years' War, by which Spain gave Florida to England. The boundary of Georgia was then extended southward to the thirty-first parallel, and to the Mississippi on the west.

**177. Georgia a Royal Province.** — Oglethorpe returned to England. After his departure rum was brought into the colony and sold, and the Georgians hired slaves from South  
1752 Carolina. In a short time, slaves were brought from Africa to Savannah. In 1752, the trustees returned to the king their rights to Georgia, and it became a royal province.

Oglethorpe never revisited the colony on which he had spent ten years of labor. He died in England in 1785.

#### QUESTIONS FOR STUDY

What changes have been made, within the last one hundred and fifty years, in the laws for enforcing the payment of debts? Give your opinion of Oglethorpe's character. Tell the history of the rice industry and its effects upon the country. What similarity do you find in the circumstances of the founding of Georgia and Pennsylvania?

Which colonies were settled by people who had been persecuted because of their religion? Who were the Huguenots? Why did they settle in the English colonies? Which colonies were settled through the aid of benevolent founders? Tell under which form of government each of the colonies was ruled. What was the first book printed in America? Where was our first college? What other colleges were founded in the colonies?



What were the first steps toward union in the colonies? Why did every colony build forts? Where did the shipbuilders live? Who were the fishermen? What part of the country had the largest trade? Why were there so few large towns in the South? Who were the laborers of the South? What social distinctions were the result? In what respect did the classes of society in New England differ from those in the South?

Make a table of the settlement of the thirteen colonies, using the following form :

THE THIRTEEN COLONIES

COLONY	DATE OF FIRST SETTLEMENT	BY WHOM	KIND OF GOVERNMENT

## CHAPTER XIV

### CONFLICTING FRENCH AND ENGLISH CLAIMS

**178. France and England.**—As the commerce of the world reached out to the ports of America, jealousies arose among the nations about the profits each one acquired from trade or possessions there. France grew to be an important naval power, and became England's rival in the New World. Former wars between the two countries had already caused ill will between the people. In addition to this, they were separated by religious differences; France held to the Roman Catholic faith, while England had become Protestant.

**179. Extension of the French Territory.**—Soon after the early settlements were made in New France, and while Captain Smith and his men were building their cabin homes at Jamestown, the French priests traveled from tribe to tribe among the northern and western Indians, winning many converts to the Catholic religion. They gained the good will of the Indians by giving them presents. In the wilderness around Lake Superior and Lake Michigan, in New York as far as Albany, and along the Kennebec in Maine, they set up

1607-20

the cross in the name of their religion, and placed upon it a wooden shield engraved with lilies—the national emblem of France. In this way they claimed for their king all the country drained by the St. Lawrence.

**180. The Mississippi.**—The Indians told the French missionaries of a great river, to the west of them, “full of monsters which devour both men and canoes,” and flowing through low, hot lands filled with disease and death. Marquette (mar-ket'), one of their most daring priests, was sent by Frontenac, the governor of New France, to find and explore this stream, and to claim the country watered by it for France.

**181. Marquette's Journey.**—In 1673, Marquette set out with Joliet (zhoh-e-ay'), five other companions, and two Indian guides. They went from Lake Erie to Lake Michigan, and then up the Fox River. They carried their canoes from the head water of the Fox River to the head of the Wisconsin. There the guides left them. Marquette and his party sailed on down the Wisconsin, through the silent, uninhabited forests and plains. Seven days afterwards they were on the bosom of the mighty Mississippi. They floated on beyond the mouth of the Arkansas, and having learned that the Mississippi did not flow into the Atlantic nor into the Gulf of California, they returned to Lake Michigan.

**182. La Salle.**—In 1679 La Salle (la-sal'), a young French fur trader, explored Lakes Ontario, Erie, Huron, and Michigan. He obtained permission from the French king to extend the exploration of the Mississippi. He built a fort on Lake Erie at the mouth of the Maumee, and one on the Illinois River.

**183. Louisiana.**—After long delays and many difficulties, in 1682, La Salle and his men sailed down the Mississippi to its mouth. He named the region through which he passed, Louisiana, and added it to the possessions of France. This news reached Paris the same year.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Texas.—Two years after La Salle sailed down the Mississippi, he led a party of settlers from France to the new country. The ships went

**184. The Struggle begun.** — The English felt that the French were intruding upon British territory; the claims of some of the English charters extended from the Atlantic to the Pacific, and the colonists were unwilling to be confined to a narrow strip of country bordering on the Atlantic. The French were anxious to hold all the territory that they had explored, and



LA SALLE ON THE MISSISSIPPI

much more; besides, they wished to reserve for themselves all the profits from the Indian trade in furs. A series of wars between the colonies of the two countries increased the ill feeling. The first three of these, caused by wars between England and France, were King William's War (1689-97), Queen Anne's War (1702-13), and King George's War (1744-48).

too far westward, and the emigrants landed on the coast of Texas. The vessel which contained the provisions and the outfit for the colony was wrecked near the harbor, and for this reason some of the families returned with the other ship to France. La Salle determined to find the Mississippi and go to Canada for assistance, but on the way he was murdered by one of his companions. Because of the coming of these Frenchmen, Texas was claimed as a part of Louisiana, though all who remained perished, and this attempt at planting a colony was a failure.

**185. Indians at Work for the French.** — The villages near the Canadian border suffered most from attacks during these wars. Often, while the inhabitants were at work in their fields, they were surprised by the report of guns near them, and, in another moment, whooping savages, led on by French commanders, were murdering them with tomahawks. The villagers were often awakened at night by the enemy's frightful war whoop and the glare of burning houses. All who could escape fled with the scanty clothing they could gather in the haste and confusion of their flight. Fortified houses and forts were built for protection in such attacks.<sup>1</sup>

**186. French Forts.** — During these years, the French were busy building along the Mississippi and the great lakes of the northwest, until they had a series of forts and trading posts from the St. Lawrence to the Gulf of Mexico. Fort Niagara, which had been erected at the mouth of the Niagara River by the French missionaries, was repaired and strengthened, to gain the respect of the Iroquois Indians and to shut out the English from the fur trade. Another fort was built at Crown Point on Lake Champlain, that its guns might prevent the English from invading Canada by that route, and Fort Vincennes on the Wabash River was intended to protect French traders on the way from Canada to the Mississippi.

<sup>1</sup> **Haverhill.** — In the town of Haverhill, Massachusetts, a party of Indians surrounded the house of Thomas Dustin. He was away in his field at work and returned too late to save his home. As he came, his children ran to meet him. Placing himself between the children and the Indians, he hurried the little ones before him and defended them with his gun until they reached a place of safety. The savages left his home in ashes, and killed his baby by dashing its head against a tree. They led his wife away as a captive.

Mrs. Dustin, another white woman, and a boy were kept in a wigwam in which two Indian families lived on an island in the Merrimac River. One night, while the families were asleep, the two women and the boy armed themselves with tomahawks and killed ten of the sleeping Indians. In a few days, they surprised their friends by their return to Haverhill.

## CHAPTER XV

## THE FRENCH AND INDIAN WAR — 1754-63

**187. Cause.** — This last colonial war was of much greater importance than any that preceded it. It began by a struggle between the English and French for the ownership of the Ohio valley. The Iroquois Indians, or Five Nations, who occupied the wide space of territory between the French and the English provinces, had kept them apart for a long time. Southwest of this nation lay the rich valley of the Ohio and its tributaries. A company of Virginians and Englishmen received from the king of England a grant for 1749 land lying on the Ohio River, and also the right to trade with the Indians. They surveyed the country west of the mountains, opened roads, and built a trading post on the Monongahela River. When the French heard that the English were preparing to settle in this region, they sent traders to undersell the Virginians, and troops to build forts near them.

**188. Washington.** — These French troops made prisoners of some of the Englishmen, and Governor Dinwiddie, of Virginia, sent Major George Washington with a 1753 letter to the French

commander, telling him that the land claimed by the Ohio Company belonged to Virginia, and asking him to take away his troops, as they had no right there during a time of peace. Washington was then twenty-one years of age.



WASHINGTON AT THE TIME OF HIS JOURNEY

**189. The Journey.** — The French fort, Venango, was some

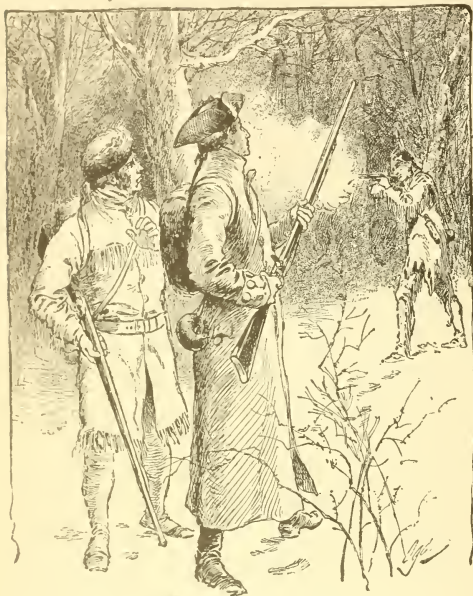








distance north of the Ohio on the Allegheny River. Washington and his companions reached it in December. Their journey through the wilderness had been full of danger. It led



THE INDIAN ATTACKS WASHINGTON

them over mountains covered with snow and through swollen streams. They often waded through water which froze into ice upon their clothes as they went. St. Pierre, the French commandant, gave Washington a written answer to the governor's letter.

Washington started homeward with but one companion. On the way Washington was fired upon by

an Indian, but escaped unhurt. Before they could cross the Allegheny River, they spent a day making a raft, with a hatchet. In the midst of the river the raft was caught by the floating ice, and while trying to manage it with a pole Washington was thrown into the water. He saved himself by holding to one of the raft logs. The cold, dark night was spent upon an island. In the morning a solid sheet of ice covered the water, and they crossed with less trouble. They reached home in one month after leaving Fort Venango.

190. The Answer. — St. Pierre's letter informed the governor that he had come by the order of his general, and that

he had been sent to take possession of the country in the name of France.

**191. Fort Duquesne.** — Governor Dinwiddie sent out a party of men to build a fort at the junction of the Allegheny and Monongahela rivers. In the spring a regiment of militia was sent under Colonel Frye, with Wash-  
1754  
ington as second in command. While this force was on the way, the men who were building the fort were driven away by the French, who took possession of the place and finished the building. They named it Fort Duquesne (du-kān'), in honor of the governor general of Canada.

French troops were sent from the fort to meet the Virginians, but friendly Indians warned Washington of their coming, and he marched with a body of men through the heavy rain of a dark night to surprise them. Nearly all of the Frenchmen were killed or captured.

**192. Fort Necessity.** — At a place called Great Meadows, within fifty miles of Fort Duquesne, in what is now Fayette County, Pennsylvania, Washington built a fort. The wagons which were to bring provisions for the Virginia soldiers were delayed, and they suffered so long from scarcity of food that the fort was called Fort Necessity. About this time the colonel of the regiment died, and Washington, being next in rank, succeeded him. He was attacked by a large French force; after a brave fight he was compelled to surrender, but he and his command were allowed to return to Virginia.

**193. Franklin's Plan for Union.** — The common danger helped to draw the colonies nearer to each other, and they all agreed to help Virginia in resisting the French. The New  
1754  
England Confederation had taught them the value of union. At Albany, New York, delegates from the Iroquois Indians, who, by union with the Tuscaroras, had now become the Six Nations, were met by delegates from the colonies, and a treaty was made which secured for the English the friendship of the Iroquois and the Ohio Indians. A plan for permanent union between the colonies was also drawn up

by Benjamin Franklin, and sent to the legislatures and to England. The colonies objected to his plan because it gave too much power to the president of the confederation; Parliament rejected it because it gave too much power to the colonists.

**194. Preparations in Europe.** — England and France also prepared for the war. It was called the “French and Indian War in America”; but when other nations in Europe became involved in it, it was known as the “Seven Years’ War.” As there were then no roads between the possessions of the two nations, military movements had to be made along the rivers and lakes, or along the coast. Early in 1755, General Braddock was sent over with two regiments of British soldiers, and as commander in chief of the British and colonial forces. After consulting with the governors of the colonies, he determined to march against Fort Duquesne, from which point the middle colonies were in constant danger of attack; to send a force to gain possession of Fort Niagara, which defended the western lakes; to send another force to take the fort at Crown Point, on the western shore of Lake Champlain; and to direct an expedition against the forts at the west of the Acadian peninsula.

**195. Braddock’s Defeat.** — General Braddock moved forward toward Fort Duquesne. In spite of the warnings of Washington, who was one of his aids, General Braddock 1755 marched his army through the country in military order, with gay uniforms and shining arms. They were within seven miles of the fort, when a quick fire from the front announced that they had fallen into an ambushade of the enemy. The British soldiers had never been in such a battle. While their brave comrades were falling around them, no foe could be seen, and they could only fire wildly at the rocks and trees which hid the savages and from which the death shots were falling. General Braddock showed great bravery, but was soon mortally wounded. Washington moved among the men and tried in vain to rally them. Two horses were killed under him,

and several shots passed through his clothes. In three hours the British army was retreating in disorder. Seven hundred had been killed. Washington, with the Virginia troops, covered the retreat and saved some of the men. The retreating forces returned to Philadelphia.

The expeditions against Fort Niagara and the forts on Lake Champlain also failed.<sup>1</sup>

**196. Ontario, Oswego, and Fort William Henry.** — Hostilities had been in progress in America two years, when, in 1756, war was declared between England and France. Lord Loudon was sent from England to take command of the English forces, and the Marquis de Montcalm came from France to command the French troops. In August Montcalm crossed the lake and captured Forts Ontario and Oswego, which gave him the control of Lake Ontario. The next year Fort William Henry fell into his hands.

**197. Louisburg, Frontenac, and Duquesne.** — The English felt deeply troubled at their failures during the last two years, and to William Pitt, their great statesman, was given the management of the war. He prepared fleets and armies, and sent out with them experienced commanders. The result was that the war was carried on with new vigor, and larger armies were raised in America as well as in England.



MARQUIS DE MONTCALM

<sup>1</sup> Acadia, which we now know as Nova Scotia, though then belonging to the English was inhabited by French people. While the troops were being raised to carry out General Braddock's designs, soldiers were sent to take these people out of their country. This was done because they refused to take the oath of allegiance to the English government, and for fear they would aid the French in the coming war. Seven thousand of them were taken from their homes and scattered throughout the colonies. Their houses were burned, and they were only allowed to carry their money and such articles as would not be inconvenient on the vessels. Many were left without food, and many families were divided and scattered. Longfellow's poem, "Evangeline," is a story of the sufferings of these people.



In 1758 three expeditions were undertaken — against Louisburg on Cape Breton Island, against the forts on Lake Champlain, and against Fort Duquesne. During the summer and fall several important victories were gained by the English. 1758



WILLIAM PITT

After a siege of more than a month, the strong fortress at Louisburg surrendered, and with it Prince Edward Island. The French fort Frontenac, on Lake Ontario, with a quantity of stores and ammunition, besides nine armed vessels, fell into the hands of the English. This enabled them to use Lake Ontario, and opened the way to Niagara. In November General Forbes, with Colonel George Washington as one of his officers, marched against Fort Duquesne. The French troops, having been cut off from their source of supplies by the capture of Fort Frontenac, left Duquesne as soon as he arrived and moved down the river. After the English took possession of this fort, its name was changed to Fort Pitt<sup>1</sup> in honor of the great English statesman. Soon after the capture of this fort the western Indians made peace.

An attack was made on Ticonderoga, but the English were repulsed with great loss.

**198. English Plans.** — The war was pushed forward the next year with greater determination than before. General Amherst was placed in command of the English forces. Pitt thought the capture of Quebec would insure the conquest of Canada, and arrangements were accordingly made to move against Quebec, Ticonderoga, and Fort Niagara.

**199. Crown Point, Ticonderoga, and Fort Niagara.** — General Wolfe, who had led in the attack at Louisburg, went up the



GENERAL WOLFE

<sup>1</sup> The city of Pittsburg now occupies this place.



St. Lawrence to Quebec. His fleet carried ten thousand men; they landed on the Island of Orleans, a few miles below Quebec. In order to repel this threatened attack, Montcalm removed most of the troops from the other forts to strengthen Quebec. General Amherst attacked Crown Point and Ticonderoga about this time, and had but little trouble in taking both forts with their small garrisons. He intended joining Wolfe in Canada, but as he was unable to do this, he went into winter quarters at Crown Point. General Prideaux (prīd'-o), with the third division of the army, succeeded in taking Fort Niagara. This cut off the communications of the French between Canada and Louisiana.

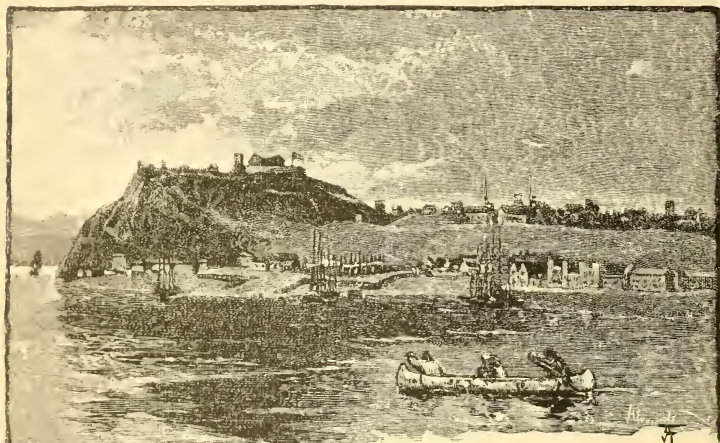
**200. Quebec.** — This city is divided into an upper and a lower town. The upper town is built on a rock two hundred feet high, which forms a precipice on the St. Lawrence, called the Heights of Abraham. The lower town rests on a plain at the water's edge. When Wolfe's army landed on the Island of Orleans, Quebec was defended by a strong fort on the north of the river, occupied by a French army of thirteen thousand men. Wolfe destroyed the lower town by his batteries at Point Levi, on the opposite side of the river, but every attempt to reach the strong fortress on the rock had failed. The English were about to give up the attempt, when Wolfe resolved to make another daring effort.



**201. Capture of Quebec.** — Wolfe waited for General Amherst until September, and then began to put into practice his bold plan of attack. He had discovered a narrow path which led

from the river bank to the heights above the town, and which he found was guarded by only about one hundred men. His plan was kept secret until the night of September 12. Shortly after midnight, the men were moved in flatboats to Wolfe's Cove. They landed in silence, and quietly climbed up the rocky pathway. The French guard were soon scattered, and at sunrise the next morning Wolfe's army was

1759



VIEW OF OLD QUEBEC

drawn up in line of battle on the Plains of Abraham. A bloody battle followed, in

which the English were victorious.

The generals of both armies, Wolfe and Montcalm, were killed. While General Wolfe was dying on the battlefield he heard a shout, "They run!" Lifting his head, he asked "Who run?" When he understood that it was the French, he answered, "Then I die content," and soon breathed his last.

When Montcalm was told that he would soon die, he said, "So much the better, for then I shall not live to see the surrender of Quebec." Five days afterwards Quebec surrendered.

England has since erected a monument, upon which are inscribed the names of both generals. It marks the place of this battle, which decided the future of Canada, and began a new era in American history.

The French collected an army at Montreal, and tried to retake Quebec the next year, but failed. In September Montreal was compelled to surrender, and soon after all the French posts were given up. 1760

**202. War with the Cherokees.** — During the same year, the horrors of an Indian war burst upon the southern colonies. It began with the Cherokees. General Amherst sent a strong force from New York to assist the people of the Carolinas. These, with the militia, marched into the Cherokee country and burned several villages. Fighting continued until the next year, when the Indians were, at last, routed and driven to the mountains, where they consented to make peace. 1760-1

**203. Treaty of Paris.** — The Seven Years' War in Europe continued three years after all the French posts had been surrendered in America. In 1763 a treaty of peace was signed in Paris; by its terms, France gave up to Great Britain, Canada and all the country between the Alleghanies and the Mississippi, except the city of New Orleans and a small district adjoining it. This, with a few small islands, was all she could claim of the vast territory which she had explored, and for which she had struggled so long. At the same time, and by the same treaty, peace was made with Spain, and the Spanish possessions in Florida were ceded to England in return for Havana, which an English fleet had captured after Spain joined with France in the war. At the same time, the city of New Orleans was ceded to Spain; and, by a secret treaty all the region between the Mississippi River and the Rocky Mountains was also ceded to her. 1763

**204. England and Spain in North America.** — These changes left England and Spain the only rulers in North America.

The possessions of Spain began with the Isthmus of Panama and extended to the Mississippi and along its western valley to the head waters of the Missouri. England owned the eastern half of the continent and the great northwest beyond Hudson Bay. Florida was divided into East and West Florida by the Apalachicola River. The colonial governors had no control over the country west of the Alleghanies, except that Georgia, after the cession of Florida, extended her claim to the Mississippi.

**205. Pontiac's Conspiracy.** — The northwestern Indians, who had been in alliance with the French, could not believe that the French power was broken, and before the English were in full possession of their newly acquired territory, Pontiac, a brave chief of the Ottawas, persuaded the tribes along the upper lakes to unite and resist the English. The forts in that part of the country, with the exception of Forts Pitt, Niagara, and Detroit, fell into their hands. Many of the settlers were killed, and many families were driven from their homes, which were burned to ashes. Peace was restored after troops were sent to recover and hold the forts.

**206. Results of the French War.** — Both the English and the French had lost thousands of men and large sums of money during the four French wars; but the colonists, on the other hand, had gained much. By facing together a common danger they had become a more united people, and their victories had taught them their own power. The hard experience of suffering and endurance had developed brave soldiers and skillful leaders. The colonies soon began to widen their settlements, where fear of the foe had before restrained them. They were now relieved from the encroachments of the French on the north and the threats of the Spaniards on the south, and the Indians on the west had been subdued. The horrors of war had come to their very firesides, and the money to meet the expenses had been raised by taxes levied by their own legislatures. A bond of brotherhood was the result of the com-

mon struggle, and they were learning more and more to depend upon themselves. Statesmen in other countries, seeing this growing strength of the colonies, predicted their independence.

### QUESTIONS FOR STUDY

What right had the French to claim the country west of the Alleghenies? What right had the English there? What were the difficulties in the way when men attempted to reach this part of the country? Trace on the map the journey of Marquette. Of La Salle. Upon what did the French base their claims to Louisiana? Give the history of the exploration of the Mississippi. How has the fur trade affected the history of our country? In what respect was the fighting of the Indians unlike that of the French and the English? What causes led to war between the French and English? What great question did the last war settle? Which hero do you admire more, Wolfe or Montcalm? Give your reasons. What were some of the results of this war? If the French had been victorious, what do you think the results would have been?

### TOPICS FOR REVIEW

1. Give an account of the settlement of Virginia.
2. Write a sketch of the life and character of Captain John Smith.
3. Tell what you know of the trouble which the Indians caused the early settlers of Virginia.
4. Give an account of Bacon's rebellion.
5. Tell the events connected with the settlement of Massachusetts, and give some of the causes of trouble there.
6. Relate some of the most important facts connected with the founding of settlements in Rhode Island.
7. Give a short history of the colonies of Connecticut, New Hampshire, Vermont, and Maine.
8. Name the Indian wars in New England, and give an account of them.
9. Who were the Quakers, and how were they treated?
10. Tell about the witchcraft delusion.
11. Give the early history of New York.
12. Tell what you know of the settlement of New Jersey.
13. What causes led to the settlement of Pennsylvania?
14. Give its history.
15. Who settled Delaware, and under what circumstances?
16. Give an account of the settlement of Maryland.

17. Give the history of the colonies in the Carolinas.
18. Tell what circumstances attended the settlement of Georgia, and describe its progress.
19. Name the Indian wars in the southern colonies.
20. Give an account of the progress of French explorers in America.
21. Describe Washington's journey to Fort Venango.
22. Tell what Washington did in the French and Indian War.
23. Give an account of General Braddock's movements.
24. Write an outline of the various movements planned by the different English commanders.
25. Tell what you know of the capture of Quebec.

### CHRONOLOGICAL TABLE OF IMPORTANT EVENTS (1607-1767)

#### *English Sovereign*

##### JAMES I

1607. A settlement made at Jamestown, Virginia.
1609. Henry Hudson discovered the Hudson River.
1610. Trading posts established in New Netherlands.
1614. A settlement made on Manhattan Island.
1619. First representative assembly convened at Jamestown, July 30.  
Slavery introduced into Virginia.
1620. The Pilgrim Fathers landed at Plymouth Rock.
1623. A settlement made in New Hampshire.
1624. Virginia became a royal province.

##### CHARLES I

1628. A settlement made at Salem, Massachusetts.
1630. Boston settled.
1634. A settlement made in Maryland.
1635. Settlements begun in Connecticut.  
Clayborne's first rebellion in Maryland.
1636. Settlers arrived at Providence, Rhode Island.  
Harvard University founded.
1637. The Pequot War.
1638. A settlement made in Delaware by the Swedes.
1639. First written constitution in the world adopted in Connecticut.  
First printing press set up.
1643. Confederation of the New England colonies.
- 1644-6. Clayborne raised a second rebellion in Maryland.
1649. Maryland legislature passed the "Toleration Act."



## OLIVER CROMWELL (PROTECTOR)

- 1653. People from Virginia made a settlement on Albemarle Sound in North Carolina.
- 1655. Religious war in Maryland.

## CHARLES II

- 1660-70. Navigation Acts were passed by Parliament.
- 1664. New Netherlands became New York.
- 1665. The Clarendon settlement made on the Cape Fear River in North Carolina.  
First English settlement in New Jersey.
- 1670. Albemarle and Clarendon united.  
A settlement made in South Carolina.
- 1673. Marquette and Joliet reached the Mississippi.
- 1675. King Philip's War begun.
- 1676. Bacon's Rebellion in Virginia.
- 1679-82. La Salle explored the Great Lakes and the Mississippi River to its mouth.
- 1680. A settlement made at Charleston, South Carolina.
- 1681. Pennsylvania settled.

## JAMES II

- 1686. Sir Edmund Andros came to New England, and the charters were annulled.

## WILLIAM AND MARY

- 1689-91. Leisler's Rebellion in New York.
- 1689-97. King William's War.
- 1691. Maryland became a royal province.
- 1692. Union of Plymouth and Massachusetts Bay colonies.  
The witchcraft delusion in Salem.
- 1693. William and Mary College founded.
- 1694. Rice seed brought to South Carolina.
- 1695. A mail line established between Philadelphia and Virginia.

## ANNE

- 1702-13. Queen Anne's War.
- 1712. Indian War in North Carolina.

## GEORGE I

- 1729. North and South Carolina became separate royal provinces.

## GEORGE II

- 1733. The first settlement made in Georgia, at Savannah.
- 1735. The Wesleys came to Georgia.

## GEORGE II (CONT.)

- 1739-42. War with Spanish colonies.
- 1744-8. King George's War.
- 1746. Princeton University founded.
- 1752. Georgia became a royal province.
- 1753. Washington's journey to Fort Venango.
- 1754. The French and Indian War begun.
- 1755. Braddock defeated.  
Battle of Lake George.
- 1756. Lord Loudon took command of the English army, and the  
Marquis de Montcalm of the French.  
Forts Ontario and Oswego taken by the French.
- 1757. Fort William Henry surrendered to the French.
- 1758. Louisburg captured by the English.  
Fort Frontenac taken by the English.  
Fort Duquesne surrendered to the English.
- 1759. General Amherst became commander of the English forces.  
Crown Point, Ticonderoga, and Fort Niagara taken by the  
English.  
Quebec surrendered to Wolfe, September 18.

## GEORGE III

- 1760. All the other French posts surrendered.  
War with the Cherokees in the Carolinas.
- 1763. The treaty of Paris closed the war between France and England.  
Pontiac's War.
- 1767. The survey of Mason and Dixon's line.

## PARALLEL READING

FISKE's *The Beginnings of New England*. — PARKMAN's *Montcalm and Wolfe*. — STORY OF THE STATES: THOMPSON's *Louisiana*; BROOKS's *New York*. — THAYER's *Farmer Boy*. — OLD SOUTH LEAFLETS: *Fundamental Orders of Connecticut, 1638 (9)*; *An Account of the Late Revolution in New England*; *Franklin's Plan of Union*; *Speech of Pontiac*. — COOKE: *Stories of the Old Dominion*; *Virginia* (in the Commonwealth Series). — EGGLESTON's *Pocahontas and Powhatan*. — HAWTHORNE (in *Twice-told Tales*): *Endicott and the Red Cross*; *The Gray Champion*. — COOPER: *The Wept of Wish-ton-wish*; *The Last of the Mohicans*. — SIMMS's *The Yemassee*. — LONGFELLOW's *Evangeline*.

### III—THE AMERICAN REVOLUTION

#### CHAPTER I

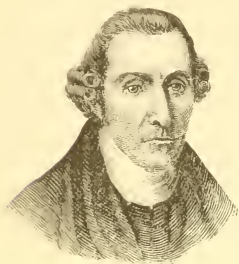
##### CAUSES OF THE WAR

**207. Navigation and Trade Laws.** — (See § 64.) Long before the French war, Parliament passed laws which required the colonists to sell all their tobacco, wool, and indigo to England or to an English colony. It mattered not how high a price might be offered for tobacco or rice in other countries, no colony could send its products to any ports but those of England. This gave the English merchants the power to make their own prices, and secure all the profits. The colonists could buy only from England. Every pound of tea from China, and every yard of silk from France, had to be bought in England, and all commerce had to be carried on in English or colonial ships.

**208. Manufactures prohibited.** — Other laws were passed prohibiting the colonists from manufacturing the simplest articles for sale. English manufacturers who supplied the people in America and other countries with goods, said that their business would be ruined if the colonists were allowed to make and export the same articles; hence the wool and iron of America had to be sent to England to be manufactured. Not even a "nail for a horseshoe" could legally be made in this country; it had to be bought from England. To recompense the colonies for these restrictions, they were to supply Great Britain with tobacco, and no planter in England or Ireland was allowed to raise it.

**209. The Parson's Cause.** — An old law in Virginia required

that each clergyman's salary, which the people were taxed to pay, should be sixteen thousand pounds of tobacco, at twopence a pound, its market value at that time. The failure of the tobacco crop in 1758 caused the price to go up to sixpence a pound, and the assembly passed a law that debts should be paid in money, allowing twopence for each pound of tobacco owed. The clergymen were dissatisfied with this change, and

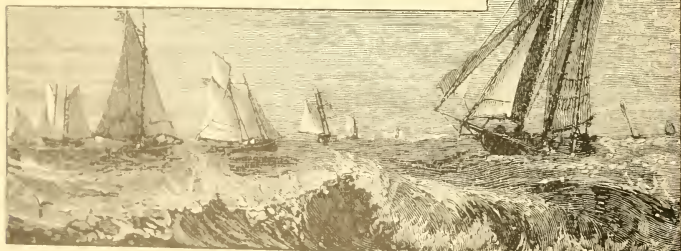
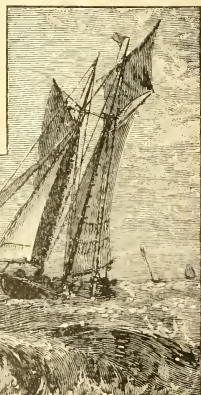


PATRICK HENRY

some of them appealed to the king. He annulled the "Twopenny Act" of the assembly, and several ministers attempted to enforce the payments of the amounts they claimed. In one case, the taxpayers employed a young lawyer, Patrick Henry, to defend them. In an eloquent speech, he declared that the assembly alone had the right to make laws for them, and spoke in strong terms of the king's unjust action. The jury de-

cided to pay the clergyman only one penny damages. The decision rendered showed the opposition of the people to any injustice on the part of England.

**210. Shipbuilding and Smuggling.** — The value of exports in 1750 had reached eight hundred and fourteen thousand pounds sterling, and two hundred vessels were employed in carrying the freight. Since



NEW ENGLAND FISHING BOATS

this could be done only by English or colonial vessels, ship-building became a profitable business, and during the three years preceding the French war more than two thousand vessels were built in America. A profitable trade with the West Indies had grown out of the New England fisheries. In the ports of those islands, cargoes of fish and lumber were exchanged for sugar and molasses, which in turn were made into rum to be sold again. Some of the ships returned loaded with slaves. This large trade made the English shipbuilders feel that they needed protection, and the colonists were required to transport their goods in British ships only.

While the French were in power in America, England hesitated to press the colonies too heavily, consequently the trade laws were not rigidly enforced. The people thought them unjust, and evaded them in many ways. They were disregarded for many years, and the carrying trade between the colonies was done almost entirely by vessels built in New England. Many foreign vessels landed their cargoes without interference, and sailed away laden with American produce. This illegal trade was called "smuggling," and could have been punished by the courts.

**211. Writs of Assistance.**—Parliament and the king, perceiving the growing spirit of independence in the colonies, determined to keep them under stronger control.

In 1761, a vigorous effort was made to stop the smuggling trade, but colonial juries would not convict men whom the royal governors brought to trial. "Admiralty courts" were therefore established in which trials were made without juries, and a larger number of officers was appointed to enforce the old Navigation Acts. To these officers were given "writs of assistance" empowering them to search for smuggled goods; for, as soon as these goods were landed, they were hidden away, and the people would not betray their neighbors for engaging in a business that the community did not condemn. As these writs gave the officers the right to search any house, public or private, in which they suspected

such goods to be concealed, the people became very indignant. Meetings were held and speeches were made against the infamy of giving strangers the legal right to break into the houses of citizens. James Otis, an eloquent young lawyer of Boston, pleaded their cause in a trial in the superior court of Massachusetts. In his speech, he said that while a man was quiet in his house, he should be as well guarded as a prince in his castle.



JAMES OTIS

**212. The Stamp Act.** — The duty on sugar and molasses was imposed again, and this greatly affected the trade with the West Indies. In 1765 Parliament passed the "Stamp Act," by which it was

1765

ordered that "all contracts, notes, bonds, deeds, writs, and public documents" should be written on stamped paper, or, if not, should be regarded as of no value. This stamped paper was to be sold by officers appointed by the government, and the price of the stamps was from one penny to twelve pounds. A large sum was expected from their sale, as nearly every kind of business would have to stop unless they were used. The revenue thus raised was to be spent in defending the colonies against the Indians, in paying the salaries of the colonial governors, and for other colonial expenses. But the colonists knew that a large share of their earnings was continually taken from them and given to the merchants of England by the enforcement of the trade laws. They knew, too, that hundreds of years before, the people of England had made the king understand that the right to levy taxes belonged only to their own representatives. Therefore, the colonists now claimed for themselves, under their charters, this right of freeborn Englishmen — the right to refuse to be taxed except by their representatives. This is the meaning of the saying, "No taxation without representation."

**213. Independent Spirit of the Colonists.** — Providence intended that the Americans should be a free people. Many of



the colonists had fled from persecution to the New World; they had faced danger from wild beasts and savages in the wilderness; and they had suffered the pains of hunger, cold, and disease, that they might be free from oppression. Their habits had given them a spirit of independence, which made it very hard to submit to what they considered unjust taxation. They lived on their own land, which produced everything necessary for their comfort. The charters allowed them to make most of their own laws. They were so far away from England that they were often compelled to act without consulting the home government. By their victories in war they had acquired confidence in themselves, and the increase of population had given them increase in strength.

**214. Resistance.** — The people thought and talked of taxation, until all classes became so earnest about it that in some

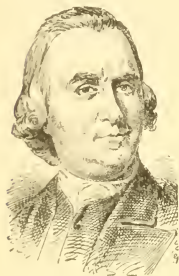


DISCUSSING THE STAMP ACT

of the towns the excitement led to riots. Throughout the country were formed societies called "Sons of Liberty," un-

der whose influence the merchants of the principal towns agreed that they would buy no more British goods until the Stamp Act was repealed. Through the influence of Patrick Henry,<sup>1</sup> the legislature of Virginia passed resolutions declaring that it alone had the right to tax Virginia, and that the Stamp Act was unjust.

The passage of these resolutions aroused the other colonies to greater opposition. The people of Massachusetts and South Carolina proposed that the colonies should send dele-



SAMUEL ADAMS

gates to a congress to meet in New York before the day on which the Stamp Act was to become a law, that they might consult how best to resist it. In North Carolina, John Ashe, the speaker of the assembly, declared that his province would appeal to arms; Samuel Adams, in Boston, wrote and spoke against the injustice, and the Massachusetts assembly directed the courts to receive unstamped paper as legal. Everywhere, regardless of the law, sales were made, newspapers were printed, and marriage certificates were issued with-

out stamps. Threats were made against the stamp officers, and many of them were frightened into resigning.

**215. First Colonial Congress.** — The first Colonial Congress, composed of twenty-eight delegates from nine colonies, met in New York city, October 7, 1765.

Oct. 7,  
1765

This congress made a declaration of the rights of the colonies, and insisted that all taxes imposed upon them without their consent were violations of their rights. These



GEORGE III

<sup>1</sup> In Patrick Henry's famous speech he said: "Cæsar had his Brutus, Charles I his Cromwell, and George III —" "Treason! Treason!" cried the speaker and several others. Henry turned toward the speaker, and, after a moment's silence, continued, "George III may profit by their example! If that be treason, make the most of it!"

declarations, with a written petition for justice, were sent to Parliament and to King George III.

**216. Repeal of the Stamp Act.** — After the Americans refused to buy British goods, the merchants in England complained that they were losing heavily, and asked that the commerce between the two countries might be reopened. William Pitt and Edmund Burke, men of great influence and friends of the American cause, urged Parliament to repeal the Stamp Act. This, Parliament did one year after passing the act. 1766  
The news brought gladness to the people of the colonies. Their old love for the mother country revived, and the trade between England and America began again.

**217. New Taxes.** — The next year, the plan for raising money in America was tried in a new shape. Duties were fixed on "glass, paper, tea, and painters' colors." 1767  
The money raised by these taxes was called "revenue." Officers were sent over to collect it, and customhouses were established. Parliament directed that this money should be used to pay the salaries of the officers and of the governors and judges. With officials paid in that way instead of receiving salaries from the legislatures, the colonies felt that they would soon be governed by men acting under orders from the king, and caring nothing for the rights of the people. Ministers preached against this new form of taxation, and the newspapers were full of reasons why it should be resisted. From New Hampshire to Georgia men were as thoroughly excited and dissatisfied as they had been before the repeal of the Stamp Act.

**218. The Boston Massacre.** — King George III sent two regiments of soldiers to Boston to help the governor enforce the laws. When the people learned this, a town meeting was called, and a day was appointed for fasting and prayer, that the people might seek the protection of God. When the troops arrived, Boston refused to furnish them quarters, and the governor ordered them to take possession of the statehouse. The troops were useless, for they could not compel the people to

buy the English goods. But the citizens hated the redcoats, and in 1770 there was a quarrel between them and the townspeople, known as the "Boston massacre," in which several citizens were killed and others wounded. This inflamed the Americans still more.



BATTLE OF ALAMANCE

**219. Battle of Alamance.**—There was trouble in other colonies.<sup>1</sup> In North Carolina, Tryon, the royal governor, had been collecting exorbitant fees and wasting the taxes.

**1771** Bands of men in the western counties, calling themselves "Regulators," opposed his oppressive acts. When the governor with his troops attempted to suppress them, they resisted, and at Alamance, near the mountains, a battle was fought in which the Regulators were defeated and nine of them killed.

**220. The Tax on Tea.**—So persistent were the colonists in their resistance to the taxes, that in one year the whole amount raised by a tax on teas, wines, and other articles was but eighty-five or ninety pounds, while the cost of the ships and troops sent to aid the officers in collecting it was about one hundred thousand pounds. Parliament began to see that the plan for raising

<sup>1</sup>The *Gaspee*, an English vessel which was interfering with the smugglers on the coast of Rhode Island, was captured and burned.

money by taxation in the colonies would fail. The London merchants, who had lost heavily by the damage done to trade, sent a petition to Parliament for help. A bill was passed to remove all the taxes, except that of three-pence (six cents) per pound on tea, which was retained to show the colonies that England had the right to tax them. The colonies objected to the principle of taxing them without their consent, and declared that to tax ten pounds involved the power to tax a thousand. They determined to buy no more tea from England, and either abstained from its use or smuggled it through from foreign ports.

**221. Committees of Correspondence.** — In order to

1772 weaken the colonies and prevent united resistance, the royal governors often dismissed the legislatures, and thus interrupted the business they

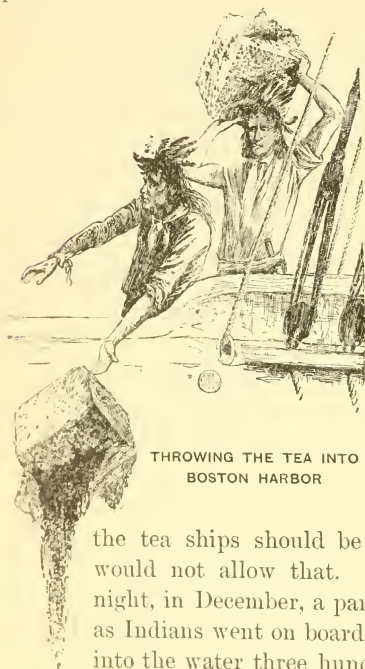
might wish to transact. In a town meeting in Boston, Samuel Adams proposed that each township in Massachusetts should appoint a committee of its best men to communicate with other townships for advice, and gather their representatives together to decide upon measures for resisting the king. When General Gage was sent as military governor of Massachusetts, the people refused to submit to his rule; and, through their com-



PUTTING AWAY THE  
TEAPOT



mittees of correspondence, they elected delegates to a legislature called a provincial congress, which met at Cambridge and passed laws.



THROWING THE TEA INTO  
BOSTON HARBOR

The next year, Dabney Carr, a young member of the Virginia assembly, proposed that similar committees be appointed for correspondence throughout all the colonies. This was concurred in, and an organization was soon formed by which the colonies were able to agree upon plans for united action.

## 222. Boston Tea Party. —

There had been no orders for tea, but cargoes of it were sent to America. The people of Boston asked that

the tea ships should be sent back, but the governor would not allow that. One cold, moonlight night, in December, a party of men disguised as Indians went on board the ships, and threw into the water three hundred and forty-two chests of tea.

Dec. 16,  
1773

Other cities followed the example of Boston. At New York and Philadelphia, the tea ships were obliged to return to England without unloading. In Charleston, South Carolina, the tea was stored in damp cellars, where it soon molded.

223. Boston Port Bill. — In order to punish the people of Boston, Parliament passed an act which required that the port of that town should be closed against all commerce, until the owners were paid for the tea that had been wasted and the citizens showed a spirit of submission. The customhouse was removed to Salem. No vessels

1774



could come in except to bring wood or provisions, and even these were compelled to go first to the customhouse at Marblehead, and bring a customhouse officer with them to Boston. As commerce had been the principal industry of the place, many men were left without employment.

**224. Other Oppressive Measures.** — Parliament also passed other acts, one of which required that officials or soldiers accused of murder should be carried to some other colony or to England for trial. By another, the charter of Massachusetts was abolished; the people could no longer elect their own officers, and the power of the governor was left unchecked. The town meetings were made almost useless, as they could no longer transact the business for which they were held.

**225. Sympathy for Boston.** — These acts, intended to punish Massachusetts, roused the indignation of all the colonies, for there was nothing to prevent each one of them from receiving the same treatment. The colonists began to lose their affection for the mother country, and became more closely united. There would have been much suffering among the poor of Boston but for the generous aid of other towns and colonies. The towns of New England sent flour, cattle, oil, and fish; South Carolina and Georgia sent several hundred barrels of rice; the other colonies gave corn, provisions, and money. Marblehead offered the free use of its wharfs and warehouses.

**226. First Continental Congress.** — The Virginia assembly was in session in Williamsburg when the news of the Boston Port Bill arrived. The members expressed their disapproval of the bill, and appointed the day upon which the port was to be closed as a day of "fasting, humiliation, and prayer." The governor dismissed the assembly, but the members adjourned to Raleigh Tavern, and directed the committee of correspondence to invite all the colonies to unite in holding a general Congress. In answer to this call, the first Congress, composed of delegates from twelve<sup>1</sup> colonies, met in

<sup>1</sup> Georgia was the only one of the thirteen colonies that did not send delegates to the first Continental Congress. The settlements in Georgia had

Philadelphia, September 5, 1774. This was called the "Continental Congress" to distinguish it from the provincial congresses held in the colonies. Addresses were sent to the people of Great Britain and Canada asking their aid in securing liberty, and to the inhabitants of the colonies urging them to be resolute in retaining it. At the same time, a petition for relief was sent to the king. A

Sept. 5,  
1774



GENERAL GAGE

declaration of rights was prepared, expressing willingness to aid the people of Massachusetts in their opposition, and demanding the repeal of all the acts of Parliament that interfered with the rights of the people. Resolutions were passed recommending that the colonies import no more goods from Great Britain. The 10th of the following May was appointed for the next meeting.

## 227. Preparations for War. — General

Gage, who was the commander in chief of the British forces, began to fortify Boston Neck, and took possession of the military stores and supplies at Cambridge and Charlestown. The provincial congress of Massachusetts appointed a "committee of safety," and determined to arm twelve thousand men. A part of the militia was formed into companies called "minutemen," who promised to be ready to defend their country at a moment's warning. The other colonies likewise prepared to defend themselves.

As the population of England, Ireland, and Scotland at that time was between eight and ten millions, while that of the colonies was less than three millions, the colonies were arming

received aid to the extent of nearly a million dollars from England. The governor had endeared himself to the people, and he constantly used his influence to make them believe that any disobedience of the laws of Parliament would be ungrateful, and unworthy of them. The governor had dismissed the legislature about the time that the other colonies were sending delegates to the Continental Congress, and representatives could not be selected in time for the first meeting.

themselves against a very dangerous adversary. But their indomitable spirit of liberty could not be conquered by fear of the difficulties which beset the cause.



DRILLING THE MINUTEMEN

## CHAPTER II

### BEGINNING OF THE CONTEST

APRIL, 1775—JULY, 1776

**228. British Movements.** — Reënforcements came to General Gage from England, until his army numbered three thousand. He planned to seize or destroy the American stores at Concord. But the patriots of Boston, suspecting his design, had agreed to hang a light in the North Church tower, as a signal, if the British began to move. Late on the night of April 18, 1775, the signal light shone from the old church steeple. Paul Revere, who had been watching for it, crossed the river to

Charlestown, leaped into his saddle, and rode in haste to Lexington, shouting the warning to the people as he passed.

**229. Battle of Lexington.** — A short time afterwards, eight hundred British soldiers, under the command of Colonel Smith and Major Pitcairn came marching in silence along the road to Concord, sixteen miles away. Church bells and signal guns gave the alarm. By five o'clock in the morning, the

British had reached Lexington, but the minutemen, April 19,  
1775 commanded by Captain John Parker, were ready to meet them. Major Pitcairn rode forward and called out to the Americans, "*Disperse, you rebels! Lay down your arms and disperse!*" The minutemen stood firmly in line, and Pitcairn gave the order to fire. Eight of the men of Lexington were killed, and nine were wounded. Finding that they were largely outnumbered by the British, they dispersed. Pitcairn's men gave three cheers for their triumph, and marched on toward Concord.

**230. Concord.** — The news of the approach of armed troops brought terror to the hearts of the people; the women and children fled from the town, while the men were busy removing and hiding the military stores. But in spite of their efforts, the British soldiers came in time to destroy quantities of flour, and to sink five hundred pounds of ball in the river. It was nearly noon when the British began a retreat toward Boston. The Americans hurried over the hills, and hid themselves behind barns and trees and stone walls to fire at the British as they passed. From every rock and from every thicket along the roadside, the retreating forces were attacked and driven on by the New England men, until they began to run in disorder. The officers could not stop their flight. Colonel Smith was severely wounded, and Major Pitcairn lost his horse and his pistols. The whole force would have been completely



REVOLUTIONARY MUSKET

routed but for the reënforcements which met them at Lexington. From that place, they continued the retreat, the minutemen pursuing and firing until, about sunset, the British reached the protection of their vessels.



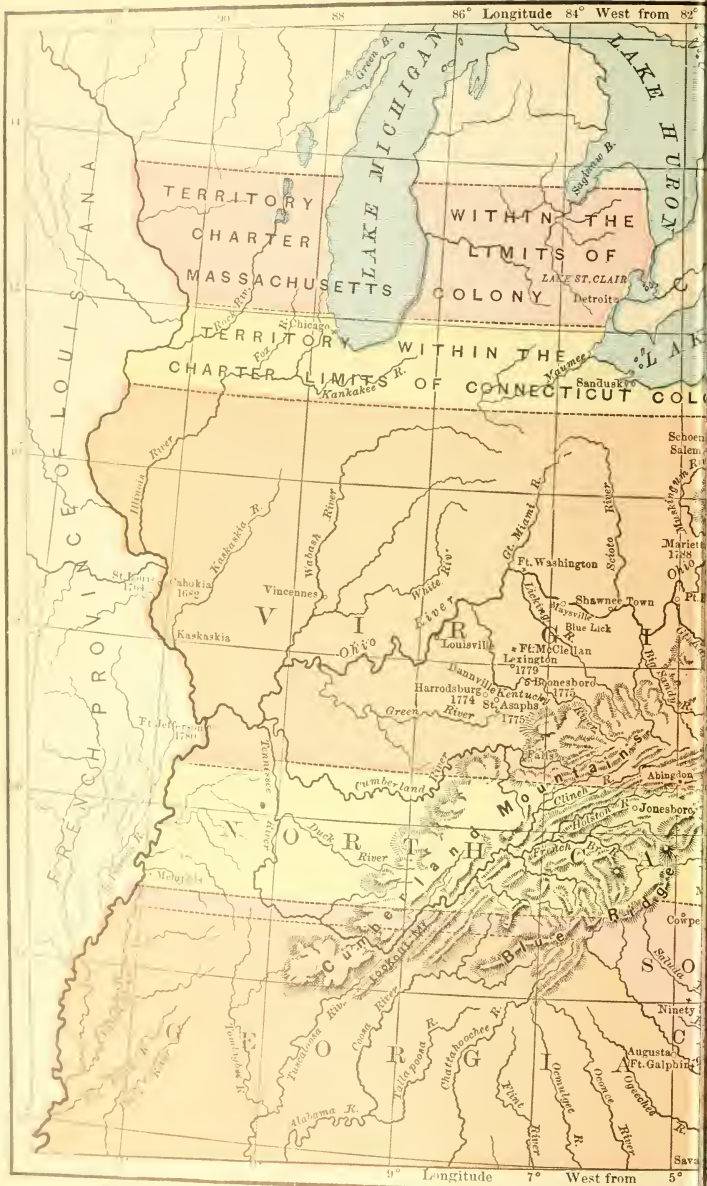
RETREATING FROM CONCORD

In this encounter, the British loss was about two hundred and seventy-five in killed, wounded, and missing; that of the Americans was nearly one hundred.

**231. Effects of the Skirmish.** — Great numbers of the militia of New England hurried to Boston, and soon nearly surrounded the town on the land side. A strong spirit of resistance was aroused in every colony. And now, for the first time, the people began to talk of a separate government of their own. They had hoped for a settlement of their difficulties through the justice of the king and people of Great Britain, but now the cry of "Liberty or Death!" was heard everywhere.

After the skirmish at Lexington, Georgia hesitated no longer about joining the other colonies in their union for defense. There were then in the province seventeen thousand whites and fifteen thousand negroes. The militia numbered three thousand. The northern and western boundaries from Augusta to St. Marys were exposed to ten thousand savage warriors;

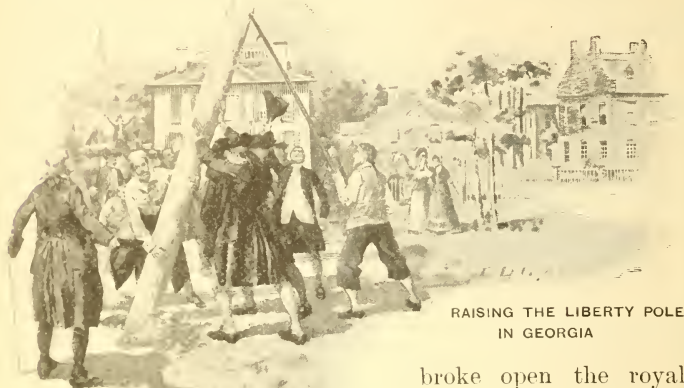








but this danger did not prevent Georgia from throwing off the protection which Great Britain had given her, and casting her lot with the cause of liberty. At Savannah, the Sons of Liberty



RAISING THE LIBERTY POLE  
IN GEORGIA

broke open the royal magazine and seized the gunpowder. They sent a part of it to the

army at Cambridge, and it was used in the battle of Bunker Hill.

**232. The Mecklenburg Declaration.** — When the news came that Parliament had declared the colonies in a state of rebellion, the people of Mecklenburg County, North Carolina, determined to assert their independence of British law. The news of Lexington strengthened their determination. Two delegates from each militia company in the county were sent as representatives to Charlotte. This committee passed resolutions to dissolve the political bonds which connected them with the mother country, acknowledged themselves to be under the control of the provincial congress of North Carolina, and subject to the direction of the great Continental Congress. These resolutions were signed May 20, 1775,<sup>1</sup> more than a year before the Declaration of Independence.

May 20,  
1775

<sup>1</sup> Some historians give May 31, 1775, as the date of the signing of this declaration, but the people of Charlotte, N.C., believing that there is stronger

**233. Ticonderoga and Crown Point.**—Early in May, Ethan Allen and Benedict Arnold with a band of brave men from Vermont and Massachusetts took possession of Ticonderoga and Crown Point, capturing valuable military stores and more than one hundred pieces of artillery, then very much needed by the colonies.

**234. Second Continental Congress.**—On the same day, May 10, the second Continental Congress assembled in Philadelphia.

May 10,  
1775

This Congress accepted the continental troops then collected, and determined to raise an army of twenty thousand men; by a unanimous vote it elected George Washington,<sup>1</sup> of Virginia, commander in chief of the Continental army, and issued two million dollars in paper money to pay the expenses of the army, calling upon the colonies to raise money. Washington was then a member of Congress, and he accepted the appointment modestly, refusing to receive for his services anything more than his actual necessary expenses. He then resigned his seat in Congress and began preparations for his work in the army. Four major generals were also appointed—Artemas Ward, Charles Lee, Philip Schuyler, and Israel Putnam.



ETHAN ALLEN

proof in favor of the 20th of May, celebrate that day as the anniversary of the great event. (See Address of Dr. George W. Graham before the Mecklenburg Historical Society, October 11, 1894.)

<sup>1</sup> George Washington was born in Westmoreland County, Virginia, near the Potomac, February 22, 1732; he died at Mount Vernon, December 14, 1799. His mother was left a widow when he was quite young, and he had few educational advantages. When sixteen, he surveyed land for Lord Fairfax. His labors left little time for reading, but the few books he had were read and reread with the closest attention. Whatever he attempted, he tried to do well. He always sought the friendship of the best men he knew. One of the principal features of his character was his trust in God's providential care over all things. He was strictly temperate, and this, with the hardy life of a surveyor in the wilderness, where, wrapped in a blanket, he often slept on the ground before a camp fire, did much to give him a strong constitution and to fit him for his duties as a leader in the army. At the age of forty-three he took

**235. Battle of Bunker Hill.** — Before Washington took command, large British reënforcements under the command of

June 17,  
1775

Howe, Clinton, and Burgoyne reached Boston. These additions gave General Gage twelve thousand men.

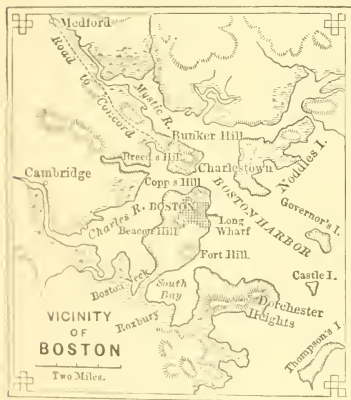
Near Boston were two ranges of hills that could be made useful to either army — Bunker Hill and Breeds Hill on the north, and Dorchester Heights on the south. General Artemas Ward, in command of the Massachusetts forces, anxious to secure one of these positions, one night sent Colonel Prescott with a thousand men to fortify Bunker Hill, but the earthworks were erected on Breeds Hill. The work was not

begun until midnight, but every man did his part faithfully, and at daylight the British were surprised to find the Americans intrenched upon the hill opposite Boston.

The guns from the ships and from a battery in Boston at once began firing upon the earthworks. General Howe, with three thousand men, crossed in boats to Charlestown to make an attack. They advanced

along the hillside toward Prescott's men, who, after a night of labor without food or water, stood behind their intrenchments awaiting his approach. Their supply of powder was very small, and the orders of their officers were, "Aim low. Wait until you can see the whites of their eyes." A volley from Prescott's muskets covered the ground with British dead and wounded. Those who were unhurt turned back,

command of the American forces. His success as an officer in the French war had gained for him the respect of the men he was to command, and he soon won their confidence and devotion.



and a shout rose from the breastworks. The people of Boston watched the battle from the roofs of their houses, and with telescopes could recognize their friends as the smoke rolled away.

The shells thrown from the battery had set fire to Charlestown. While the houses were burning, a second charge was made, which ended as the first had ended. General Clinton brought fresh troops, and the third attack was successful; for the New England men had used nearly all of their powder, and were compelled to retreat. The British were victorious, though their loss was more than a thousand men. The Americans lost about four hundred.<sup>1</sup>

**236. Condition of Washington's Army.** — Two weeks after this battle, Washington arrived and established his headquarters at Cambridge.<sup>2</sup> He found an army of fourteen thousand men, collected from different parts of the country; but they had no powder or cannon, no tents or blankets. Congress had not furnished him with money to obtain these needed supplies. Very few of the regiments had uniforms. Many men were in their shirt sleeves, as they had come in haste from the fields. Some of the companies from Virginia wore embroidered upon the breast of their hunting shirts the words "Liberty or Death." Washington's first work was to organize the army; that is, to put each man in his proper place, and then to teach him the duties of a soldier.

He had to meet many difficulties, yet, in a short time, he was able to compel the British to remain inside the town of Boston.

**237. Invasion of Canada.** — Some of the leading men of the country thought that a large amount of stores could be secured at Quebec, and that the people of Canada, if encouraged



POWDERHORN AND  
CANTEEN USED BY  
THE SOLDIERS

<sup>1</sup> Though this battle was fought on Breeds Hill, it is known as the battle of Bunker Hill. Bunker Hill monument stands where Prescott fought.

<sup>2</sup> For nine months Washington occupied "Craigie House," a famous old colonial mansion, which, at a later time, was the home of the poet Longfellow.



to do so, would take part with the colonies. After Ticonderoga and Crown Point had been captured by the Americans, Congress believed that the British might be shut off from the Hudson valley, and decided to invade Canada. The men who went upon this expedition endured many hardships, suffering much from lack of provisions. In November, 1775, Mont-  
 Nov. and Dec., 1775 real was surrendered at their approach; but the next month the attack on Quebec failed, and the Americans were repulsed by a large British force. Nothing was gained by the invasion.

**238. The King's Proclamation.**—In November, Congress learned that the king had refused to hear from the colonies, and that he had issued a proclamation, calling them "rebels and traitors," whom civil and military officers were ordered to bring to justice. At the same time, the king increased his army by hiring foreign soldiers from Hesse Cassel (Hes'-se Cäs'-sel) and other German states, whom he intended to send out to conquer the rebels. The news that foreigners had been hired to fight against them aroused deep indignation, and made the colonists still more determined to resist.

**239. Royal Government destroyed.**—By this time, the power of all the royal officers in the colonies had been broken. The royal governors had all left the country. Lord Dunmore, royal governor of Virginia, had seized a quantity of military stores at Williamsburg, but Patrick Henry, with a company of militia, compelled him to pay for them. After he had caused some trouble with the negroes, he was driven from the colony. He took refuge on a British man-of-war, and in revenge bombarded and burned the town of Norfolk.

The arrival of British war ships in the harbor at Savannah made it necessary for the patriots there to arrest the governor. Joseph Habersham, accompanied by a party of friends, entered Governor Wright's house, and approaching him, said, "Sir James, you are my prisoner." Supposing that an armed force waited outside, the governor surrendered, and was placed under guard. After a short imprisonment, he escaped at night



through the back of his house to the river, and thence to the *Scarboroughh*, lying in the harbor.

**240. Evacuation of Boston.**—In the spring large additions to the British forces were expected. Though Washington's army numbered less than ten thousand men, and the supply of artillery and powder was very small, he decided to intrench a part of his troops on Dorchester Heights, which overlook Boston and the harbor. His plans were laid carefully, and the work was done secretly and silently during the night. By dawn, strong lines of breastworks had been built along the tops of the two hills, and when General Howe, then in command at Boston, saw the work, he said it must have been the labor of twelve thousand men. He knew that he must either drive back the Americans or leave Bos-  
March 17,  
1776  
ton. He called a council of war, and determined to retreat from the city at once. On March 17, 1776, fifteen hundred royalists went with him to Halifax.

After Howe's departure, General Washington removed his headquarters to Boston. The people all over the country rejoiced at this deliverance. The patriots in the city had been able to obtain provisions only at very high prices; for fuel, they had torn down empty houses and even burned the pews of churches. Congress sent its thanks to the army, and had a gold medal made in honor of the victory. The British left a number of cannon, and large quantities of coal, wheat, clothing, and blankets. British ships afterwards came into the harbor, for the captains had not heard of General Howe's retreat, and their cargoes became the property of the Americans. One of these ships carried seven times as much powder as General Washington had when he began to fortify the heights.



GENERAL HOWE

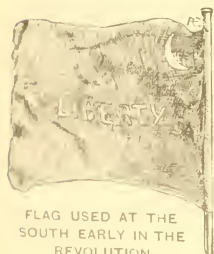
**241. Battle of Moores Creek.** — In February, 1776, a large force of North Carolina royalists were marching toward the coast to meet Clinton's fleet, which they were expecting. Feb., 1776 They were attacked at Moores Creek bridge by one thousand militiamen; the patriots were victorious, and nine



BATTLE OF MOORES CREEK

hundred prisoners were taken. This battle encouraged the Southern colonies in their resistance to the British.

**242. Clinton arrives in the South.** — A short time after the battle of Moores Creek, Clinton landed at the mouth of the Cape Fear River. He had been assured of the aid of the royalists in North Carolina, and he hoped to be able to conquer that province; but learning of the defeat of his allies, he set sail again, having been joined by Sir Peter Parker's fleet. On the 1st of June, this fleet threatened Charleston, South Carolina. Orders were immediately sent

FLAG USED AT THE  
SOUTH EARLY IN THE  
REVOLUTION

for the militia to come to the defense of the city. The militia of South Carolina, with reënforcements from the adjoining colonies, were placed under General Charles Lee, who had been appointed to the command of all the forces in the South. The fortifications were strengthened; negroes from the country and citizens of the town worked with spade and pick, until everything possible was done. On Sullivan's Island a fort was built of palmetto logs and sand. It was mounted with cannon, and its garrison was commanded by Colonel Moultrie. The supply of bullets was so small that, to increase the number, the windows of



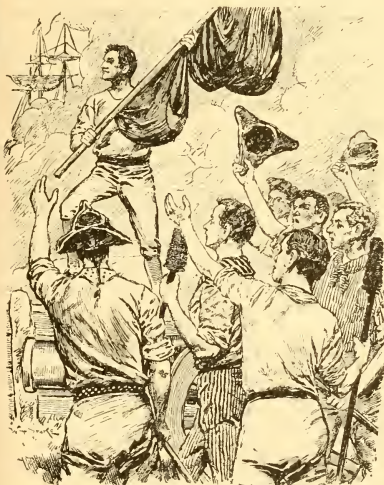
GENERAL MOULTRIE

the windows of churches and dwellings were stripped of their leaden sash weights.

**243. Battle of Fort Moultrie.**—About ten o'clock on the morning of June 28, the ships began the attack with a terrific

June 28,  
1776

cannonade; but the balls sank either in the sand, or in the spongy palmetto logs, which did not split or break. There were ten times as many guns firing from the ships as Colonel Moultrie had at the fort, and he was compelled to



JASPER RESCUING THE FLAG

use his powder sparingly. The battle continued until after nine o'clock at night. The next morning the fleet was out of sight, on its way back to New York. The fort is still known as Fort Moultrie, in honor of its brave commander.

**244. Sergeant Jasper.** — Soon after the battle began, Sergeant William Jasper, one of the garrison, saw that the flag-staff had been broken by a cannon ball, and that the flag had fallen over the wall. In the face of a furious fire from the ships, he climbed the wall, leaped down, snatched up the flag, fixed it in its place, and returned unhurt. The next day he was presented with a sword by President Rutledge.<sup>1</sup>

**245. Declaration of Independence.** — After the departure of the royal governors, the colonies, in accordance with the advice of Congress, formed new governments for themselves. In some of them, the principal change made was in the election of new governors in place of those appointed by the king. By the spring of 1776, almost all of the colonies had given up the hope of being reconciled with the British government, and had directed their delegates in Congress to vote for a separation from England. A resolution was offered by Richard Henry Lee, one of the members from Virginia, "That these united colonies are, and of right ought to be, free and independent states." A long and earnest debate followed, and



THE OLD LIBERTY BELL

then a committee was appointed to write a declaration of independence. This was written by Thomas Jefferson, chairman of the committee and a descendant of one of the members of the first house of burgesses in Virginia. On July 2, twelve of the colonies voted in its favor, and on July 4, 1776, it was read in Congress and adopted. The bell of the old statehouse in Philadelphia, where Congress was in session, was rung to announce its adoption. This bell had been hanging in its

July 4,  
1776

place about twenty years, and upon it was cast this inscription: "Proclaim liberty throughout all the land unto all the

<sup>1</sup> President Rutledge held the highest office in the provincial congress of South Carolina. It was the same office as that of governor now.

inhabitants thereof" (taken from the 10th verse of the 25th chapter of Leviticus). This old "Liberty Bell" has since been cracked, but it is still kept in memory of the Declaration. The building is now called Independence Hall.

**246. A Free People.** — A few days later, General Washington had the Declaration read to every brigade in the army, and the news spread from one colony to another. Everywhere the people expressed their joy. Houses were illuminated, bonfires kindled, and bells rung. After this, every man had to decide either for or against the new government. There were, all through the war, some men who professed to love the king, and who thought the colonies ought to submit. These men were known as royalists or loyalists, or more commonly as "Tories." The others were called patriots, rebels, or "Whigs."

**247. The Flag.** — Early in 1776, a flag bearing thirteen stripes in red and white, and the two crosses of the British flag, had been hoisted in Boston. As the crosses were a sign



FIRST AMERICAN FLAG

of allegiance to the king, Congress, in 1777, changed them to thirteen stars<sup>1</sup> on a blue ground.

**248. Articles of Confederation.** — Toward the end of 1777, Articles of Confederation were submitted to the states for their approval, and thus the beginnings of the American nation were made.

<sup>1</sup> Afterwards a provision was made for adding a new star for each new state, on the 4th of July following its admission.



## CHAPTER III

## NEW YORK, TRENTON, AND PRINCETON

JULY, 1776—JANUARY, 1777

**249. British Plans.** — Great Britain's plan was to separate New England from the other colonies, and to overthrow the government of the United States by capturing Philadelphia, its capital. Because of the scarcity of roads in America, the rivers were the most convenient routes for conveying supplies. The British generals, therefore, endeavored to gain possession of the city of New York and the country along the Hudson, and thus cut off New England. In order to capture Philadelphia and break the strength of the provinces south of New York, they sought to gain possession of the Delaware River.

**250. Battle of Long Island.** — After the evacuation of Boston, Washington, believing that New York would be the next point of attack, went there with the main part of his army. Early in July, General Howe came from Halifax and took possession of Staten Island. A fleet commanded by his brother, Admiral Howe, brought reënforcements from Europe, and General Clinton came with his troops from Charleston.



ADMIRAL HOWE

On August 27, Howe, with a heavy force, crossed to Long Island, and landed on the southwestern shore.

Aug. 27,  
1776

General Putnam commanded the American troops who held Brooklyn Heights. The battle was fought along the roads leading to this strong position, but a division of the British marched around to the rear, and the Americans were defeated. Howe now believed that all the American troops would fall into his hands before they could escape from the island; but on the second night after the battle, while a heavy fog hid the movements of both armies, Washington removed his men in boats to New York.



**251. Retreat from New York.** — Washington knew that the British ships would prevent his remaining in the city. He therefore continued his retreat to Fort Washington. In compliance with an order from Congress, he left a garrison there, and marched the rest of his forces to White Plains, where Howe pursued and attacked him. The Americans fought bravely, but were compelled to give way; they marched to a stronger position at North Castle, and Howe returned to New York. Washington left about half of his army at North Castle with General Charles Lee, and with the rest crossed the Hudson and marched southward toward Philadelphia, which he believed would be the next point of attack.



Washington sent repeated orders to Lee to bring on the troops left at North Castle, but he treacherously disobeyed; for Lee was jealous of Washington, and wished to be appointed commander in chief in his place. At last he followed, but managed to be captured on the way by British scouts; his troops moved on to join the retreating army. Fort Washington, after a brave struggle, fell into the hands of the enemy, and the loss was a great disappointment to the people of the United States. The garrison of Fort Lee, on the opposite side of the river, was then removed, and Washington with his small army continued his slow retreat through New Jersey until December, when he crossed the Delaware River. Cornwallis commanded the British, who pursued. On

the way he left garrisons at Newark, New Brunswick, and Princeton, to hold New Jersey. He reached Trenton just as the last of the Americans were crossing the river, but he could not follow, for Washington had taken all the boats. Cornwallis concluded to wait until the river should be frozen over.

**252. The People discouraged.** — The time for which many of the Americans had enlisted ended in November, and nearly half of them returned home. Others, broken in spirit and worn with privations, deserted, and the commander was left with only three thousand men. A great many of these were shoeless and scantily clothed, and suffered intensely from the cold. The reverses of the army had discouraged many citizens. Some of them believed that the cause of freedom was lost. Howe had issued a proclamation in which he offered pardon and protection to those who would take the oath of allegiance to the king, and many took advantage of the offer.



WASHINGTON CROSSING THE DELAWARE (*Painting by Leutze*)

**253. Trenton.** — Cornwallis believed that he had conquered the rebels, and returned to New York, leaving at Trenton a force of Hessians. Washington realized that the time had

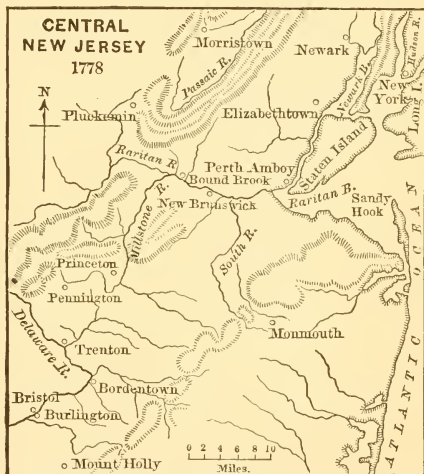
come when a mighty effort must be made to save the country. He determined to strike a blow at the triumphant British, and, supposing that the Hessians at Trenton would spend the holidays feasting and drinking, he chose Christmas night as the time for the attack. Twenty-five hundred men marched with him to the river. Their path through the snow was marked with blood from their half-covered feet. The night was intensely cold and very dark. The river was full of floating ice, which made the passage perilous indeed, but under the leadership of their brave commander, the men did not hesitate or falter. The early morning found them on the Jersey side of the river, and a few hours brought them to the enemy at Trenton. The Hessians, who had spent the night in carousing, were not prepared for a battle; the surprise was so complete

Dec. 26,  
1776

that the whole garrison of about one thousand men was captured. Valuable stores also were taken, and Washington returned to Pennsylvania with his

prisoners and his prizes, having lost only four men, two of whom were frozen to death. To convince the people of the reality of this victory, the prisoners were marched through the streets of Philadelphia. Renewed hope cheered every patriotic heart. Recruits came to the army, and, in a few days, the whole American force recrossed to Trenton.

**254. Princeton.** — Cornwallis, fearing that his troops and stores in New Jersey might be cut off from New York, has-



tened back toward Trenton, which he reached in the afternoon of January 2. Washington could not risk a battle with an enemy that so largely outnumbered him, for retreat into Pennsylvania was made almost impossible by the masses of floating ice in the Delaware River. Leaving a guard to keep his camp fires burning, he marched around to the rear of the British army and reached Princeton in the morning of the next day. Cornwallis could hardly believe that the firing in the direction of Princeton was from Washington's guns, but he was soon convinced; the sudden attack had been successful, and Washington marched on to Morristown Heights with his prisoners. He remained in this strong position during the winter, and the British did not attack him. Cornwallis retreated to New Brunswick and Perth Amboy, and nearly all of New Jersey was freed from the much-dreaded enemy.

**255. Rhode Island.** — The British had made great efforts elsewhere to secure every stronghold. About three weeks before the victory at Trenton, Sir Peter Parker's fleet sailed to Newport, Rhode Island, and that state was immediately invaded.

## CHAPTER IV

### BRITISH INVASIONS FROM CANADA — 1776-7

**256. First British Invasion by Lake Champlain.** — While Washington was retreating from New York, a British expedition set out from Canada toward the Hudson, moving by way of Lake Champlain. Benedict Arnold, with a small fleet which he had built during the summer, engaged the enemy there in the first battle between an American and a British fleet. Arnold was compelled to retreat to Ticonderoga; but the British feared to attack him there, and returned to Montreal.

**257. Burgoyne's Plan.** — The next year, profiting by experience, the British laid their plans with more care and made greater preparations. During the spring of 1777, General Burgoyne landed in Canada with over seven thousand soldiers, chiefly British regulars, though some were Germans. By enlisting Indians and Canadians, his force was raised to ten thousand. Burgoyne was to move with the main army to Albany by way of Lake Champlain. Colonel St. Leger was to take a smaller force up the St. Lawrence to Lake Ontario, and, landing at Oswego, march to the Mohawk valley, reduce Fort Stanwix (or Schuyler), near the present site of Rome, and then join Burgoyne at Albany. It had also been arranged that the army under Howe at New York should move up the Hudson and meet them.



GENERAL BURGoyNE

**258. His Advance to Fort Edward.** — After reaching Crown Point, then in the hands of the British, General Burgoyne advanced to Ticonderoga, and besieged the fort. The American garrison, commanded by General St. Clair, retired to Fort Edward on the Hudson. General Schuyler, then in command of the Northern army, knew that his four thousand men could not withstand Burgoyne's ten thousand, and he retreated to the island at the mouth of the Mohawk to wait for reënforcements. Many were discouraged at the loss of the forts along this retreat, and laid the blame to General Schuyler. Arnold, Morgan, and other officers were sent to aid him.

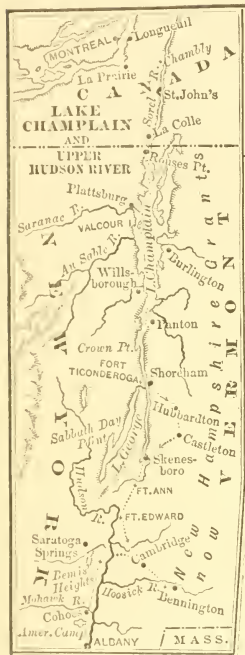
No food could be obtained in the wilderness through which the British army passed, and all their supplies had to be hauled through the woods from Ticonderoga. Knowing this, Schuyler so obstructed the roads by cutting down trees and

1777

July 5,  
1777



burning bridges, that Burgoyne did not reach Fort Edward until the last of July.



SCENE OF BURGoyNE'S  
INVASION

**259. Bennington.**—Burgoyne sent a detachment to take a quantity of stores at Bennington, Vermont. It was met by Colonel John Stark, with his “Green Mountain Boys” and New Hampshire militia. Stark called to his men: “See! There are the redcoats. We must beat them to-day, or Molly Stark’s a widow.” Most of the British were killed or captured.

Aug. 16,  
1777

**260. Battles of Saratoga.**—Congress removed General Schuyler and appointed General Gates to succeed him. Burgoyne waited in vain for help from New York, and the news came that St. Leger’s<sup>1</sup> troops, which were to have come to his relief, had been scattered. Hoping to force his way southward, Burgoyne decided to continue his march. Near Saratoga two battles were fought in which Arnold was one of the foremost in deeds of bravery, and in which Schuyler,

Sept. 19  
and Oct. 7,  
1777

although he felt keenly the unjust accusations that had been made against him, did not shrink from his duty to his country. Gates deserved none of the glory of the victory, as he

<sup>1</sup> At Oriskany, St. Leger was attacked by General Herkimer and driven from the field with heavy loss; but afterwards he boldly laid siege to Fort Stanwix. The Americans at the fort refused to surrender to him. They hoisted upside down several British flags that they had captured, and above them they unfurled a rude imitation of the flag that had just been adopted by Congress. It was made of pieces of a blue coat and a white shirt with strips of red flannel. This was the first time that the stars and stripes waved above our troops.



took no actual part in either of the battles. In the second battle, the British were repulsed with heavy loss.

**261. Burgoyne's Surrender and its Effect.** — Burgoyne began to retreat toward Fort Edward, but the Americans by a hurried march surrounded his army. His provisions were nearly exhausted, and on October 17, his whole force of about six thousand surrendered.

Oct. 17,  
1777

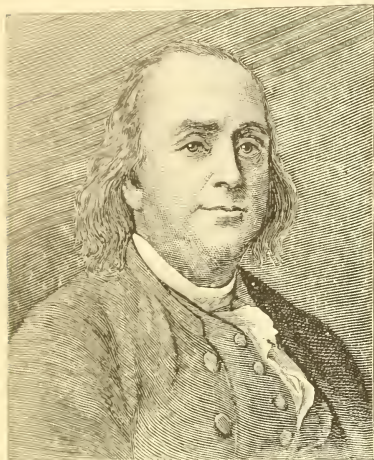


ARNOLD AT SARATOGA

The news of this surrender caused great rejoicing throughout the states. The Americans no longer feared an invasion from Canada, for they held the upper valley of the Hudson and all the forts along the border. Hope revived, and new troops began to enlist in General Washington's decimated companies.

The victory brought another advantage. For a long time Congress had been trying to obtain aid from foreign countries, and especially to get supplies for the army. With this object, Silas Dean had been sent to France in 1775, and afterwards

Benjamin Franklin and Arthur Lee. No public sympathy had been shown, though during the year 1777 about one thousand



BENJAMIN FRANKLIN

barrels of powder and twenty thousand stand of arms had come secretly from France to America. But when the news of Burgoyne's surrender reached the king of France, he decided to acknowledge the independence of the states; and in February, 1778, he signed a treaty of alliance in which he promised to aid them in carrying on the struggle. England received this announcement as a declaration of war, but she could not prevent the French

king from sending help. In a few weeks his fleets, with soldiers and supplies, were on their way to America.

## CHAPTER V

### THE CONTEST FOR THE CAPITAL

JULY, 1777—JULY, 1778

262. Howe moves toward Philadelphia. — The attempt of the British to take Philadelphia prevented Howe from sending Burgoyne the promised aid. It has lately been discovered that General Charles Lee, after his capture, gave the enemy information about Washington's plans; and proposed that Howe should take Philadelphia, "the rebel capital," which would

“destroy the rebel government.” After the victories at Trenton and Princeton, Washington’s army continued to increase, and in May it numbered ten thousand. In his strong and well-chosen position at Morristown, he kept the enemy from crossing New Jersey, and they concluded that the safer plan, though one that involved much delay, would be to go by water. About the last of July, one month after Burgoyne began his advance, the British army sailed from Staten Island to Chesapeake Bay and landed in Maryland, intending to march to Philadelphia.



MARQUIS DE LAFAYETTE

### 263. Battle of the Brandywine. —

When Washington heard where Howe had gone, he hastened to reach Philadelphia in ad-  
vance.<sup>1</sup> The American army moved southward from Philadelphia to intercept the march of the British from Maryland. Washington selected a strong position at Chads Ford on the Brandywine. Here he was attacked by the British in front and rear. The Americans, being greatly outnumbered, lost heavily

Sept. 11,  
1777



COUNT PULASKI

<sup>1</sup> Marquis de Lafayette. — It was just at this time that the Marquis de Lafayette, a young French nobleman, arrived and joined the army as a volunteer without pay. Congress appointed him a major general and he and Washington became firm friends. He was so deeply interested in the struggle of the colonies for independence, that, at his own expense, he had prepared a vessel and sailed for America.

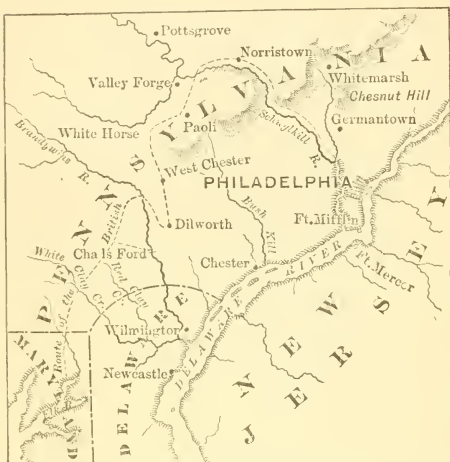
and were forced to retreat. Lafayette and Pulaski<sup>1</sup> were wounded.

**264. Capture of Philadelphia.** — Congress removed to Lancaster, Pennsylvania, and as the military stores at Reading

were in danger, the army withdrew to Pottsgrove on the Schuylkill. But owing to Washington's har-

Sept. 26,  
1777

assing movements, it was two weeks before the British marched into Philadelphia, and encamped at Germantown, a village six miles distant.



OPERATIONS IN PENNSYLVANIA

**265. Germantown.**

— Early in October, Washington at-

tacked Howe at Germantown. He had planned that the attack should be made at every point at five o'clock in the morning.

There is good reason to believe that this brilliant movement would have succeeded, had not a heavy fog caused two divisions of the Americans to make the mistake of firing at each other. Confusion and defeat followed, although the men fought with courage and determination.

Oct. 4,  
1777

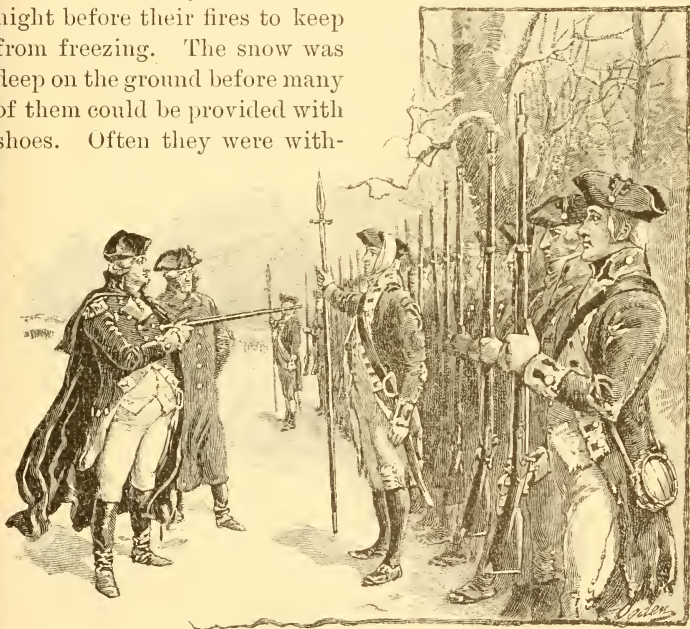
**266. Surrender of the Forts on the Delaware.** — Before this battle, Howe had sent a part of his forces down the Delaware against the forts which prevented British ships from reaching Philadelphia with supplies. After a long and brave defense, the garrisons at these posts were compelled to surrender.

<sup>1</sup> Count Pulaski was a Polish nobleman who had offered his sword in defense of the United States.



**267. Valley Forge.** — Washington, by his movements and attacks, had kept Howe so busily engaged that he had no opportunity to send aid to Burgoyne until it was too late. The British found comfortable winter quarters in Philadelphia, while Washington led his soldiers to Valley Forge — a sheltered spot among the hills twenty-one miles distant. Cabins were built to take the place of tents. The men were greatly in need of comfortable clothes and blankets, and they often sat all night before their fires to keep from freezing. The snow was deep on the ground before many of them could be provided with shoes. Often they were with-

1777-8



STEUBEN DRILLING THE TROOPS

out bread. Washington was deeply grieved to witness so much suffering, a part of which he knew might have been relieved. Much of it was due to the mismanagement of Congress, and to the inefficiency of the commissary department. That winter at

Valley Forge was a dreary time, but the brave men who were enduring pain and want for the sake of liberty did not shrink from their hard duties, and few deserted. They were not idle during those gloomy days; they were being carefully drilled

by Baron Steuben, a Prussian officer, that they might be better able to meet the enemy when the spring campaigns should begin.



BARON STEUBEN

**268. The Conway Cabal.** — About this time a plot was formed in Congress to take from Washington the command of the army, on the ground that he had not been so successful in Pennsylvania as Gates had been in New York. This conspiracy was called the “Conway Cabal,” from its leader, Thomas Conway.

Without attempting to bring reproach upon any who opposed him, Washington justified himself by plainly stating to Congress his reasons for all that had been done. Nothing could take from him the love of his army or the trust which the people reposed in him, and those who had tried to injure him soon regretted the step they had taken.

**269. A Peace Commission.** — Great Britain had learned by this time that the colonies would never submit; and the loss of Burgoyne’s army, together with the interference of France, induced Parliament to make offers

June,  
1778

of peace. In June, 1778, Lord Howe and Sir Henry Clinton,



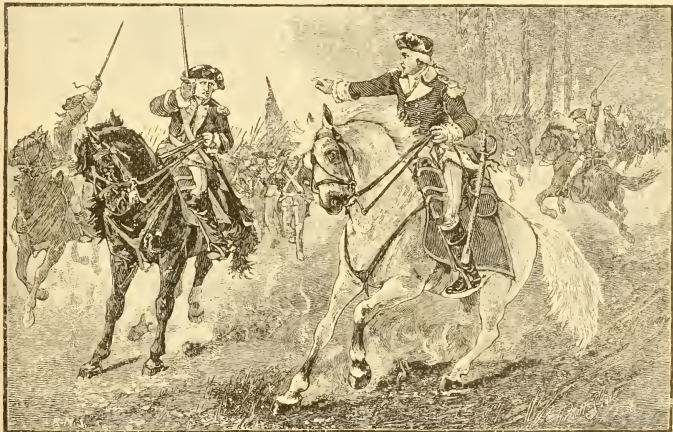
GENERAL CLINTON

through Congress, offered America freedom from taxation, and the privilege of sending representatives to Parliament, if the people would again become obedient subjects of



the king. Congress refused to listen to any proposition from England until the armies and fleets were removed from America, and declared that nothing less than independence would satisfy the people.

**270. Monmouth.** — The British government, being displeased with Howe's management, recalled him, and he returned to England before military movements were begun again; Sir Henry Clinton was appointed to succeed him. To prevent the French fleet then on its way to America from taking New



WASHINGTON AT MONMOUTH

York, Clinton left Philadelphia and hastened through New Jersey. Washington marched from Valley Forge to pursue the British and, on June 28, overtook them at Monmouth. General Charles Lee had been exchanged for a British general captured by the Americans, and was in command of one of the divisions of the army. He treacherously retreated, instead of going forward in obedience to Washington's command, or the battle would undoubtedly have been a great victory. The day was saved by Washington, who rallied the troops and forced the advancing British

June 28,  
1778

to retreat. At midnight Clinton, without stopping to bury his dead, marched his troops to Middletown. After a severe reproof from Washington, Lee was tried by a court-martial — that is, a board of military officers — and suspended from his command for a year. He afterwards wrote an insolent letter to Congress and was dismissed from the army.

**271. Wyoming and Cherry Valley Massacres.** — Throughout this year and the next, Tories and Indians kept the western



settlements in a state of constant alarm. In July, a party of them entered the beautiful valley of Wyoming, Pennsylvania. They carried ruin and destruction everywhere, burning houses, and murdering the inhabitants. Some of the prisoners were cruelly tortured to death. In November, 1778-9, Cherry Valley, in New York, was ruined in the same way. The next summer General Sullivan was sent to put an end to these horrors. After much fighting, and after burning many of the Indian villages, he succeeded in subduing the Six Nations.

**272. Close of the War in the North.** — After the battle of

Monmouth, Clinton's army reached Sandy Hook, and sailed for New York. Washington returned to Middlebrook, New Jersey, where he could watch the enemy. New York and Newport were the only places then held by the British in the North.

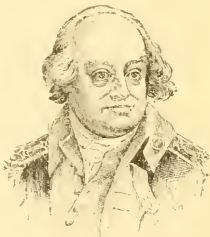
The French fleet, with four thousand troops, reached America in July. Washington thought it could render the best aid by attacking the British ships in the harbors of Rhode Island. He wished to drive them out and get possession of the military stores there. General Sullivan was sent by land to attack Newport; he expected to be assisted by the French fleet, but storms prevented its arrival. The French vessels, after repairs at Boston, returned to the West Indies, and the expedition against Newport failed.

July,  
1778

## CHAPTER VI

### INVASION OF THE SOUTH—1779-80

**273. British Plans.** — England saw that little had been gained by the war in the North; hence, at the close of 1778, the South became the scene of battle. The plan was to begin with Georgia and conquer the colonies, one at a time. General Prevost (preh-vo') was to invade Georgia from Florida, and Clinton was to send a part of his army from New York, under Colonel Campbell, to attack Savannah. General Lincoln, of Massachusetts, was placed in command of the Americans in the South.



GENERAL LINCOLN

**274. Savannah.** — When the English fleet arrived, there was only a small body of American troops in Savannah, and the capital of Georgia fell into the hands of the British.<sup>1</sup> Campbell offered protection to men

Dec. 29,  
1778

<sup>1</sup>Before these movements were begun, two bands of armed Tories entered Georgia from east Florida. One came in boats, and the other by land.

who would join the king's army. Many who refused were sent to prison ships, where they died of contagious diseases.

**275. Conquest of Georgia.** — In January, 1779, Prevost captured the fort at Sunbury, Georgia, and then went on to Savannah to take command of the British force there. He soon had possession of the greater part of the state, and established posts at Ebenezer and Augusta.<sup>1</sup>

The British had hoped to be joined by the Tories in the South and by that means greatly to increase their strength. Agents were accordingly sent throughout the country, and several hundred Tories were collected at Ninety-Six, a fort in the western part of South Carolina. They were men of the worst character, who went about plundering and robbing the people. This lawless force was ordered to march to Savannah, but in Wilkes County they were met by Colonel Pickens and Colonel Clarke with their militia, and were defeated and scattered. General Lincoln then sent General Ashe with a strong force to attack the enemy in Georgia. This party was surprised and routed by Prevost at Briar Creek, where they lost four fifths of their number. This defeat left all Georgia south

The first reached Sunbury, near the coast, and demanded the surrender of the fort, which was refused. The others marched toward Savannah, and were met by General Scriven, who checked their advance by several engagements. This and the news that the other expedition had failed influenced them to return. They burned many houses, and destroyed quantities of rice and grain, besides taking with them everything of value they could carry.

<sup>1</sup>**Nancy Hart**, who lived in Elbert County, Georgia, was a rough, ignorant woman, but she loved the cause of liberty, and did all she could to aid the men who were fighting for independence. Once a party of men from the British camp at Augusta turned into the road that led to her house. One of them shot a turkey in the yard and ordered her to make them a meal of it. Although unwilling to serve them, she concluded to begin the cooking. She sent her daughter Sukey, a girl of twelve, to the spring for a bucket of water. The spring was not far from the swamp where her father and others were concealed, and Sukey blew the conch shell that lay on a stump near by, to give them warning. When Nancy placed the smoking dinner on the table, the men stacked their guns and sat down to eat. While they were at dinner, Nancy managed to hand two of the guns, through a crack between the logs, to her husband. As she lifted the third they sprang up to stop her: but she threatened to kill the first man who moved toward her. One of them stepped forward; she fired, and he fell dead at her feet. Her husband and his companions seized the remaining four Tories and hanged them.

of Augusta in the hands of the British. Governor Wright returned, and royal government was reestablished.<sup>1</sup>

**276. Clark's Conquest of the Northwest.**—Incited by the British, the Indians frequently crossed the Ohio River and attacked the Kentucky<sup>2</sup> settlements. In 1778 George Rogers Clark, of Kentucky County, a member of the Virginia legislature, at his own request was given the command of an expedition against the forts in the territory north of the Ohio, then held by the British.

Just about the time that Prevost was overrunning Georgia, Clark began his march through the pathless wilderness, across swollen streams, and through deep swamps. Before long his provisions

Jan.,  
1779



GEORGE ROGERS CLARK

<sup>1</sup> In May, a body of two thousand British arrived at Norfolk and Portsmouth, Virginia. After burning houses and destroying property, they carried off three thousand hogsheads of tobacco.

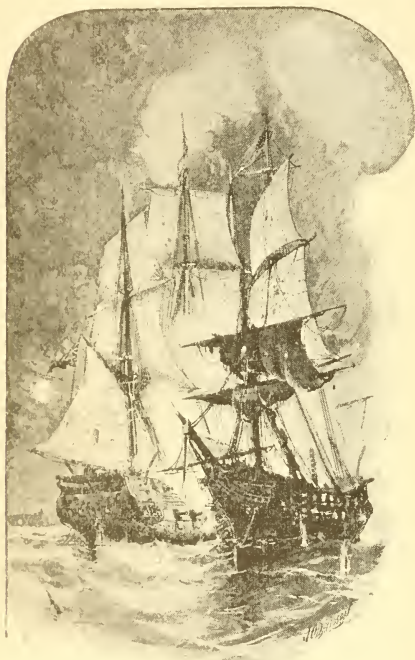
<sup>2</sup> **Kentucky.**—After the defeat of Pontiac, fur traders and hunters, among whom was Daniel Boone of North Carolina, ventured into the wilderness west of the Alleghany Mountains and south of the Ohio, now the state of Kentucky, then a part of the Virginia territory. It lay between the regions claimed by the Six Nations on the north and by the Cherokees on the south. Used as a hunting ground by these warlike nations, the Indians naturally fought many bloody battles there. About the time of the first battles of the Revolution, Daniel Boone with others began to build the first town of Kentucky at Boonesboro. Emigrants from the Carolinas soon followed, leading their pack horses laden with those necessary articles of domestic use which could not possibly be procured or made in the wilderness, and other settlements were started. These settlements were soon united into the County of Kentucky of Virginia. Kentucky is from an Indian word meaning "hunting land." The name, "dark and bloody ground," was given on account of the fierce Indian warfare waged there.



DANIEL BOONE



were exhausted, and it was difficult to obtain food of any kind. Nevertheless, the forts at Kaskaskia and Vincennes fell into his hands. The Indians promised peace, and the French inhabitants, after hearing of the alliance of France with the United



BON HOMME RICHARD AND SERAPIS

States, willingly took the oath of allegiance. The capture of these forts gave the Americans possession of that vast territory north and northwest of the Ohio River, which, though claimed by Virginia under its charter, would certainly otherwise have been annexed to the British possessions in Canada, making the Ohio River the northern boundary of the United States.

### 277. Paul Jones.

—The conquest just described and the famous naval fight

of Paul Jones were the only cheering events of this year. During the war, the Americans commissioned many privateers,<sup>1</sup> and they did a great amount of damage to English commerce. In September, 1779, Paul Jones, a Scotchman in command of a squadron

Sept. 23,  
1779

<sup>1</sup> A privateer is an armed vessel belonging to a private citizen, who has received from the government a commission to capture any vessels of the enemy.



that had been prepared by the American commissioners in Paris, fell in with a fleet of English merchant vessels off the eastern coast of England, near Flamborough Head. His ship, the *Bonhomme Richard*<sup>1</sup> (bo-nom'-re-shar'), met the British ship *Serapis*. After fighting awhile at a distance, the *Richard* moved to the side of the *Serapis*, and Jones fastened its anchor to his own vessel, so that some of the large guns of the enemy could not be used against him. In this position, with their guns touching each other, the fighting continued. Both ships had been on fire several times, when the *Alliance* came to Jones's assistance, and the *Serapis* surrendered. Jones had only time to place his men upon the captured ship before the *Richard* sank. The other English vessels also fell into his hands. This was one of the bloodiest battles ever fought upon the sea. Three hundred of the three hundred and seventy-five men on the American vessel were killed or wounded.



PAUL JONES

**278. Siege of Savannah.** — The French fleet left the West Indies and reached Savannah in September, 1779. There was an understanding between Lincoln and Count D'Estaing that they should approach the town at the same time from different directions. After the siege had lasted a month, an attack was made, which failed to accomplish anything. Among the killed were the brave Count Pulaski and Sergeant Jasper, the gallant hero of Fort Moultrie, who fell while trying to rescue again the flag of South Carolina.

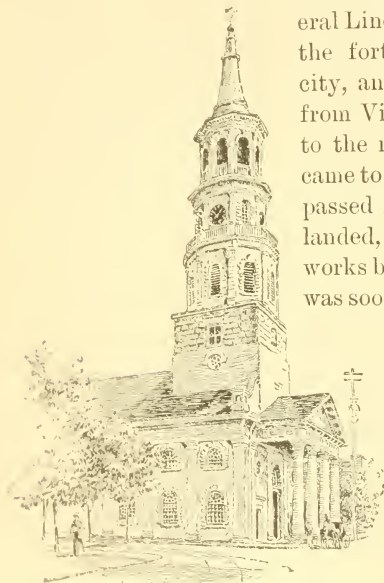
Oct. 9,  
1779

<sup>1</sup> In English, "Goodman Richard"; so named in honor of Franklin, who had written much under the pseudonym of "Poor Richard."

The French fleet sailed back to France, and General Lincoln returned to South Carolina. This failure was felt deeply in all the states, but nowhere so much as in Georgia, where parties of armed men passed through the country, robbing the inhabitants and driving off their cattle and slaves.

**279. Charleston.** — After the French fleet left, Sir Henry Clinton sailed from New York with a large force toward Charleston, South Carolina. General Lincoln strengthened the fortifications of the city, and reënforcements from Virginia and North Carolina to the number of fifteen hundred came to assist him. Clinton's ships passed Fort Moultrie. His army landed, and erected lines of earthworks beyond the city. Charleston was soon completely surrounded by

May 12,  
1780



ST. MICHAEL'S CHURCH, CHARLESTON

the enemy. The siege continued eight weeks. At the end of that time, General Lincoln surrendered his whole army of five thousand men, and the citizens of Charleston, as prisoners of war.

**280. Conquest of South Carolina.** — After the surrender of Charleston, the

British army moved from the coast over the greater part of the state, and ruin and sorrow followed its footsteps. Families were broken and scattered. Men who refused to join the royal army were killed in their own houses as outlaws; and women and children fled from their burning homes with no shelter but the forest before them. In the southern part of the state there were more negroes than white men, and

the danger from them was very great, while in the up-country were numbers of men who had been living in South Carolina but a short time, and who were firmly attached to the king. Clinton naturally thought his work in South Carolina finished, and, leaving the command with Lord Cornwallis, he returned to New York.



GENERAL CORNWALLIS

**281. Partisan Leaders.**—Much of the warfare after this

was carried on under the leadership of the partisans<sup>1</sup>—Sumter,<sup>2</sup>

Marion, Lee, Clarke, and others. Their small bands of woodsmen continually annoyed the British general by unexpected attacks upon his foraging parties, and by the capture of supplies on the way from Charleston to military posts farther inland. Sumter and Lee fought around Camden and Ninety-Six, Marion watched the valleys of the Santee and Pedee, and Clarke of Georgia kept back the Tories along the Savannah.



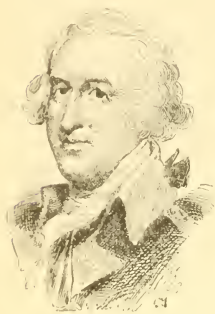
GENERAL MARION

**282. Battle of Camden.**—Gen-

<sup>1</sup> Partisans are commanders of bodies of light troops, whose purpose is to forage and to harass the enemy.

<sup>2</sup> Colonel Thomas Sumter.—A large number of the people fled to North Carolina. Among them was Colonel Sumter, who had commanded a Continental regiment. A body of these refugees chose him for their leader and, in the summer of 1780, they returned to their native state to oppose the invaders. Their weapons were made from farm implements by country blacksmiths, and their bullets were molded of pewter. Sometimes they went into battle with

eral Gates, who had gained a reputation by the capture of Burgoyne, was appointed by Congress, after Lincoln's surren-



GENERAL GATES

der, to take the command of the American forces in the South. Baron De Kalb had been sent with reënforcements for Lincoln, but having heard of the fall of Charleston, he waited at Deep River in North Carolina for further orders. When Gates arrived, the army marched into the northern part of South Carolina. Cornwallis hastened from Charleston to Camden to unite with Lord Rawdon's forces. At Sanders Creek, near Camden, they met Gates and defeated him.<sup>1</sup> Each leader had planned to sur-

prise the other. The heroic Baron De Kalb fell while his regulars were bravely fighting.

Aug. 16,  
1780

The raw recruits of the militia companies fled at the first fire. The American army lost a thousand men, with all of its artillery and two hundred wagons. Gates fled in such haste that night found him at Charlotte, sixty miles from the battlefield. With his routed

forces he continued the retreat to Hillsboro, North Carolina.

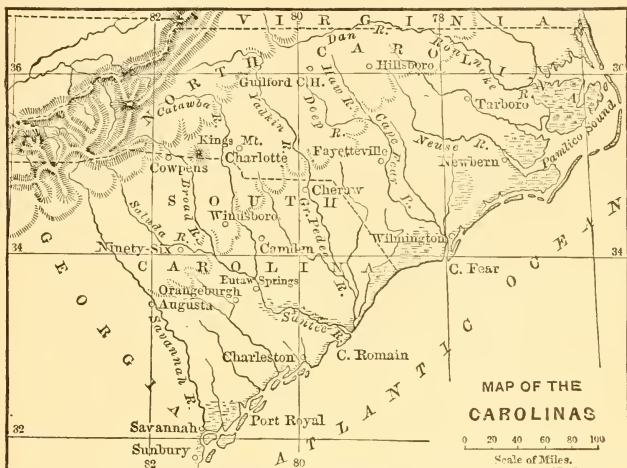


BARON DE KALB

only three rounds of shot and powder to a man. Often some of them, unarmed, stood at a safe distance, waiting to step into the broken ranks and take the arms of those who had fallen. Men flocked to Sumter, and he soon had six hundred.

<sup>1</sup> General Francis Marion (mar'-e-on), who had been wounded during the siege of Charleston, went to North Carolina. As General Gates's army moved forward toward Camden, he, with a band of sixteen men, went to the banks of the Santee. There he captured a body of British troops, and released some of the American prisoners who had been taken at Sanders Creek. The men of the country joined him as he passed on. To supply them with arms, he had

**283. Sumter's Defeat.** — Just before this battle, Colonel Sumter had captured a party of British soldiers who were carrying clothing and ammunition to Camden, but hearing of Gates's defeat, he retreated along the south side of the



Wateree. Colonel Tarleton soon reached his camp. Sumter's men had been marching without provisions and without sleep, and while they were resting on the bank of the river, the British succeeded in surprising and routing them. The three

saws of sawmills turned into swords. Sometimes he commanded only seventy men, and at one time he had lost all but twenty-five. The enemy burned the houses of those who were supposed to be with him; but this only made the people more determined, and added many reinforcements to his ranks. For months he and his men slept in the open air, and found shelter in the swamps. From these hiding places they rode out and surprised the enemy. The British called him the "Swamp Fox." A British officer came one day by flag of truce to General Marion's camp. After the business had been transacted, Marion invited the officer to dine. When for dinner the negro cook simply handed the gentlemen several roasted sweet potatoes upon a piece of bark, the officer politely remarked that the general's supplies were short, but Marion expressed his pleasure at having so fine a meal to offer his guest. When the officer returned to his command, he declared it useless to fight men who could so cheerfully endure hardships for the cause of liberty.



hundred prisoners and the stores that Sumter had captured were retaken, and a large part of his force was compelled to surrender. Undaunted by this defeat, Sumter collected another company of volunteers.

**284. Proclamation by Cornwallis.** — Thinking that there would be no further resistance by the people of South Carolina, Cornwallis issued a proclamation, declaring that all who had aided the rebel cause should be imprisoned and should lose all their property; and that his officers should hang any man who had once been in the royal army and had afterwards joined the rebels. In accordance with this order, many men were taken from the prisons and hanged without trial.

## CHAPTER VII

### AMERICAN SUCCESS IN THE SOUTH

OCTOBER, 1780 — SEPTEMBER, 1781

**285. Battle of Kings Mountain.** — A few weeks after the battle of Camden, Cornwallis moved his army to Charlotte, North Carolina. He sent Major Ferguson to collect the Tories of the mountain districts. Having gathered a force of eleven hundred, Ferguson encamped on Kings Mountain, near the boundary between the Carolinas. He was attacked there by a band of brave mountaineers, under the leadership of William Campbell, John Sevier, Isaac Shelby, Charles McDowell, and others. The Americans advanced from opposite sides of the mountain, and after a short but bloody fight Ferguson was killed, and his entire force captured. Ten of the prisoners — notorious house burners and murderers — were hanged. This battle is considered one of the most important of the many fought in the Southern States during the Revolution. Cornwallis believed that the defeat of Gates and Sumter had brought all the Southern colonies into submission, and that he could march victoriously through North Carolina and Virginia. The success of the Americans

Oct. 7,  
1780



at Kings Mountain compelled him to change his plans; and his next movement was a retreat to Winnsboro in South Carolina.

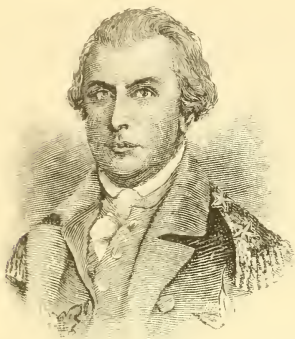


BATTLE OF KINGS MOUNTAIN

**286. England's Condition.** — The people of England were growing weary of this fruitless war, which was every day adding to the public debt. British cruisers captured every vessel that came within their reach. No flag was respected; the commerce of every nation suffered from their depredations, but none so seriously as Holland, who, in consequence joined the alliance with France and Spain against England. The Germans would no longer send soldiers to America.

Early in 1780 Russia, Sweden, and Denmark formed a compact called the "Armed Neutrality," in which each agreed to aid in raising a fleet for the protection of the commerce of neutral powers against Great Britain. This, in addition to the continued siege of Gibraltar, only multiplied trouble for England, and compelled her to divide her strength to meet the war in America on the one hand, and the war in Europe on the other.

287. General Nathanael Greene, a native of Rhode Island, was appointed to succeed Gates in command of the Southern army,



GENERAL GREENE

which had moved to Charlotte, North Carolina. Associated with him were several efficient officers, among whom were General Morgan, who had fought in Canada and at Saratoga, and General Henry Lee. The force Greene came to command numbered scarcely two thousand men, and was made up of those who had fought at Camden. Congress had no money with which to pay them, and at the beginning of the winter they were without clothes. The

British army of regulars that they had to fight, was large in numbers and well provided with supplies. The next year would decide the war. While Washington was watching for an opportunity to strike Clinton, Greene was making preparations for his campaign.

288. **Battle of the Cowpens.** — Greene sent a part of his command under Morgan to the western part of South Carolina, while

Jan. 17,  
1781

he advanced with the main army to the Pedee, northeast of Winnsboro, where Cornwallis was encamped. Both movements were made to thwart the plans

of Cornwallis, who was preparing to march into North Carolina. To check the design of the Americans, Colonel Tarleton was sent to drive Morgan back and to prevent the men



A RIFLEMAN IN MORGAN'S BAND

throughout that part of the state from joining him. Morgan encamped at the Cowpens,<sup>1</sup> a short distance from Kings Mountain, and Tarleton attacked him there. The British were defeated with heavy loss.

**289. Greene's Retreat.** — General Morgan began to move toward the northeast, in order to cross the Catawba before Cornwallis, who had started in pursuit, could arrive. Both armies marched in the same direction at the rate of thirty miles a day. The British followed so closely that they encamped on the bank of the Catawba in the evening of the day on which the Americans had crossed. A heavy rain fell during the night and raised the waters, so that the British could not continue the pursuit for two days.

Finally the enemy reached the Yadkin; they found Morgan on the opposite side, with the boats in which he had crossed fastened to the other bank. The Americans gained time to unite the two divisions of the army, and General Greene continued the retreat as far as the Dan River, in Virginia. Cornwallis here gave up the pursuit, and he returned to Hillsboro, North Carolina.

**290. Guilford Courthouse.** — Reënforcements having been sent to General Greene, he marched southward again. The opposing armies met at Guilford Courthouse, where a desperate battle was fought, and Greene again retreated. Cornwallis was so much weakened that he did not follow the Americans, but having left Lord Rawdon in command in South Carolina, he moved his army to Wilmington, on the coast. From that place he went on to Petersburg, to



COLONEL TARLETON

March 15,  
1781

<sup>1</sup> In South Carolina, the grass of the forest afforded pasture for cattle nearly all the year, and they roamed through the woods without much attention from their owners. In the fall the cattle were driven into large inclosures and kept during the winter. Then each man could claim and mark his own. Morgan encamped a short distance from the cowpens near the boundary of North Carolina, and from these the battle took its name.

join the British forces which had been sent there by Clinton to prevent Virginia from aiding the Carolinas.

**291. The Carolinas relieved.** — Greene now held all of North Carolina but Wilmington, and all the northern part of South Carolina except that held by Rawdon at Camden. Marion, Lee, and Sumter did valuable work in keeping supplies from the forts still held by the British; Greene had pursued Cornwallis as far as Deep River, but, finding that the British army had crossed a few hours before, he returned to South Carolina. He then moved to Hobkirks Hill, where he was attacked by Rawdon and compelled to retreat. The next day, the fort at Wrights Bluff, the most important post below Camden, fell into the hands of Lee and Marion.<sup>1</sup> As the capture of this place prevented communication between Camden and Charleston, Rawdon left Camden and moved to Eutaw Springs. After a siege of four weeks, Greene attacked the strongly fortified post at Ninety-Six. One third of the men who made the charge were killed, and the others were driven back; but Ninety-Six was soon evacuated, and the Americans took possession.

To avoid sickness among his men, Greene sent his army to spend the hot and malarial summer months among the hills of the Santee.

**292. Battle of Eutaw Springs.** — The early days of September found General Greene again moving against the enemy. The

Sept. 8,  
1781

British retreated to Eutaw Springs. Greene advanced and made the attack, which was at first successful; but, after the battle had progressed for several hours, he saw that he was fighting at great disadvantage and drew off his forces. During the night after the

<sup>1</sup> **Rebecca Motte.** — The brave spirit of independence which characterized the men of those days was also shown by the women of America. Lee and Marion had laid siege to Fort Motte, a house occupied by a British garrison, and which Rawdon was hastening from Camden to save. Mrs. Rebecca Motte, the owner of the house, came to Marion's camp with a strong bow and a bundle of arrows, and asked that firebrands be shot with them to the roof of her house. While she watched the flames destroy her home, she saw the enemy's garrison surrender to her countrymen.

battle, the enemy left Eutaw Springs, and soon afterwards retreated to Charleston. This was the last battle fought in South Carolina, and it ended Greene's campaign. He had succeeded in driving the enemy from every part of the Carolinas and Georgia, except Wilmington, Charleston, and Savannah.<sup>1</sup> His army encamped in the low country near Charleston. Their clothes were worn to rags, and they were almost entirely without meat and money. They were exposed to the burning heat of the sun all day, and to the poisonous airs of the night while they slept. Yet the greater part of them submitted to all their sufferings and privations with a "patience that was never excelled by any army in the world."

## CHAPTER VIII

### CLOSE OF THE WAR

**293. British Movements in the North.**—While the war was being waged in the South, the British did nothing of importance at the North. In 1779 General Tryon led a raiding party into Connecticut, where it committed many outrages and burned several towns. General Clinton went up the Hudson River and captured the forts at Stony Point and Verplanks Point. Within a few weeks, General Wayne recaptured Stony

1779

<sup>1</sup> **Augusta.**—General Pickens and Colonel Clarke, with a force of militia, had besieged Augusta, and early in June Colonel Browne, who was in command, surrendered the fort. Though he had recently hung thirteen American prisoners and had encouraged the Indians to torture others, he was furnished with a guard and sent to Savannah.

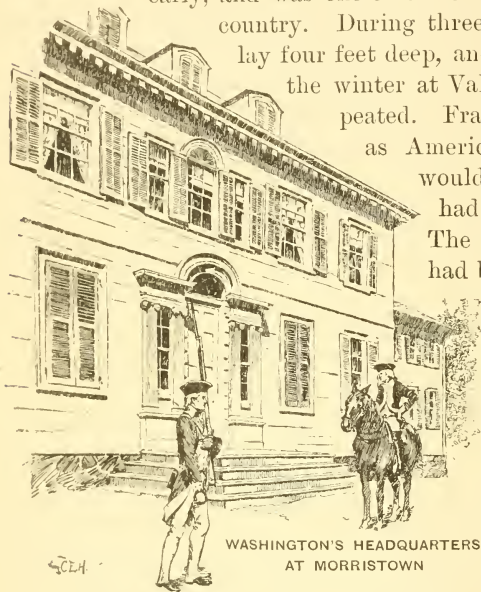


GENERAL WAYNE



Point,<sup>1</sup> and Major Henry Lee surprised the British at Paulus Hook,<sup>2</sup> and established himself there.

294. Winter of 1779-80. — Washington selected Morristown, New Jersey, for his winter quarters. The winter began early, and was one of the coldest known in this country. During three months the snow lay four feet deep, and the hardships of the winter at Valley Forge were repeated. France had not helped, as America had hoped she would, although Spain had joined the alliance. The Continental money had become almost valueless. Congress had no credit and could not borrow. The army was sadly diminished. On the British side, Parliament had voted to send out eighty-five thousand seamen,



WASHINGTON'S HEADQUARTERS  
AT MORRISTOWN

and to add thirty-five thousand to the land army. The outlook was discouraging.

295. Return of the French Fleet.—Lafayette had returned to

<sup>1</sup> Stony Point was an important place on the Hudson, north of New York city. General Wayne, called on account of his dashing exploits "Mad Anthony Wayne," took command of an expedition for the purpose of driving away its British captors. The attack was made at midnight, July 15, with fixed bayonets and from opposite sides of the fort. Although General Wayne's men advanced against a furious fire of muskets, they succeeded in reaching the inside of the fortifications, and the garrison, numbering five hundred and forty, surrendered.

<sup>2</sup> Paulus Hook. — A few days after the capture of Stony Point, Major Henry Lee, often called "Light Horse Harry Lee," undertook the task of surprising the British forces at Paulus Hook, now Jersey City. This he succeeded in doing at night, July 19, and his reward was one hundred and fifty prisoners.



France, and, during the winter of 1779–80, used his influence with the king to have another fleet fitted out for America. It arrived in July with six thousand men, under Count Rochambeau (ro'-shong-bō'), and anchored at Newport, Rhode Island, until the army should need its assistance. Here it was blockaded by the British fleet.

July,  
1780

**296. Arnold's Treason.** — Just after the British conquest of South Carolina and the loss of the two armies sent to its defense, the treason of General Benedict Arnold, who in the earlier battles of the war had been distinguished for his bravery, deepened the gloom of the people. After the evacuation of Philadelphia by the British in 1778, he had been placed in command at that city. There he lived extravagantly, lost heavily by gambling, and used the public money as his own. A court-martial tried him and sentenced him to be reprovved by the commander in chief. Arnold's desire for money and revenge led him to sell his honor and betray his country.



BENEDICT ARNOLD



MAJOR ANDRÉ

Making his wounds an excuse for not moving with the army, he obtained from General Washington, in the summer of 1780, the command of the strong and important fort at West Point. He at once began a correspondence with General Clinton, in which he promised to give the British possession of West Point. In return he was to receive ten thousand pounds<sup>1</sup> and the rank and salary of a British brigadier general.

1780

Arnold insisted that a British officer should meet him in person to complete the negotiations.

<sup>1</sup> A British historian says that he received £6315.

Major André (an'-drā) was sent for this purpose. On his way back to New York, he was captured by a party of Americans, who searched his clothing, and found concealed in his boots papers that disclosed his errand and Arnold's treason. Among them was a plan of the fortifications of West Point, and, in Arnold's handwriting, a description of its



CAPTURE OF ANDRÉ

surroundings, with a statement of the strength of the garrison, the guns, and the stores.

André was delivered to the military authorities. He was tried by a court-martial and executed as a spy. Arnold was warned, and escaped. He received the price he asked; but his gold and his rank brought him no happiness. He was despised by many of the English and hated by the Americans,

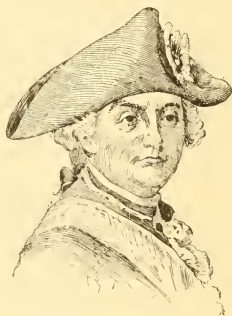
and in 1801 he died in London, full of remorse for his treason. His memory will always be coupled with dishonor and reproach.

**297. Siege of Yorktown.** — When Cornwallis reached Petersburg (see § 290), Arnold,<sup>1</sup> who had been in command of the British troops there, was sent back to New York. Lafayette's force in Virginia was increased, but he could do little to oppose the large numbers of the enemy, and Cornwallis plundered the people and destroyed much valuable property.

Clinton, who feared an attack on New York, desired Cornwallis to take a position on the seacoast, and be ready to send him aid if necessary. Cornwallis therefore moved to Yorktown on Chesapeake Bay, and built fortifications there.

Washington, who had spent the year near New York, watching for an opportunity to attack Clinton, suddenly changed his plans, and prepared to move southward, but not even his own army suspected his design until it was far on its way. His army and a French force under Count de Rochambeau reached Yorktown about the last of September. A large French fleet under Count de Grasse had arrived there from the West Indies before them, and Lafayette had cut off retreat by land. The British were now entirely surrounded. There could be no escape through the York or James River because of the fleet, and retreat by land was cut off by the combined American and French armies.

**298. Surrender of Cornwallis.** — After besieging the town three weeks, with sixteen thousand French and Americans,



COUNT ROCHAMBEAU

<sup>1</sup> In January, 1781, Arnold with a British force invaded Virginia. He moved up the James River and destroyed a large amount of property. He afterward fortified Portsmouth. Washington sent Lafayette with a body of men to Virginia to capture the traitor; but Arnold changed his position, and Washington's plans were not carried out.

Washington opened a cannonade from one hundred cannons. The British fortifications were soon broken, and their guns so disabled that they could not be used. Cornwallis tried to make his escape by crossing the York River to Gloucester (glos'ter) Point, intending to fight his way through at that place. A storm scattered his boats, and compelled him to give up the



AT YORKTOWN

attempt. Convinced that there was no hope for help, Cornwallis surrendered to Washington, October 19, 1781, his whole force of more than seven thousand men. This victory really closed the war. The news reached Philadelphia in the night. A watchman on the street called out: "Past three o'clock, and a cloudy morning — *Cornwallis is taken!*" This soon aroused the whole city, and the cry was repeated at every corner. The people from Maine to Georgia were happy with the hope of peace. British troops

Oct. 19,  
1781



remained in New York, Charleston, and Savannah, but there were no more great battles. Some of the members of Parliament began to speak of plans for closing the war. Commissioners from England and from the United States met in Paris to agree upon terms of peace. The United States sent John Adams, Benjamin Franklin, John Jay, and Henry Laurens.

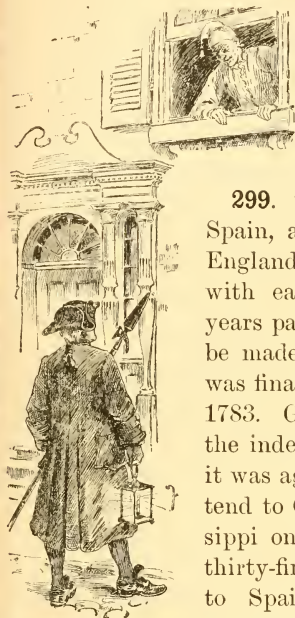
**299. Treaty of Paris.** — America, France, Spain, and Holland had been at war with England, and terms of peace had to be made with each of these nations. Nearly two years passed before a final settlement could be made, but the treaty of Paris was finally signed on September 3, 1783. Great Britain acknowledged

Sept. 3,  
1783

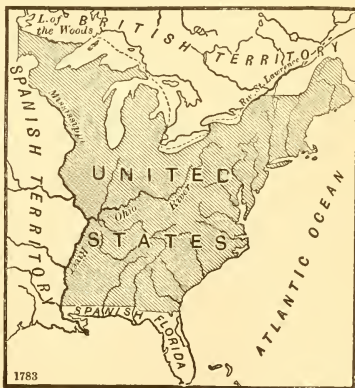
the independence of the thirteen states, and it was agreed that their territory should extend to Canada on the north, to the Mississippi on the west, and as far south as the thirty-first parallel. Florida was returned to Spain.

The treaty also secured to

Americans the right of fishing on the banks of Newfoundland, a privilege not only of great commercial importance, but of immense value in its results, for the fishermen became trained as seamen, and, in later years, proved by heroic deeds the strength of our arms upon the sea.

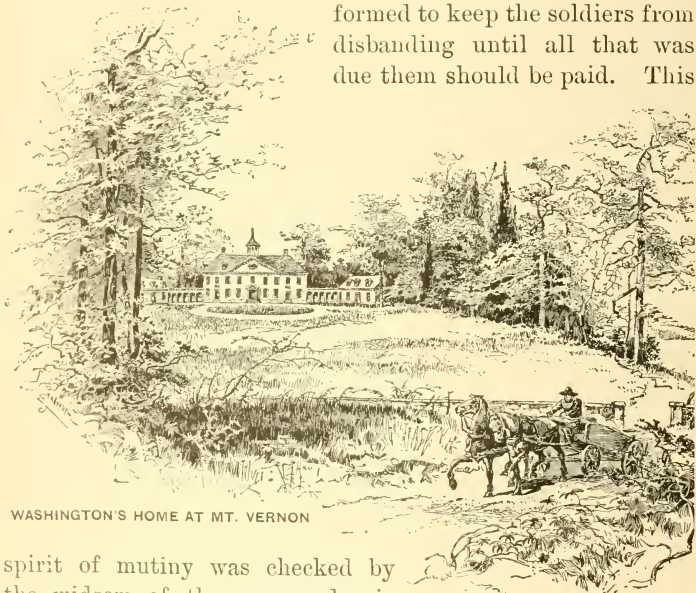


"CORNWALLIS IS  
TAKEN!"



UNITED STATES IN 1783

300. **The Army disbanded.**—While these negotiations for peace were proceeding, the American soldiers remained in camp, and were anxiously waiting for Congress to send their pay, which had long been due. Washington received a letter asking him to settle the difficulties by taking the government into his own hands, and making himself king. He firmly and indignantly refused to consider the matter. At Newburg, about the same time, a plot was formed to keep the soldiers from disbanding until all that was due them should be paid. This



WASHINGTON'S HOME AT MT. VERNON

spirit of mutiny was checked by the wisdom of the commander in chief.

The preliminary articles of the treaty were signed in January, 1783; peace was proclaimed, and Washington made the announcement to his army on the 19th of April, 1783, just eight years after the battle of Lexington. Before the close of the year the last British soldiers had embarked for England, and the American army had been disbanded. At last the brave men, so long exposed to hardship and suffering,



were allowed to go back to their homes. After a tender parting from his officers at New York, Washington went to Annapolis, where Congress was then holding its session, and resigned his commission. On his way, he handed to the comptroller of the treasury in Philadelphia an account of his expenses as commander of the army, but he refused to receive any payment for his services. He then hastened on to Mount Vernon, that he might spend Christmas at home, and there enjoy the peace which had rewarded his labor.

### QUESTIONS FOR STUDY

Why were the Navigation Acts unjust? How did the colonists evade these laws? Why did not the English enforce them more rigidly? Why did not the colonists set up manufactures of their own?

What reasons had Parliament for taxing America? What tax similar to that imposed by the Stamp Act is now imposed in the United States? Why was the British tax unjust and the present law just? Was it right to destroy tea that belonged to other men?

Where had Washington received the training necessary to make him a good commander? In what way had the French and Indian War prepared the colonists for the struggle of the Revolution? What would probably have been the result, if the British attack on Fort Moultrie had been successful?

Why was the control of the Hudson River of importance to each army? What would probably have been the result of Burgoyne's invasion, if Howe had joined him at Albany, as planned? What were some of the results of Burgoyne's surrender?

Why could not Washington hold New York city? What do you think of his retreat through New Jersey? Of his campaign in January, 1777? What do you think was Washington's most wonderful feat? Why do you think so? Why could not Congress furnish adequate supplies to the army?

Why were the French willing to aid the Americans in their efforts to gain independence from British rule? Why were so many brave soldiers willing to come from their homes in Europe to fight for the American cause?

Was there any excuse for Arnold's treason? Was André's fate a just one? Why were the Tories hated and feared? Why was Clark's conquest of the country north of the Ohio of great importance?

Make a table of the important battles of the Revolution, grouping them into the campaigns about Boston, around New York, in New Jersey, around Philadelphia, in northern New York, and in the South. Use the following form :

#### BATTLES OF THE CAMPAIGN

WHERE FOUGHT	WHEN FOUGHT	AMERICAN COMMANDER	BRITISH COMMANDER	VICTORY

Draw maps to illustrate each of the above campaigns.

#### TOPICS FOR REVIEW

1. State briefly in tabular form all the causes which led to the Revolution.

2. What were the Navigation Acts ?

3. What effect did they have upon the commerce and industries of the American colonies ?

4. Why were Writs of Assistance issued, and why did the colonists oppose them ?

5. Tell about the Stamp Act, and how it was received in the colonies.

6. Relate the story of the controversy over the tea duty, and how it ended.

7. What were the provisions of the Boston Port Bill ?

8. How did the other colonies show their sympathy with Boston ?

9. Name the principal leaders in the resistance of the colonies to British laws.

10. Tell when and where the first three congresses of the colonies met.

11. Give an account of the battle of Lexington, and its effect.

12. Relate briefly the history of Washington throughout the war, from the time he took command of the army until the surrender at Yorktown, telling where he went each year, what battles he fought, and where he spent the winter.

13. Give a detailed account of his retreat from New York to Philadelphia, and his actions in New Jersey during the winter of 1776-7.

14. Give the history of Burgoyne's invasion.

15. Tell about George Rogers Clark's expedition to the Northwest.

16. Outline the history of the war in the South, from the taking of Savannah to Cornwallis's occupation of Yorktown.

17. Tell about the partisan leaders of the South. What was the value of their work ?

18. Give an account of the siege and surrender of Yorktown. What debt do we owe to France in connection with this victory?

19. Name some of the noted foreign officers who came to help the colonies.

20. Tell the stories you know about Washington that will show his patriotism.

21. What colony made the first declaration of independence? Give an account of it.

22. Relate the history of the Declaration of Independence, telling what led to it, who suggested it, who wrote it, and when and where it was signed.

23. Tell about some of the difficulties which Congress had to battle against.

24. When and where was the treaty of peace signed, and what were its terms?

### CHRONOLOGICAL TABLE OF IMPORTANT EVENTS (1761-1783)

#### *English Sovereign*

#### GEORGE III

1761. Writs of Assistance issued.

1765. The Stamp Act passed by Parliament.

The first Colonial Congress met, October 7.

1766. The Stamp Act repealed.

1767. Parliament imposed a tax on tea and other articles.

1768. British troops sent to Boston.

1770. The Boston massacre.

1771. The Battle of Alamance, April.

1773. The Boston Tea Party.

1774. The Boston Port Bill passed.

The first Continental Congress met, September 5.

1775. The battle of Lexington, April 19.

Ticonderoga and Crown Point captured, May 10.

The second Continental Congress met, May 10.

The Mecklenburg Declaration of Independence, May 20.

The battle of Bunker Hill, June 17.

Washington took command of the army at Cambridge, July 3.

Unsuccessful invasion of Canada by the Americans, November and December.

1776. Boston evacuated, March 17.

Battle of Moores Creek, February.

1776. Attack on Fort Moultrie, Charleston, South Carolina, June 28.  
Declaration of Independence signed, July 4.  
Battle of Long Island, August 27.  
Washington's retreat through New Jersey, November and December.  
Washington crossed the Delaware, December 8.  
Rhode Island occupied by the British, December 8.  
Washington recrossed the Delaware, and attacked the Hessians at Trenton, December 26.
1777. Battle of Princeton, January 3.  
Battle of Bennington, August 16.  
Battle of the Brandywine, September 11.  
First battle of Saratoga, September 19.  
Occupation of Philadelphia by the British, September 26.  
Battle of Germantown, October 4.  
Second battle of Saratoga, October 7.  
Burgoyne's surrender, October 17.  
Forts on the Delaware surrendered, October.  
Articles of Confederation submitted to the States, November.
1778. Treaty of alliance with France signed, February 6.  
Peace commissioners arrived from Great Britain, June.  
Philadelphia evacuated, June 18.  
Battle of Monmouth, June 28.  
The Wyoming massacre, July.  
The Cherry Valley massacre, November.  
Capture of Savannah by the British, December 29.
1779. Sunbury, Georgia, taken by the British, January.  
Clark's conquest of the Northwest, February.  
Battle of Briar Creek, March 3.  
Wayne's capture of Stony Point, July 16.  
Paulus Hook captured, July 19.  
Paul Jones's fight with the *Serapis*, September 23.  
The French fleet besieged Savannah, September.
1780. Fall of Charleston, South Carolina, May 12.  
Battle of Camden, August 16.  
Arnold's treason and André's capture, September.  
Battle of Kings Mountain, October 7.  
General Greene assigned to the chief command in the South, October.
1781. Battle of the Cowpens, January 17.  
Battle of Guilford Courthouse, March 15.  
Battle of Hobkirk's Hill, April 25.

1781. Ninety-Six evacuated, June 29.  
 Battle of Eutaw Springs, September 8.  
 The American army, under Lafayette, and the French fleet began the siege of Yorktown, September 8.  
 Cornwallis surrendered, October 19.
1783. The treaty of Paris, signed September 3, closed the war.  
 The army disbanded, November 3.  
 Washington resigned his commission, December 23.

## PARALLEL READING

FISKE: *The American Revolution; The War of Independence for Young People*. — LOSSING'S *Field Book of the Revolution*. — SPARKS'S LIBRARY OF AMERICAN BIOGRAPHIES: *Kosciusko; Pulaski; Lafayette*. — SIMMS: *Life of Marion; The Partizan*. — RAYMOND'S *Women of the South*. — MRS. ELLET: *Women of the American Revolution; Domestic History of the Revolution*. — HAWTHORNE: *Ticonderoga* (in *Twice-told Tales*); *Septimus Felton*. — COFFIN'S *Boys of '76*. — COOPER: *The Spy; The Pilot; Lionel Lincoln; Leatherstocking Tales*. — LONGFELLOW: *Paul Revere's Ride; Pulaski's Banner*. — BRYANT'S *Song of Marion's Men*.

## CHAPTER IX

## THE CONFEDERATION

**301. Articles of Confederation.** — In 1777 Articles of Confederation had been sent to each of the state legislatures for ratification. According to these articles, each colony entered the “league of friendship” for common defense and mutual good as a free and separate state, having one vote in Congress, and retaining the right to manage its own affairs. The states were so jealous of their rights that they intrusted little power to Congress, reserving to themselves even the right to levy taxes. When money or troops were needed to carry on the war, Congress requested each state to contribute its share. As the need became greater, it begged and implored the legislatures to send men into the field; but it could not compel them to raise a dollar or to send a soldier.

1777



It could borrow money, but it had no means of paying the debts incurred. No resolution could be passed without a two thirds majority of the votes; when any state opposed a measure, Congress had no power to compel it to submit. The consent of all the states was necessary before the articles could be adopted. This was not done until 1781; but, in the meantime, the war was carried on under the general direction of Congress.

**302. Differences in Religion and Manners.** — When the independence was established, there were marked differences between the sections in race, religion, and customs, which were likely to make it difficult to form a strong union. The stern laws of the Puritans made New England very unlike Virginia, where the Cavaliers still held to the Church of England, and to many aristocratic customs of the mother country. The Quakers and the Germans of the middle colonies differed almost as widely from the Huguenots and Cavaliers in the South. Yet all had stood shoulder to shoulder through eight years of war; and, in spite of differences and quarrels, the common interest in the cause of freedom, and the growing trade between the states, were gradually making the people less and less unlike.

**303. Industries.** — The majority of the men were employed in cultivating farms. At that time the soil was fresh and rich, and it rewarded labor with bountiful harvests. Nearly all of the field work was done with the hoe, a clumsy piece of iron, shaped by the country blacksmith and fastened to a rough wooden handle.

In the South, the land was generally cultivated by negro slaves. In Virginia, tobacco paid better than anything else, and every planter cultivated large fields of it. Georgia and the Carolinas shipped large quantities of rice, indigo, tar, and pitch.

In New England, the farms were small, and the work was done by the farmer, his sons, and his hired men. There the stony soil, covered with snow five months in the year, pro-

duced only enough wheat, corn, and potatoes for its own people. Many of the men left the farms to fish, build ships, and become merchants and seamen. Some of them made clocks, pails, brooms, and other articles, which they peddled through the country.

On the frontier, hunters and trappers collected furs and skins to be sold at the ports for foreign trade.

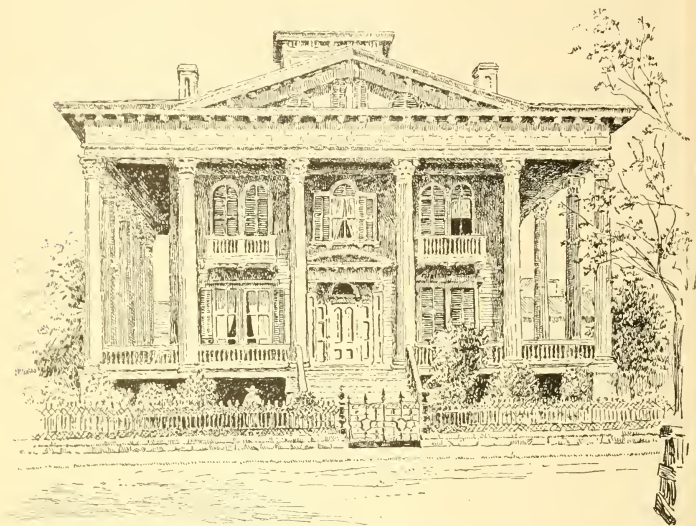
**304. Social Life.** — The grades of society in New England depended mainly upon education and wealth. The governors and ministers, who were men of learning, were greatly respected by the people. Many of the Puritans had been people of wealth and influence in England, and they claimed here the social advantages which they had enjoyed there. Second to them were merchants and mechanics; servants and negro slaves held the lowest rank.

The large landholders of New York lived like princes, and controlled the hundreds of tenants on their immense estates. Some of their houses were built in imitation of those in Holland, and were furnished and kept in elegant style. In the other middle colonies property was more evenly divided, but there were some large estates.

In the Southern colonies the planter was the man of influence, and mechanics and traders were not admitted to an equality with his family. He owned hundreds of acres of land — woodlands and cleared fields. His plantation was cultivated by negro slaves, while he lived a life of ease and pleasure. Horse racing and hunting were his favorite sports. Every gentleman kept his hounds and horses, his fishing rod and gun.

The Southern planter's house was large, built of imported brick, and ornamented with wide colonnades. Its broad stairways and mantels were of carved mahogany, and its walls were embellished with panels and wainscoting of the same expensive material. The Southern gentleman was noted for his generous hospitality and his pride of blood. Half a score of negro servants waited upon the family. They lived in cabins sepa-

rate from the planter's house. The head nurse of the children always wore a gay bandanna handkerchief tied in a fantastic manner around her head. She was called the "black mammy,"



SOUTHERN COLONIAL MANSION

and was tenderly loved and respected by her young charges. There were also many smaller planters, who worked only a few slaves.

**305. Growth of Towns.**—In the Northern colonies, the wilderness had fallen before the axman, and here and there villages dotted the former hunting grounds of the red men. The log cabins of the early settlers were being replaced by better buildings of wood or brick. But many of the manufacturing towns that now flourish along the banks of the Northern streams, then had not even a beginning.

In the South, the clearings were still wide apart; the few towns lay along the seaboard, and had been built up by the shipping interests.

**306. Traveling.** — Roads were few, and none of them good. Only the narrow streams had been bridged; the rivers had to be forded or crossed in ferryboats. Heavy coaches with high rounding springs were used by a few of the wealthy families. The seats were reached by means of steps, which, when not in use, could be folded and fastened inside the carriage door. The commonest manner of traveling inland was on horseback. A lady, when she traveled on horseback, usually sat upon a pillion behind her husband or brother.

A few mail lines had been established, the mails being carried in cumbersome passenger coaches. One of these mail coaches, which made the journey from New York to Philadelphia in two days, was called a "flying machine." On the coast, and along the rivers, schooners were used in going from town to town.

Inland in the South, the people had found a curious way of carrying their produce to the towns. The tobacco was packed in a strong hogshead; shafts were then fastened to the tightly fitted heads, and the horse harnessed to them. In this way the hogshead was rolled to market, often many miles distant, where the planter traded his tobacco for the articles he needed, and then returned home on his horse.

**307. Within the Homes.** — High-post bedsteads held high feather beds,

with long bolsters and small pillows. The sheets were of linen or cotton, woven at home, and the gay patchwork quilts were the pride of the housekeeper of that day. Tables with large leaves, and heavy sideboards of solid mahogany, were found in the houses of the rich. Young ladies learned to

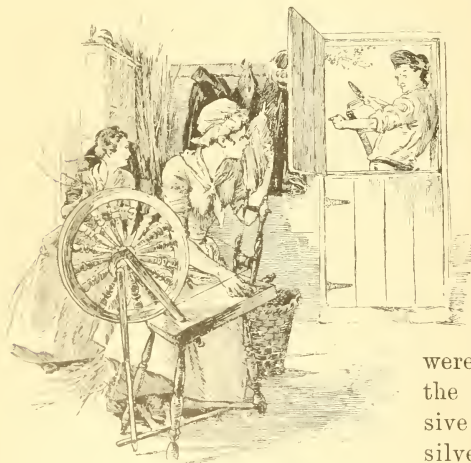


SINGING TO THE ACCOMPANIMENT OF HARPSICHORD AND FLUTE

play upon the spinet and the harpsichord — popular musical instruments in those days.

Wherever fires were built, andirons were used to support the sticks of wood, and a long-handled shovel and tongs were kept for handling the fire. Stoves were just coming into use. The old tinder box was still a necessity. It was a small wooden box, divided into two parts. In one side were kept the flint and steel and brimstone matches; in the other were the half-burned linen rags called "tinder." The matches were slender pieces of wood, the ends of which had been dipped into melted sulphur. Sparks were struck from the steel and flint, or from the flint of a gun, upon the tinder, which soon began to smoke and burn. The brimstone match was then lighted from the tinder.

In most houses, the coals from the wood fire were covered with ashes at night, to keep it alive until the next morning.



A FLAX SPINNING WHEEL

It was not uncommon to send half a mile to a neighbor for a "chunk of fire," if the fire died out during the night.

For lighting, tallow candles were the main dependence. The snuffers and snuffer tray were always placed near the candlestick; expensive candle sets of solid silver were sometimes

found in the wealthier homes.

Large, costly, branching candelabra, with wax candles, often ornamented drawing-rooms, but were used only on special occasions. Oil lamps were a great im-



provement on the candles, but they needed much care to keep them trimmed and filled with whale oil. For lighting streets they remained in use many years. Gas did not come into use until the next century, and it was long opposed as dangerous.

**308. Dress.** — In the cities, the style of dress had changed very much from that of the early colonial days. The gentleman wore a three-cornered cocked hat. His hair, always in



A CHRISTMAS PARTY IN THE SOUTH

a cue, was powdered profusely when he was in full dress. A light-colored coat trimmed with silver buttons, a figured waistcoat, long striped stockings, knee breeches, and pointed shoes with heavy buckles, made up his gay costume. He carried a gold-headed cane and a gold snuffbox. The ladies who received him in their drawing-rooms looked wonderfully tall with their high heels and lofty headdresses. Over their



large hoops they wore dresses of rich brocade and heavy satin petticoats. At receptions and parties, the ladies and gentlemen danced the minuet to the music of a violin. In the South, the reel also was a favorite dance.

The common people wore linsey and cotton homespun, both of which were made by the women of the family. The wool and cotton were first carded, then spun into thread on the spinning wheel, and finally woven into cloth in the heavy wooden looms, which were still in general use throughout the colonies.

**309. Education.** — The church and the schoolhouse had their place in almost every village. In some of the wealthier settlements, substantial buildings had been erected for them. Among the plantations there were naturally few.

In the district schools of New England, the winter term of three months was taught by a man, and the summer term of the same length by a woman. The teacher boarded with the parents of the scholars, staying a time in proportion to the number of children sent from the family. The boys and girls were taught to read, write, and spell the words in "Dilworth's Speller"; they were content with as much knowledge of arithmetic as would fit them to keep accounts, make change, and calculate interest. The fear of the master kept the school in working order eight hours every day.

The royal governors had discouraged education in the colonies, because they could rule ignorant citizens more tyrannically. Where settlements were far apart, they succeeded in diverting the attention of the common people from the importance of education.

The "old field school" had sprung up amidst the forests of the Southern colonies. Its master taught "the three R's — Reading, 'Riting, and 'Rithmetic" — in a low log building, where the light came in through a square opening in the wall and a long aperture left between the logs. Under the last, a broad plank, supported by heavy wooden pegs, served for a desk, to be used in turn by those who were learning to handle

the quill pen. The seats were benches without backs, and upon these the young learners sat from early morning till the slanting rays of the evening sun reminded the teacher that his day's work was done. A stout birch rod, always in sight, enforced the master's commands. The village common schools were somewhat in advance of these, but the text-books and methods of teaching were very different from those of our own time.

Wealthy planters employed tutors to teach their children, and sent their sons to England to be educated.

Printing presses had become more numerous, and books were consequently cheaper. These, however, were mainly collections of sermons, or tracts upon political questions. "The Lives of the Martyrs," Young's "Night Thoughts," Rollin's "Ancient History," and "Pilgrim's Progress," also were favorites.

**310. Medicine.** — The doctor used very strange methods in those days. Every spring he thought it necessary to bleed each member of every family in his charge. In treating almost every disease he used his lancet. He carried his medicines in his leather saddlebags, and traveled from house to house on horseback. Calomel was given freely, and a patient tossing upon the bed of fever was not allowed a drop of water. Children were dosed with a mixture of sulphur and molasses. Many valuable discoveries, and many remedies that are now in constant use, were then unknown. Vaccination, as a protection against smallpox, was not known, and the disease was a frequent and fatal visitant.

**311. Slavery.** — The cultivation of tobacco, rice, and cotton in the Southern States made slave labor very profitable. But as the Northern States engaged more and more in manufactures, commerce, and trade, the slaves became unprofitable and were gradually removed southward. The white man could not work in the rice swamps, or in the cotton fields under the burning summer sun; the negro, accustomed to sun and swamp in his African home, could work in them without injury.

**312. The Forts on the Frontier.** — The treaty had granted to the United States the territory north of the Ohio River, and England demanded in return that all private debts due to British creditors should be paid. Numbers of the royalists had been banished, and others had fled from the country; their property had been confiscated, and Great Britain asked that they be paid for their losses, and be allowed to return in peace to their homes. The feeling against the Tories was so intense that any proposition to favor them was spurned with contempt,



A NEGRO FAMILY

and Congress was unable to carry out these terms of the treaty. This gave England an excuse for refusing to withdraw her troops from the forts in the northwestern country. The presence of these troops encouraged the Indians to make inroads upon the scattered white settlements beyond the Alleghanies, and gave to English merchants the rich trade in furs which rightfully belonged to the Americans. Congress was not strong enough to resist these encroachments.

**313. The Northwest Territory.** — Four of the states claimed the vast territory lying north of the Ohio River. The charters

of Massachusetts and Connecticut had granted them land extending far into the west, and they claimed all beyond the limits of New York. New York, too, asserted her ownership of the territory. Virginia insisted that every foot of ground from what is now the northern boundary of Tennessee as far as Lake Superior was hers, by right of the oldest charter grant. The soldiers under George Rogers Clark had conquered the country, and it was under the civil and military control of Virginia. Maryland refused to accept the Articles of Confederation until these states would agree that this territory should become the property of all the states. It had been ceded to England by France at the close of the French and Indian War, and Maryland argued that all the colonies had fought to win it from the French, and that it should be owned by all in common, to be used in paying the debts of the government. She also felt that the possession of so much territory by a few of the states would give them an unfair share of wealth and influence.

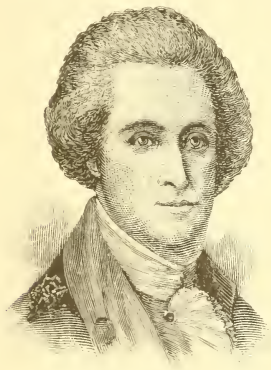
After this matter had been freely discussed in Congress and in the state legislatures, New York surrendered her claim; Virginia then came nobly forward and generously donated to the Confederation her vast domain; Massachusetts then abandoned her claim; and Connecticut yielded last of all. Bounties of this western land were afterwards given to many of the soldiers of the Revolution.

**314. Ordinance of 1787.** — Under an act known as the Ordinance of 1787, Congress organized this region as the Northwest Territory, with a territorial government to be managed by officers appointed for the purpose. The territory was to be divided into five states, each of which might be admitted to the Confederation when its population should reach sixty thousand. They entered later as Ohio, Indiana, Illinois, Michigan, and Wisconsin.

One of the laws governing this territory required that the property of a citizen who died without a will should be divided equally among all of his children. Religious free-

dom and personal rights were secured to all, and provisions were made for the establishment and support of schools. Slavery was prohibited from the territory, but slaves that had fled beyond the Ohio were to be returned to their owners. This law made the Ohio the dividing line between the free and the slaveholding states in the West. The exclusion of slavery at this time had a strong influence upon the future sentiment and legislation of the country. It also furnished a model for the government of territories acquired later.

**315. Territory of the Southwest.** — Virginia retained her claim upon the County of Kentucky. What is now Tennessee belonged to North Carolina, and, excepting a narrow strip owned



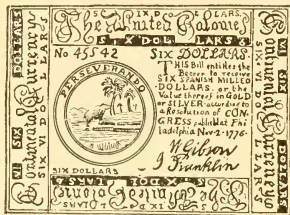
JOHN SEVIER

by South Carolina, all the country south of that as far as Florida was the property of Georgia. These states had been requested to cede their western lands to the United States, but they had not consented. Most of this territory was a wilderness, roamed over by savage tribes. A few emigrants from Virginia and North Carolina had crossed the mountains and made settlements, which were rapidly growing. In 1785 those from North Carolina seceded,

adopted a constitution, elected a legislature, and formed an independent state, to which they gave the name of Franklin. They elected as governor John Sevier, one of the leaders in the battle of Kings Mountain. They then sent a delegate to Congress, and asked for admission into the Confederation. North Carolina objected to this proceeding. When North Carolina ceded her western claims, Franklin became a portion of the Territory of Tennessee. South Carolina's western cession was made in 1787; Georgia did not give up her claims until 1802.



**316. Continental Money.** — During the French war some of the colonies had issued paper money, and Congress early resorted to the same plan to meet the expenses of the Revolution.<sup>1</sup> These bills were promises by Congress to pay in gold or silver after a certain time, the amount named on them, and they would have been utterly valueless had the Americans not been successful. Yet, before the Declaration of Independence, Congress had pledged itself to pay twenty million dollars. After the capture of New York by the British, this money began to decrease in value, and as new issues of it continued to be made, still further lessening the power of Congress to redeem its promises, the people lost confidence, and many refused to accept the money. Laws were then enacted which made such persons liable to be treated as enemies of their country.



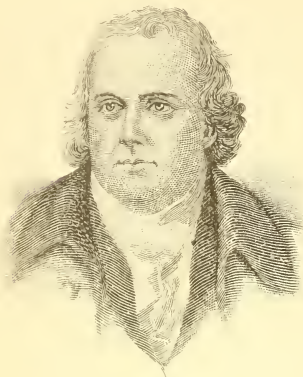
CONTINENTAL CURRENCY

As the bills were easily counterfeited, the large amount of spurious money which crept into circulation still further decreased its value and the confidence of the people. The need of a currency, however, kept it in circulation after two hundred dollars of it were worth only one in coin. But by the fall of 1780, it became so worthless that it disappeared from circulation. The states also had issued paper money, which lost its value in the same way.

**317. Robert Morris.** — After the French alliance, loans were obtained from France, Holland, and Spain, which greatly relieved the government. In 1781, Congress appointed Robert Morris, a wealthy merchant of Philadelphia, superintendent of finance. He accepted the office on condition that the issue of paper money be discontinued. The success of the American

<sup>1</sup> Paul Revere, of the famous midnight ride, was one of the engravers of these bills. The paper of which they were made was so thick that the British called it the "pasteboard money of the rebels."

cause had been greatly aided by his financial genius. On several occasions he had given timely aid, when the army would



ROBERT MORRIS

have been seriously weakened but for his assistance ; and at one very trying time, he raised fifty thousand dollars and sent it to Washington. He had not hesitated to give his own money or to call upon his friends to give. At his suggestion, the Bank of North America, through which loans might be obtained, was chartered by Congress.

**318. The Currency.**—After the war, there was so little money that men bartered the

produce of their farms for the manufactured goods that were brought into the country. The Southern States paid tobacco, indigo, and rice ; those farther north gave wheat and furs, while New England depended upon its fisheries and its ship-building.

There was a little gold and silver money in circulation, consisting of coins from all other nations. Most of the gold coins in use were Spanish doubloons, English and French guineas and ducats ; the silver coins were the dollar, ninepence, fourpence, bits, picayunes, and “fips.” English pence and half-pence were of copper. Coins were of different values in different states, and endless trouble in trade was the result. In New England the English shilling passed for one sixth of a dollar ; in New York it was counted at one eighth, and in North Carolina at one tenth. When the Spanish silver dollar had been made the unit of measure in issuing the Continental bills, people had formed the habit of estimating the value of coins by the same standard ; and when Congress began to coin money, the dollar was still retained as the unit of value. It contained

375 $\frac{64}{100}$  grains of silver. The convenient decimal currency which we still use was suggested by Thomas Jefferson and Gouverneur Morris, and was adopted in 1785.<sup>1</sup>

**319. After the War.**—Peace did not bring the quiet or the prosperity which the people had hoped. Foreign trade had to be regulated by duties, but each state fixed its own rate, and commerce rapidly declined because of the lack of uniformity and of some central power to adjust it. The treaty of peace had reserved to Americans a right to the Newfoundland fisheries; but there was no longer a foreign market for the fish, for Parliament had passed a law forbidding all trade between her colonies and the United States, except that carried on in British ships manned by British sailors. American merchants were thus deprived of all the advantages of trade with the British West Indies, which had been the most profitable of markets. There were also exciting discussions within the country. The states quarreled about their boundaries. Connecticut and Pennsylvania were almost in arms about the ownership of the Wyoming valley; and both New Hampshire and New York claimed Vermont. The jealousy and ill feeling grew worse and worse, until it seemed as if the Confederation must be broken into several sections, that would continually war with one another.

**320. Shays's Rebellion.**—The running expenses of the government had to be paid, and the states levied taxes; taxes were burdensome, because many of the people were too poor to pay them. When attempts were made to collect the taxes, the people sometimes even resisted the courts. There were riots in several states. In western Massachusetts a crowd of angry farmers who had refused to pay their taxes went to Springfield, surrounded the courthouse while the court was in session, and threatened to destroy the state government

<sup>1</sup> Provision was made at the same time for the coining of two gold coins,—the eagle, ten dollars in value, and the half eagle, five dollars in value. This act was not put into operation until 1792, when a new act was passed, establishing a mint and providing for coinage at a slightly different standard.

unless it would issue paper money and relieve their distress. Daniel Shays, a Revolutionary soldier, was the leader; he was followed by a large force of men whom he had drilled. The militia of the state was called out to suppress the mob. Shays was captured and his force scattered. Congress was incapable of meeting such trouble, and the growing discontent throughout the country convinced men everywhere of the necessity for some remedy. Congress proposed that the Articles of Confederation be so far amended as to give Congress the right to fix a duty on imports; but as some of the states refused to agree to this, nothing could be done.

**321. The Constitutional Convention.**—Trade was becoming more and more disturbed; the people began to realize the advantage that would result from regulating it in such a way that one state should not suffer from the duties imposed by another. After much discussion and planning, each state was requested to send delegates to a convention, to be held for the purpose of proposing such changes in the government as would make it suitable for the needs of the country. This convention met in Philadelphia, May 25, 1787, and Washington was chosen its president. All the states except Rhode Island were represented. It was composed of fifty-five of the ablest and wisest men of the country, and was the most important meeting ever held in America, except the Congress that passed the Declaration of Independence. Each of the members had studied the weak points in the Confederation, and came ready to suggest remedies. The sessions were held in secret and continued four months. The delegates had been called together simply to revise the Articles of Confederation, but they were soon convinced that nothing short of a new constitution would end the trouble. Many of them were opposed to a strong central government, and feared that such a change might end in blotting out the state boundaries and consolidating the states into one national government. There were many long discussions, and once—when it seemed as if a decision could never be reached—Dr.

May 25,  
1787

Franklin proposed that the sessions be opened with prayer for divine help and guidance. He said, "The longer I live, the more convincing proofs I see that God governs the affairs of men."

**322. Compromises.** — Much had to be yielded by both sides before agreements could be made. One of the members compared their work to that of a joiner fitting two boards — "He pares off a bit from each." The small states objected to a proposition to elect representatives according to the population, because that would give them fewer representatives and less power in Congress, and they insisted that all the states, regardless of size, should remain equal in power. It was at last arranged to divide Congress into two houses; in one all of the states were to be equally represented, and in the other there was to be one representative for every thirty thousand inhabitants.

The delegates from the Southern States insisted that slaves should be counted as population; but the Northern delegates wished to count them as property, claiming that, since the South contained a great many negroes, to count them all would give the people of that section too many representatives in Congress. After an excited debate, it was decided that three fifths of the slaves should be counted, and that direct taxes should be paid in the same proportion.

As many negroes were needed in cultivating rice, South Carolina and Georgia opposed the abolition of the slave trade. The states of New England, which were engaged in trading, desired that Congress should regulate commerce; but the people of the South, and especially of Virginia, feared that the ship-owners would ruin them by charging high rates of freight for carrying their tobacco, indigo, and rice to market. In order to keep all these states in the Union, another compromise was made — this time between New England and South Carolina and Georgia. Virginia would not approve its terms, because of her opposition to the importation of slaves. Finally, it was agreed that the slave trade should continue twenty years, and



that Congress should pass navigation laws, but should never tax exports. This protected the products of the South, gave free trade between the states, and surrendered the control of commerce to Congress.

**323. The Constitution adopted.** — On September 17, 1787, the Constitution was signed. Copies of it were printed and sent to all the states. Before it could take the place of the old Articles, it was necessary that it should be approved by nine of the states. Six states adopted it immediately, but in some of the others there was a bitter struggle. New York and Virginia ratified it after long discussion, accompanying their ratification with the declaration that the powers that they had delegated might be resumed by them whenever these should be perverted to their injury and oppression.<sup>1</sup> Eleven states had signified their approval by the last of July, 1788, and Congress appointed a day for the election of a President, a Vice President, and congressmen. The date fixed for the beginning of the new government was March 4, 1789.<sup>2</sup>

In accordance with the terms of the Constitution, the government was divided into three branches: the legislative, the executive, and the judicial.

**324. Legislative Department.** — Congress, the lawmaking power, is divided into two houses, the Senate and the House of Representatives. Each state sends two senators, who are chosen by the state legislatures, and who serve six years. Their terms have been so arranged that one third of the members go out every second year. The representation in the House is according to population. There the members serve two years; their number has increased somewhat with our population, though the basis of representation has been raised from 30,000 to 173,901.

<sup>1</sup> This is the wording of the Virginia declaration. That of New York was similar.

<sup>2</sup> It was nearly nine months after this, November 21, 1789, when North Carolina ratified the Constitution; Rhode Island waited fifteen months, and joined the other states May 29, 1790.

Before a bill can become a law, it must pass both houses of Congress, and be signed by the President within ten days after he receives it. If he disapproves it, he returns it to Congress with a statement of his objections, called a veto. If Congress passes it again by a two thirds vote, it becomes a law without the President's signature. If the President does not return a bill within ten days, it also becomes a law. Congress has the power to provide for the common defense, promote the general welfare, levy taxes, regulate commerce, borrow money, and establish post offices.

**325. Electoral College.** — The Constitution requires that the President and Vice President shall be elected by electors, men chosen for the purpose by the people. The number of electors allowed to each state is the same as the total number of its senators and representatives in Congress. The electors meet in their own states and vote by ballot; the record of their votes is sealed and sent to the president of the Senate, who, "in the presence of the Senate and the House of Representatives, opens all the certificates," and the votes are counted.

**326. The Executive.** — The duty of the President is to see that all the laws of the government are obeyed. He is commander in chief of the army and navy. With the approval of the Senate, he makes treaties, appoints the judges of the Supreme Court and other important officers of the government, and sends ministers and consuls to foreign countries. He writes annually to Congress a message in which he reports the condition of the various interests of the country, and suggests measures for improvement and for the general good.

The Vice President presides over the Senate, but never votes except in the case of a tie. If the President's office is made vacant by death or other cause, he becomes President.

**327. The Judiciary.** — The federal courts constitute the judicial branch of the government; they consist of one Supreme Court, together with the circuit courts of appeal and the circuit and district courts. Their power extends to all cases of dispute between different states or the citizens of different

states, or with foreign states or subjects; and also to all violations of the laws of the United States.

Most of the cases tried by the Supreme Court are appealed from the inferior courts. It is then the duty of the judges to interpret the law with which it is connected, and, if necessary, to explain the meaning of the Constitution and show whether the law is constitutional or not. If the law is found to conflict with the Constitution, the Supreme Court declares it null and void; its decisions are final. This court holds its sessions in the city of Washington, but its authority reaches over the whole country. It consists of a Chief Justice and eight associate judges, all of whom are appointed to hold office for life, or "during good behavior."

There is also a court of claims which hears claims against the United States government, and also a special supreme court and a court of appeals for the District of Columbia.

**328. Rights of the States.** — The Constitution leaves to the states their own separate rights, and specifies definitely the powers of Congress. Amendments can be made as the conditions of the country demand, but only with the consent of three fourths of the states. The most important improvements upon the Articles of Confederation are: the formation of a federal government strong enough to enforce its own laws; the division of Congress into two houses; the power of the President to veto bills; and the organization of a Supreme Court as a restraint upon unconstitutional legislation.

#### QUESTIONS FOR STUDY

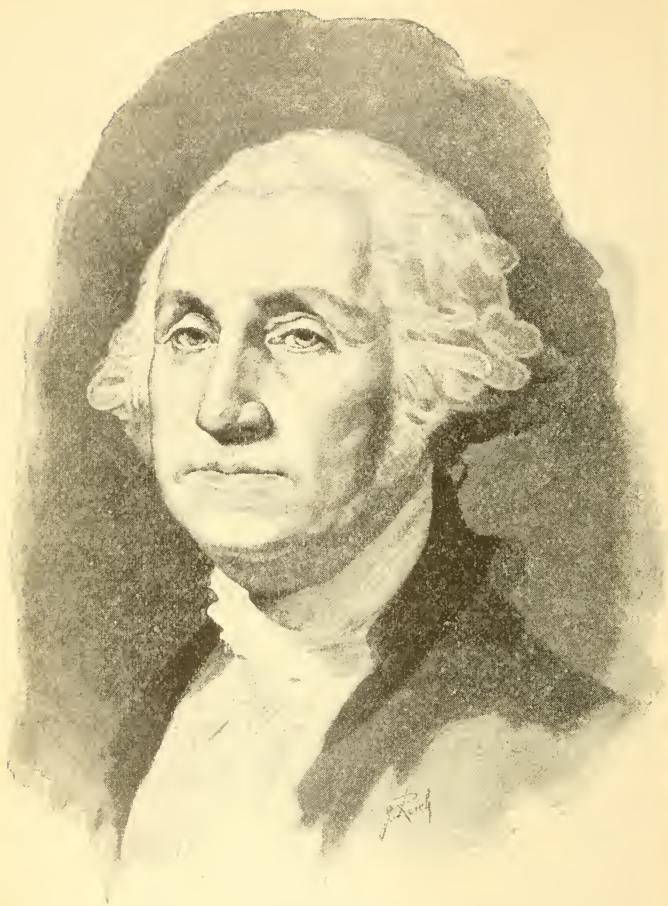
Why did the Continental money decrease in value? Why does not our paper money depreciate in value? Is a promise to pay a dollar worth as much as a dollar? Explain. Why did the Northern States give up holding slaves? Why was negro labor necessary in the South? Whose claim to the Northwest Territory do you think was valid? What do you think of the arguments of Maryland in regard to this territory? Was it fair that New Jersey should have as many votes in Congress as Virginia? Give your reasons.

When people differ as to the meaning of a law upon which important interests depend, who decide upon its true meaning? What do you think of the institution of the Supreme Court? What laws govern the post offices? Mention some other matters that are controlled by the same laws. Are foreigners living in this country citizens of the United States? Can a person be a citizen of two countries at the same time?

After the New England Confederation, and prior to the adoption of the Federal Constitution, what efforts had been made to form a Union? Trace the history of written constitutions, from the compact on the *Mayflower* to that of the Federal Constitution.

### TOPICS FOR REVIEW

1. What were the occupations of the people of the New England, the Middle, and the Southern States, at the close of the Revolution?
2. What conditions tended to unite the people of this country, and what other conditions tended to keep them apart?
3. What troubles beset the government with the return of peace?
4. What states claimed the Northwest Territory? Upon what did they base their claims?
5. Give an outline of the "Ordinance of 1787."
6. What changes were needed to improve the business of the country?
7. Tell the story of the difficulties about money, and when did our currency come into use.
8. What led to the Constitutional Convention, and why was it necessary to have a new Constitution?
9. Tell the history of the difficulties which arose in the Convention, and the compromises which settled these difficulties.
10. How was the question of equal representation in Congress settled?
11. What did the South and the North each yield in the compromises, and what did each gain?
12. Mention some of the differences between the government under the Confederation and under the Constitution.
13. Into what departments is the United States government divided? Outline the duties of each.



GEORGE WASHINGTON



## IV—THE UNITED STATES

### CHAPTER I

#### ORGANIZATION AND DEVELOPMENT

##### WASHINGTON'S ADMINISTRATION — 1789-97

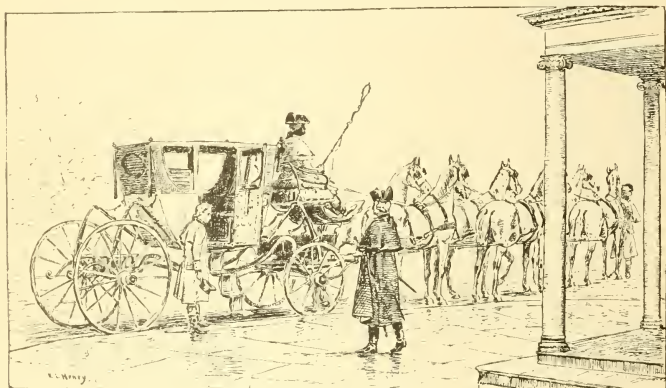
**329. Inauguration.** — In that day, traveling was so difficult that April 6th came before a sufficient number of Congressmen had arrived at New York, the first capital, to form a quorum in both houses. It was found that every elector had voted for Washington, and that John Adams of Massachusetts had received the next highest number of votes. In accordance with the law then in force, Washington and Adams were declared respectively President and Vice President.<sup>1</sup>

A messenger was immediately sent to Mount Vernon to inform Washington of his election. The President traveled from Mount Vernon to New York in a coach, and the journey was a succession of feasts and entertainments. Cannons were fired, and the streets along which he rode were decorated with arches, flags, and flowers. On April 30, 1789, April 30, he took an oath to perform all the duties of his office. 1789 This ceremony is called "inauguration," because it is the first act of every new President.

**330. The Cabinet.** — The work of the executive is divided into a number of departments, and the President, with the consent of the Senate, appoints a head, or Secretary, to conduct the affairs of each department. These secretaries form the President's Cabinet, and they advise with him on important questions.

<sup>1</sup> See Art. II, Sec. 2, of the Constitution.

There are now eight Cabinet officers: Secretary of State, Secretary of the Treasury, Secretary of War, Attorney-General, Postmaster-General, Secretary of the Navy, Secretary of the Interior, and Secretary of Agriculture. But in Washington's time there were only four departments. He chose for his Cabinet officers some of the ablest men of the country. Thomas Jefferson, as Secretary of State, took charge of foreign affairs; Alexander Hamilton, of New York, was made Secretary of the Treasury; General Henry Knox, a warm personal friend of the President, and a brave leader in the



WASHINGTON'S COACH OF STATE

Revolution, became Secretary of War; and Edmund Randolph, of Virginia, was appointed Attorney-General. These men differed widely in their opinions on questions of government, and were leaders of opposing political parties. Since that time each President has chosen the members of his Cabinet from the party which elected him.

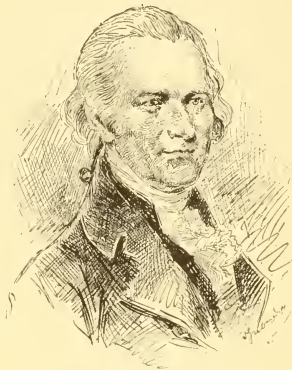
**331. The Tariff.** — Money was needed for the expenses of the government, and the payment of the public debt incurred during the war. Therefore laws were passed fixing a tariff (schedule of taxes on imported goods) and an excise (internal

tax) on all distilled liquors. By this means, Congress was soon supplied with a large income. The tariff met with strong opposition on the ground that it decreased imports and injured trade; and a controversy was begun which has continued, at intervals, to the present time.

**332. Hamilton's Financial Plan.**—Knowing that a man's credit ceases when he fails to pay his debts, Hamilton felt the importance of satisfying the creditors of the United States, and he proposed a plan for paying its whole war debt of about \$80,000,000. There were three divisions of this debt: (1) a foreign debt consisting of money borrowed by Congress from Holland, Spain, and France; (2) a domestic debt due from Congress to creditors in America; (3) state debts incurred by the separate states. As these latter had been contracted for the common cause, Hamilton suggested that the United States should pay them. Hamilton's plan was to fund, or change, the whole debt into interest-bearing bonds, and to set aside annually a sum for the payment of the principal.

Everybody was willing that the foreign creditors should be paid in this way. But the assumption of the state debts met with bitter opposition. Many merchants and wealthy men of the North who had loaned money to the states, favored the secretary's scheme; but the planters in the South opposed it, because they feared that the government would be managed by its creditors.

This matter was finally adjusted in a peculiar way. Another dispute arose about the location of the capital. The North wanted it, and the South was equally anxious to have it. Finally, at a dinner given by Jefferson, some Northern con-



ALEXANDER HAMILTON

gressmen promised their votes for placing the capital in the South, on the condition that some Southern votes should be given for assumption. This made a small majority for each bill, and both were passed. It was agreed that Congress should meet in Philadelphia until 1800, and then remove to the city of Washington, on the banks of the Potomac.

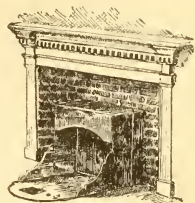
Hamilton also urged the organization of a national bank, as an agent for securing loans and managing the finances. The decimal system of currency previously proposed by Jefferson was brought into use by the establishment of the mint.

**333. Political Parties.**—During the controversy over the Constitution, those who were in favor of adopting it were called Federalists; those who opposed it, Anti-federalists. The Federalists believed that a strong central government was needed to bring harmony and prosperity. After the adoption of the Constitution, the Anti-federalists called themselves Republicans, or friends of popular government. Later they became known as Democratic-republicans, or Democrats. They feared that Congress might acquire too much power, and even accused the Federalists of trying to change the government into a monarchy. The Federalists believed that a state, after once ratifying the Constitution, was in the federal bond forever. The Republicans considered the Union a compact of sovereign states which had entered it of their own accord, and that each state continued to be independent as to all powers not expressly delegated to the federal government. They believed that Congress should be bound strictly by the Constitution, and considered the assumption of the state debts unconstitutional. They were called “strict constructionists,” and the Federalists “loose constructionists,” because the latter wished to give a very broad meaning to the requirements of the Constitution.<sup>1</sup> Alexander Hamilton was the leader of the Federalists, who were in the majority in the North; Thomas Jefferson was at the head of the Republicans, who were strong in the South.

<sup>1</sup> Especially Art. I, Sec. 8, Cl. 18 of the Constitution.

**334. Coal and Iron.** — Although anthracite coal had been known some time, and had been mined in Virginia, near Pittsburgh, and in Rhode Island, it had not come into general use. In

1791 a hunter in the mountains of Pennsylvania stumbled against a piece of black stone unlike any he had seen before; he sent it to Philadelphia, where it was examined and pronounced to be coal. Search disclosed an immense coal bed and rich iron



FRANKLIN'S STOVE

deposits. These discoveries materially changed the industries of Pennsylvania, and added largely to the wealth and prosperity of the people. The use of coal as fuel soon made necessary the use of grates and stoves instead of the old fireplace. Dr. Franklin's stove, originally made for wood, was for a long time the only kind known.

**335. The Cotton Gin.** — Eli Whitney, a native of Massachusetts and a graduate of Yale, was employed as a tutor in the home of the widow of Nathanael Greene, near Savannah. He had considerable mechanical skill, and Mrs. Greene suggested to him the con-



WHITNEY AT WORK



struction of a machine by which cotton seed might be separated more easily and rapidly from the lint. He studied and experimented, and finally produced the cotton gin (engine). This gin could clean as much cotton in a few minutes as had formerly kept dozens of hands busy an entire week. Cotton had been planted only in small patches, and its main use was for the clothing of the planter's family. The farmers used to invite their neighbors to what they called a "cotton picking." The girls came in the afternoon, the young men at night. Each man's task was to pick his shoe full of seed. After the work was done, the rest of the evening was given to dancing and frolic by the young people. But this had been slow work. Whitney's invention caused a marvelous change in the industries of the South; the production of cotton enormously increased, and it soon became the great staple of Southern export.

**336. Whisky Insurrection.** — Some of the Republicans opposed the tax upon distilled liquors, because they thought it like an English tax, and they hated English customs. The tax was not everywhere promptly paid, and in western Pennsylvania, where such large quantities of whisky were distilled that it was used as money, meetings were held and threats made against the revenue collectors. Finally a force of fifteen thousand men was sent to the disorderly districts. The insurrection came to an end without bloodshed.

**337. French Revolution.** — After the close of the war in America, France passed through the terrors of a revolution, in which her king was dethroned and beheaded, and many of her citizens were slaughtered. Her government was changed from a monarchy to a republic, and the executive branch of the government was placed under the control of a Directory, consisting of five members. In 1793, when France became involved in a war with England, the Federalists sided with England; but the Republicans remembered Lafayette and De Grasse, and sympathized with



the French revolutionists. Washington realized that another war with England, at that time, would be ruinous to the country, and he issued a proclamation, declaring that the United States would be neutral—friendly with both nations, but taking no part in the war. Many disapproved the President's action, and regretted that no steps were to be taken to aid either nation. Genet (zhēh-nā'), the minister from France, paid no regard to this proclamation. He began to fit out privateers in American ports and persuade Americans to join the French army. Washington requested the French government to recall him. Genet's high-handed course finally aroused the dislike of those who at first had been ready to support him.

**338. Foreign Treaties.**—After England had declared war with France, English cruisers were ordered to seize all neutral vessels trading with or carrying food to the French West Indies, and to search all American ships for British seamen. Hundreds of American vessels and thousands of dollars' worth of American goods were captured. This enraged the people of the United States, and war seemed to be the only remedy. Chief Justice Jay was sent to England to negotiate a treaty. He succeeded in obtaining for the United States the possession of the forts on the frontier at Detroit, Niagara, and other places, guaranteeing in return the payment of debts still due English citizens; but England did not surrender the right she claimed to search American vessels, nor were satisfactory regulations made for trading with the West Indies. There was great excitement about the terms Jay had made. After long debate, the Senate ratified the treaty, the President signed it, and war was postponed.



CHIEF JUSTICE JAY

1794

A treaty was made with Spain, which established boundaries between the United States and the two Spanish provinces—Florida and Louisiana. It also se-

1795

cured to us the right to navigate the Mississippi, and to use New Orleans as a port.

**339. The Indians subdued.** — British traders had persuaded the Indians in the Northwest that the United States would

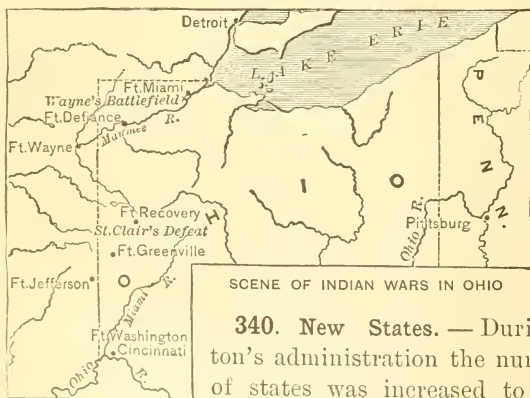
1790-5 soon be ruled again by Great

Britain, and had encouraged them to attack the western settlements. Washington sent General Harmer with an armed force against them; he was defeated, and the next year General St. Clair was sent out with new troops. St. Clair in turn was surprised by the savages, and a large part of his army was killed. Then General Anthony Wayne, distinguished for his brave fighting in the Revolution, took command of the forces in the Northwest, defeated the Indians, and compelled them to make



GENERAL ST. CLAIR

peace. By their treaty in 1795, they gave up large tracts of land beyond the Ohio; and a great number of emigrants moved to that region.



SCENE OF INDIAN WARS IN OHIO

**340. New States.** — During Washington's administration the number of states was increased to sixteen, by the admission of Vermont (1791),

1791-6

Kentucky (1792), and Tennessee (1796).

**341. Presidential Election.** — Washington and Adams had been elected for a second term, which began March 4, 1793. At the close of this term, the country was in a prosperous

condition; the exports had increased to more than \$56,000,000, and many people desired Washington to continue in office for a third term. He, however, preferred to return to his quiet home at Mount Vernon.

The election of 1796 was the first in which the leaders of different political parties were candidates for the office of President, John Adams representing the Federalists, and Thomas Jefferson the Republicans. John Adams received the largest number of electoral votes, and was declared President; Thomas Jefferson received the next largest number, and was declared Vice President. Thus the President and Vice President were of different political parties, which was evidently not best for the interests of the country.

1796

#### JOHN ADAMS'S<sup>1</sup> ADMINISTRATION — 1797-1801

**342. Political Excitement.** — The capital had been removed from New York to Philadelphia, and there the inauguration of Mr. Adams took place. He found the country in a state of intense political excitement over foreign relations. The Republicans wished to annul Jay's treaty with Great Britain, and form an alliance with France. The Federalists favored the treaty and the policy of neutrality, and they were willing, if necessary, to declare war with France.



JOHN ADAMS

**343. Trouble with France.** — The French Directory had declared Jay's treaty a violation of the treaty made by the United States with France, and ordered the United States

<sup>1</sup> John Adams was born October 30, 1735, at Braintree, Massachusetts, and died July 4, 1826. After his graduation from Harvard College, he studied law and was admitted to the bar. He was a prominent member of the Continental Congress, and exerted all his influence in favor of the Declaration of Independ-

minister to leave the country. French cruisers began to capture American merchant vessels. Wishing to avoid war if

1797 peace could be secured on honorable terms, the President called a special session of Congress and sent commissioners to Paris to meet agents of the French government. The Directory would not receive them; but they were secretly informed that the payment of a large sum of money to its members, and the promise of a loan to France, would end the trouble. To this demand, Charles C. Pinckney, one of the American envoys, replied: "Millions for defense, but not one cent for tribute." The translations of the secret letters to the commissioners were signed X. Y. Z., and they are known as the "X. Y. Z. correspondence." They were sent to the President; he gave them to Congress, and they were published. The patriotism of the whole country was aroused. There was an entire change of feeling; many who hated the President and the Federalists were ready to resent the insult and to prepare for war. Congress determined to strengthen the defenses of the principal ports, to raise an army, and to build or hire ships of war. Washington accepted command of the army, and a Secretary of the Navy was appointed as the fifth Cabinet officer.

**344. Alien and Sedition Acts.**—The newspapers had been filled with violent attacks upon the Federalists and President

1798 Adams, and as some of the writers of the articles were foreigners, they were suspected of being French agents. In the midst of the excitement, acts were passed by Congress that aroused everywhere great indignation. The time for naturalization—that is, the time required for a foreigner to live in the United States before he can become a citizen—was extended to fourteen years. The Alien Acts authorized the President to banish from the country any person of foreign birth whom he might think dangerous to

ence. It was at his suggestion that Washington was appointed commander in chief of the army. As a commissioner to foreign courts, he did much for the cause of liberty by securing the aid of European powers.

"the peace and safety of the United States." The Sedition Acts made it a crime, punishable with heavy fine or imprisonment, for any persons to unite in opposition to any act of Congress or "to write, print, utter, or publish any false, scandalous, or malicious writing" against either house of Congress or the President of the United States. These acts were to remain in force for two and three years respectively.

**345. Virginia and Kentucky Resolutions.** — Believing that these laws were violations of the first amendment to the Constitution, and that the government was assuming too much power, the Republican members of Congress voted against them. They accused the Federalists of wanting a king, and said that these acts would help to bring a monarchy. The legislatures of Virginia and Kentucky passed a series of resolutions which protested against these laws. 1798

The Kentucky resolutions were written by Jefferson; those of Virginia, by Madison. They declared the Union to be a compact between the states, and insisted upon the right of the states to unite in refusing to obey, when the federal government assumed power not delegated to it by the states in the Constitution. They declared the acts unconstitutional, and that the Sedition Act interfered with the liberty of the press and the freedom of speech.

**346. Death of Washington.** — General Washington had almost reached the age of sixty-eight years, when, on December 14, 1799, he died, after a short illness, in his home at Mount Vernon. As soon as the news was received, Congress adjourned, and did all that could be done to show honor to the noble man who had held the highest offices for his country, and whose whole life had been marked by a faithful discharge of duty and a firm adherence to the right. He was buried at Mount Vernon. Dec. 14, 1799

**347. Treaty of Peace with France.** — The prompt action of the Americans did much to influence the French to make peace. There was some fighting upon the ocean, but in 1800 a treaty of peace was signed by Napoleon 1800

Bonaparte, who had been placed at the head of the French government.

**348. Seat of Government changed.** — The District of Columbia, which had been ceded to the government as a site for the capital by Maryland and Virginia, was ten miles square, and lay on both sides of the Potomac. Washington had selected a place upon the left bank of the river for the capital city, and it received his name. The year after his death, the capital was removed to that place. Virginia's gift was returned to her.

**349. Presidential Election.** — The next presidential election occurred in 1800. The candidates of the Federal party were John Adams, and Charles C. Pinckney, of South Carolina. Thomas Jefferson, of Virginia, and Aaron Burr, of New York, were the candidates of the Republican party. The Alien and Sedition Acts had made the Federalists

1800

so unpopular that their candidates were defeated. Thomas Jefferson and Aaron Burr received an equal number of electoral votes, and the duty of electing a President and Vice President devolved upon the House of Representatives, which spent several days in balloting. Two weeks before the close of Adams's term, Thomas Jefferson was declared President, and Aaron Burr,<sup>1</sup> Vice President. This and the former election convinced the people that a change in the method of electing the



AARON BURR

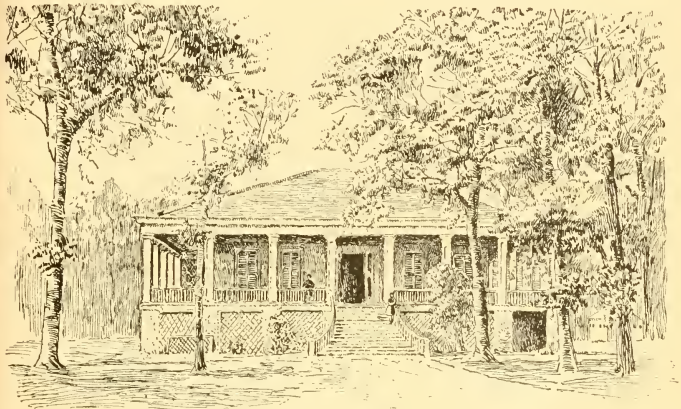
executive officers was necessary, and accordingly an amendment to the Constitution was adopted.

<sup>1</sup> Hamilton and Burr. — It was reported that Alexander Hamilton had urged his friends to vote for Jefferson, and the rumor reached Colonel Burr. While Vice President, he became a candidate for governor of the state of New York; Hamilton once more used his influence against Burr, who failed of election. The bitter feeling between these two men became so strong as to lead to a challenge from Burr. In the duel, Hamilton received serious wounds, from



JEFFERSON'S<sup>1</sup> ADMINISTRATION — 1801-9

**350. Inauguration.** — Jefferson thought that a simple style of living suited the American people, and he set the example of dressing plainly. He rode on horseback, alone, to the new capitol in Washington, instead of being driven in a carriage with a crowd of attendants. He discouraged the elegant cere-



JEFFERSON'S HOUSE, MONTICELLO

monies and customs which were being established in the President's house, and he refused to hold formal receptions, such as had been given by the former Presidents. He was the which he died. Burr was censured everywhere. Even his friends turned against him. He therefore determined to leave New York, and, collecting a number of followers, went to the West to set up a new government for himself. He was finally arrested and tried for treason. Nothing was proved against him, and he was released; but he was generally believed guilty.

<sup>1</sup> Thomas Jefferson was born at Shadwell, Virginia, April 2, 1743; he died near his birthplace, at Monticello, Virginia, July 4, 1826. After his graduation from William and Mary College he devoted his time to the study of law. He was a member of the Continental Congress during the early days of the Revolution; and he wrote the Declaration of Independence, to which he and the other members signed their names. Afterwards he was governor of Virginia. He succeeded Dr. Franklin as minister to France, and did much to aid American trade. After his return he became Secretary of State in President Washington's Cabinet.



THOMAS JEFFERSON

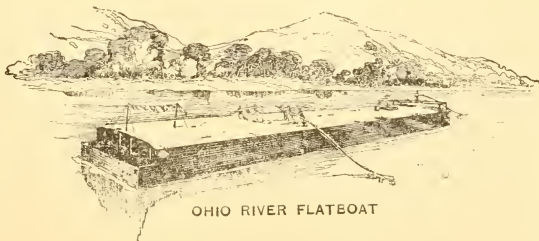
founder, and, so long as he remained in public life, the leader of the Democratic party.

**351. War with Tripoli.** — The United States and the nations of Europe had been paying a yearly tribute to protect their commerce from the pirates of the Barbary States; but their demands had become so unreasonable that 1801-5 the United States refused to pay them, and the Dey of Tripoli declared war. In 1803, an armed fleet was sent to the Mediterranean under Commodore Preble. The *Philadelphia*, commanded by Captain Bainbridge, while pursuing one of the pirate ships, ran upon a rock, and was soon surrounded and captured. The prisoners were all carried to land and made to work as slaves. Lieutenant Decatur determined to recapture or destroy the ship. He and a few daring sailors climbed into the *Philadelphia*, captured or killed every man on board, and burned the ship to the water's edge.

Afterwards the American fleet bombarded the town of Tripoli several times, and a force was sent to attack the city by land. The Dey finally consented to terms of peace. The enslaved prisoners were released, and promises given that American vessels should be safe from disturbance in future. Thus these pirates, who began their robberies of the ships of Christian nations long before the discovery of America, were checked at last by the fleet of the United States.

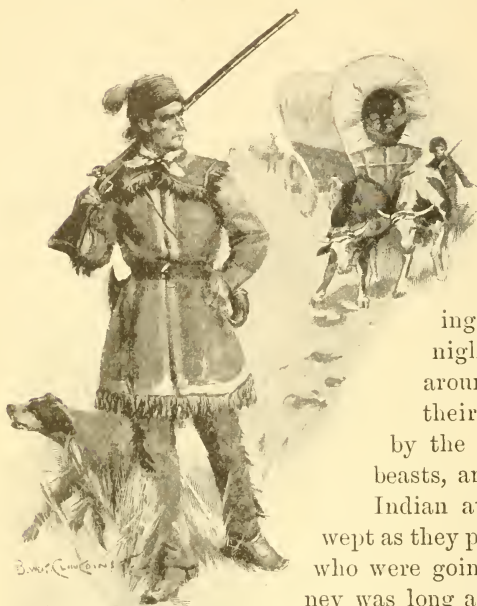


LIEUTENANT DECATUR



OHIO RIVER FLATBOAT

352. The West. — The rich lands beyond the mountains attracted the farmers, and settlements were made farther and



GOING WEST

farther westward. Several families generally went together in a party, traveling in heavy, covered wagons, the men and boys driv-

ing the cattle. At night they slept around the camp fire, their dreams broken by the howling of wild beasts, and oftentimes by Indian attacks. Friends wept as they parted from those who were going; for the journey was long and difficult, and there was little hope of return.

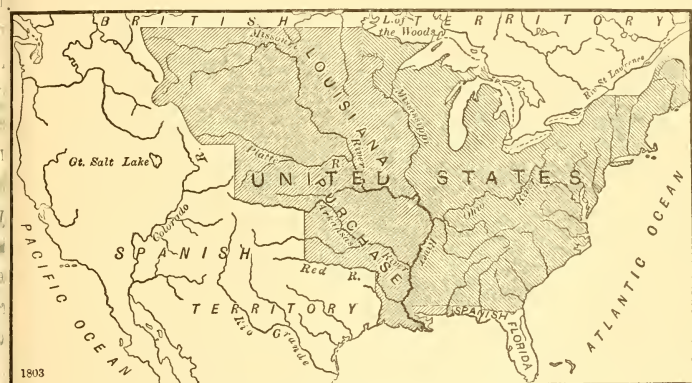
The early emigrants had opened rough roads, and raft boats had been put upon the rivers. When the flatboat came into use, it furnished quite an improved means of transportation. It could carry heavier cargoes than many wagons together, and moved easily down stream.

They had brave hearts, who peopled the West in those days. Most of them were from New England; they settled along both banks of the Ohio, and towns were built, among them Losantiville (afterwards Cincinnati) and Louisville. The produce of their farms was floated on the flatboats down the Ohio and Mississippi rivers to New Orleans, where it found ready

market. The flatboats could make but little speed against the current, hence they were generally sold as lumber, and the settlers found their way home by some other route.

**353. Ohio admitted.** — During the second year of Jefferson's administration, the eastern part of the Northwest Territory was admitted into the Union as the state of Ohio. 1803

**354. Louisiana Purchase.** — The Province of Louisiana embraced all the country between the Mississippi and the Rocky Mountains, and from Mexico and the Gulf of Mexico



UNITED STATES IN 1803

to British America. Its boundary was irregular on the north, and uncertain on the west. At the close of the French and Indian War, the French had given up their claims in America to England and Spain, but by a secret treaty in 1800 Louisiana was given back to France. The Spanish governor still remained in power, and he notified the citizens of the United States that they could no longer store their goods or produce in New Orleans. This was a violation of Spain's treaty with the United States, and President Jefferson planned to gain possession of that port. Our minister in France finally discovered that the territory was in control of that country, and



began negotiations for its purchase. Napoleon Bonaparte, who had become Emperor of France and needed money to carry on the war with England, in 1803 sold to the United States not only New Orleans, but the whole vast region then known as Louisiana, for \$15,000,000.<sup>1</sup>

**355. Exploration of the Columbia River.** — Oregon was first visited, in 1792, by Captain Gray, of Boston, who sailed into the Columbia River and named it.

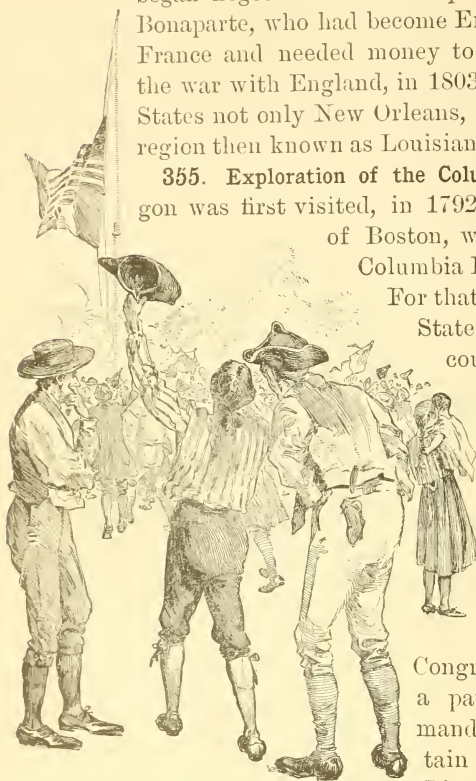
For that reason the United States claimed all the country watered by its tributaries. Yet

this region and the vast territory purchased from France were an unknown land to the white men of that time.

At the suggestion of the President, Congress, in 1804, sent a party of men, commanded by Captain Lewis and

Lieutenant Clarke, to explore the country. They

were absent nearly three years. In their journey across the continent they were exposed to many dangers from Indians



RAISING THE UNITED STATES FLAG IN LOUISIANA

<sup>1</sup> One of our historians (McMaster) tells of the opposition which was felt by some of the people to paying this great sum of money — \$15,000,000 — for a wilderness. Some one, he says, had made the following calculation: "Weigh it, and there will be 433 tons of solid silver. Load it into wagons, and there will be 866 of them. Place the wagons in a line, giving two rods to each, and they will cover a distance of  $5\frac{1}{2}$  miles. Hire a laborer to shovel it into carts, and though he load 16 each day, he will not finish the work in two months.



and wild beasts. The two main branches of the Columbia were named for the leaders of the party.

**356. The Blockade.**—England and France were again at war; the ships of the United States, a neutral power, did most of the carrying trade of those nations, and this trade became very profitable. But in 1806 Great Britain put an end to it by a proclamation declaring that the ports of Europe between Brest and the River Elbe were closed, or blockaded, and warning all vessels not to attempt to enter them. Napoleon, in return, published an order for the blockade of the British Islands. England then passed her “Orders in Council,” which blockaded all ports in which British ships were not allowed to enter, and forbade all vessels to trade with France or her allies. This seriously injured the commerce of the United States, and many American vessels were seized by the nations at war. 1806

**357. Right of Search.**—England also claimed the right to search American vessels, and to press into the British navy seamen of English birth, who were still considered subjects of Great Britain. Americans were often claimed as English deserters, and taken to England in accordance with this claim. Many of the United States vessels were not strong enough to battle with the British men-of-war, and they were compelled to submit to the search. 1807

The American frigate *Chesapeake* was stopped for the purpose of search by the British ship *Leopard*. Though not ready for action, the captain of the *Chesapeake* refused to allow the search, and the *Leopard* fired. Several men on board the *Chesapeake* were killed, and four others, accused of being deserters, were taken. President Jefferson issued a procla-

Stack it up, dollar on dollar, and supposing nine to make an inch, the pile will be more than three miles high.” This purchase gave the United States control of the Mississippi River, and more than doubled the original area of territory by adding to it about 1,000,000 square miles.

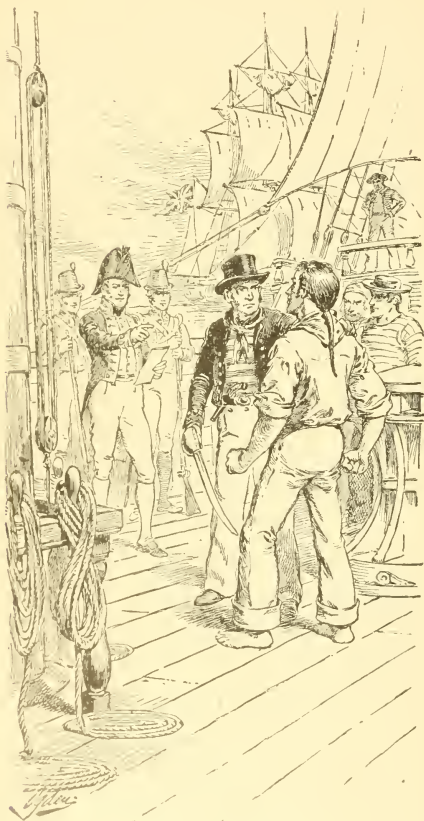
In the same year, Georgia's cession to the United States, agreed to the previous year, was completed. It embraced nearly 100,000 square miles between the Chattahoochee and Mississippi rivers. The government paid Georgia \$1,250,000, and promised to pay all Indian claims.

mation forbidding British armed vessels to enter any port of the United States. The British government disapproved of what the officers of the *Leopard* had done, but the king

afterwards published an order by which all nations were forbidden to trade with France, unless they paid a tax to England for the privilege. Napoleon, in return, threatened to capture all vessels that paid the tax or allowed the search for British seamen to be made.

### 358. Embargo Act.

— Congress now passed the Embargo Act. It required that all American trading vessels should return to the United States and remain there, and forbade  
1807  
ships belonging to other nations to take cargoes from our ports. This act, though intended as a retaliation



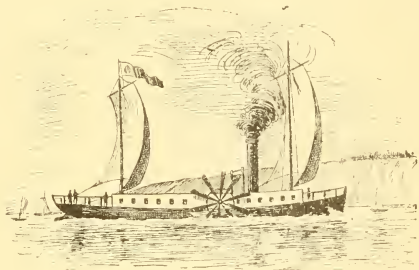
IMPRESSING SEAMEN

upon England, ruined the commerce of America, and produced much dissatisfaction. It was very unpopular in

New England, where men were largely engaged in commerce and shipbuilding, and it forced many of them to turn to manufacturing and other pursuits. In other states, the planters and farmers suffered heavy loss, because they had no foreign market for their produce. The embargo was soon repealed, and Congress passed the Non-intercourse Act, which stopped all commerce with England and France.

**359. The Steamboat.** — Robert Fulton, of Pennsylvania, was the first to succeed in moving a boat rapidly over the water by the power of steam, though other men in different countries have claimed the honor

of the invention of the steamboat.<sup>1</sup> He had spent some time trying experiments in France. Afterwards he returned to America and continued his work. Robert Livingston, of New York, furnished him with



THE CLERMONT

money for building a boat. Many said that Fulton was insane, and others predicted that he would never succeed. They called his boat "Fulton's Folly."

By September, 1807, the work was finished, and he invited a party of friends to take a trip up the Hudson on board the boat, which he had named the *Clermont*. When everything was ready, the signal was given, and the new steamboat glided over the water, amidst the shouts of the

1807

<sup>1</sup> William Longstreet, of Augusta, Georgia, in September, 1790, three years before Fulton announced his invention, applied to the Georgia legislature for money to assist him in constructing a boat to be propelled by steam. This aid was refused, and the test of his invention delayed. Finally, in 1807, a few days after Fulton's experiment, Longstreet's boat steamed up the Savannah River at the rate of five miles an hour.

John Fitch, in Pennsylvania, and Samuel Rumsey, had also attempted to use steam for propelling boats; Fitch's boat, though it moved slowly, made several trips between Philadelphia and Trenton.

delighted crowds on the banks. It traveled from New York to Albany in thirty-six hours. Other boats had taken six, and often ten, days to go the same distance. This invention has changed navigation in every part of the world.

**360. Progress.** — When Mr. Jefferson's administration closed, the new republic had increased wonderfully in size and strength. The Louisiana purchase had doubled her domain. The fertile lands of the West were being peopled by some of her most enterprising sons. The old debt was no longer a burden. Before the embargo, the value of her exports had increased to more than \$100,000,000. Sixty-two million pounds of cotton left her shores, as one crop, for foreign markets. The United States was beginning to be known as a power among the nations, but she was again threatened with war—a war in which a part of the fight must be made with the great navy of England.

**361. Presidential Election.** — In the election of 1808, the  
1808      Republican candidates, James Madison, of Virginia,  
and George Clinton, of New York, were elected.

### QUESTIONS FOR STUDY

Describe the difference between the journey of a new President to the capital in our day and in Washington's time. What is a tariff? an excise? Explain what is meant by funding a debt. What do you understand by the assumption of the state debts? Give an outline of Hamilton's financial plan. Do you think Washington was right in refusing to aid France? Give your reasons. What connection had events in America with the French Revolution of 1789? Why were the Alien and Sedition Laws so strongly opposed? Give an outline of the Virginia and Kentucky Resolutions. Why did the United States wish to own New Orleans? How did Jefferson construe the Constitution when he bought Louisiana?

## CHAPTER II

## WAR OF 1812-5

MADISON'S<sup>1</sup> ADMINISTRATION — 1809-17

**362. Efforts for Relief.** — When President Madison came into office he sought to open negotiations with England and France, and relieve our commerce, but he failed to effect anything permanent.

**363. Battle of Tippecanoe.** —

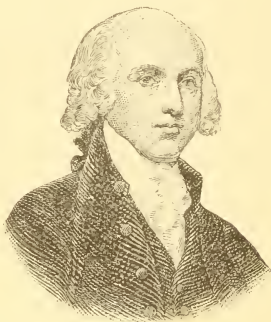
Scarcely two years of this presidential term had passed

1811

when the Indians of the

Northwest began to be troublesome again. British agents had been among them, making them unfriendly toward the settlers. One of their bravest chiefs, Tecumseh, with his brother, called the

Prophet, had formed a confederacy of tribes to drive back the white men. General Harrison, the governor of the Territory of Indiana, was sent against them with a body of troops. While he was encamped near Tippecanoe, in Indiana, the chiefs met him with promises of peace; but he had so little faith in their friendship, that he ordered his men to be ready for battle at a moment's warning. The Indians, led by the Prophet, made a sudden attack in the



JAMES MADISON

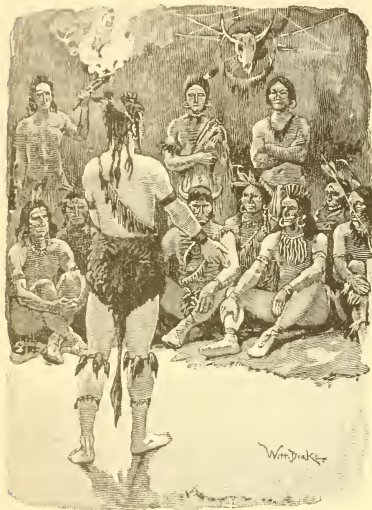
<sup>1</sup> James Madison was born in Port Conway, Virginia, in 1751; he died at Montpelier, Virginia, in 1836. Having completed his course at Princeton College, he devoted himself to the study of law, and entered public life as a member of the Virginia convention at the age of twenty-four. His next appearance was as a delegate to the Continental Congress. In the Constitutional convention he favored the views of the Federalists. Afterwards he changed his opinions and became a prominent leader of the Republican party. He was Secretary of State during Jefferson's administration. After the close of his second presidential term, he returned to the quiet of his country home, and became interested in agricultural improvements.



night. After two hours' fighting they retreated, and Tecumseh's plans failed.

**364. The President's Proclamation.** — England continued to interfere with the commerce of the United States, and to

seize American seamen. Since the beginning of the war between England and France, about six thousand men had been impressed. In 1810, Napoleon repealed his decrees against the commerce of neutral nations. President Madison then issued a proclamation that trade would be free with France, but that, unless England repealed her unjust trade laws within three months, all business with Great Britain would be prohibited. This made England more watchful



TECUMSEH INCITING THE INDIANS

than ever, and armed British ships were stationed near the principal ports of the United States to keep vessels from entering or going out.

In the spring of the next  
1811 year, the United States frigate *President*, leaving the shores of the Chesapeake Bay, hailed the British man-of-war *Little Belt*. The answer was a shot. The *President* replied with a broadside, and a battle followed in which the *Little Belt* was completely disabled.

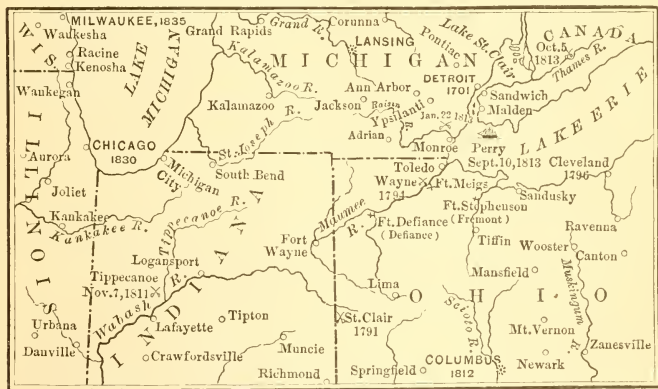


THE PROPHET

**365. Declaration of War.** — This circumstance did much to deepen the feelings of indignation that had already been aroused against Great Britain. After Madison's renomination in 1812, in his message to Congress he recommended war, and gave as reasons: the incitement of the Indians to hostilities by the British; the Orders in Council, which hindered neutral trade; the interference by British cruisers with vessels coming into and departing from American ports; and the seizure of American seamen. Although some members of

Congress believed the difficulties might be settled in another way, in June, 1812, the United States declared war with Great Britain. Arrangements were

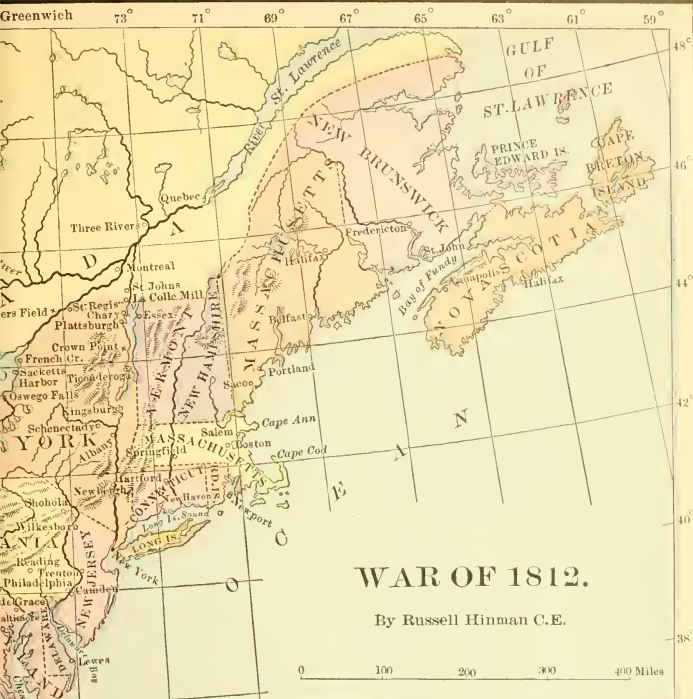
made for raising an army, and General Henry Dearborn, of Massachusetts, was appointed commander in chief.



WESTERN BATTLEFIELDS

**366. The Navy.** — At the beginning of this war, the United States had only a small navy, and could not hope to do much fighting on the ocean against England's fleets, which numbered a thousand vessels. But the American vessels were well built, and many of our seamen had learned something of fighting in the war with Tripoli.

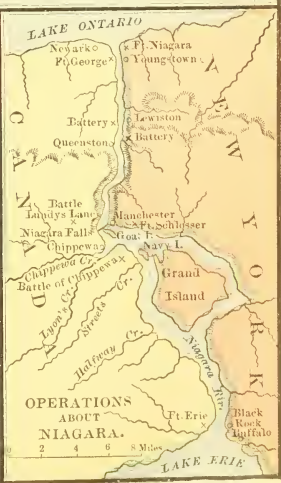




# WAR OF 1812.

By Russell Hinman C.E.

0 100 200 300 400 Miles



**367. American Plans.** — It was thought that England would rather comply with the demands of the United States than endanger her American provinces, and an attack on Canada was proposed. The army was stationed along the boundary of Canada. General Dearborn commanded the eastern division; General Van Rensselaer, the middle column; and General Hull, then governor of Michigan Territory, the western forces.

**368. American Failures in 1812.** — Without striking a single blow, General Hull surrendered Detroit to the enemy, and the whole Territory of Michigan was left without defense against the British and the Indians. General Van Rensselaer crossed the Niagara River into Canada, and attacked Queenstown, but his attempt at invasion was a failure.

General William Henry Harrison, who succeeded General Hull, early the next year attempted to recapture Detroit; but his first efforts were not successful.

**369. Naval Victories in 1812.** — Although this year was marked by failures on land, the Americans gained glorious victories on the sea. About three hundred merchant vessels and three thousand prisoners were taken from the British; several of their men-of-war also were captured or destroyed.

**370. The Constitution and the Guerriere.** — Captain Hull, a nephew of General Hull, in command of the *Constitution*, met the *Guerriere* (gâr-e-âre') near the Gulf of St. Lawrence. The British ship bore two flags: on one was the name *Guerriere*; on the other, "Not the *Little Belt*," referring to the vessel taken by the *President*. The engagement lasted about forty minutes, and then the *Guerriere* surrendered. She was so badly injured that she could not be brought to land, and was blown up where she had fought. The command of the *Constitution* was afterwards given to Commodore Bainbridge. The sailors, who loved the old ship, called her *Old Ironsides*.

Aug. 19,  
1812

**371. Madison reëlected.** — President Madison was reëlected, with Elbridge Gerry, of Massachusetts, for Vice President.



This showed that the majority of the people favored the war. Congress prepared for carrying on the war by increasing the size of the army and building new war ships.

**372. The Chesapeake and the Shannon.**—The unfortunate *Chesapeake*, now under the command of Captain Lawrence, was anchored in Boston harbor, when the British frigate *Shannon* came in sight. The *Chesapeake* sailed out to meet the enemy, and a bloody battle followed. The men had not been sufficiently trained, and were unprepared for such a fight. Captain Lawrence was mortally wounded. His dying words to his men were "Don't give up the ship." These words have often been remembered and repeated by American sailors in times of danger and trial. Nearly all the officers of the *Chesapeake* were soon killed or wounded and the British crowded upon her decks, pulled down her flag, and made prisoners of her crew.

June 1,  
1813



CAPTAIN LAWRENCE

**373. Perry's Victory.**—The Americans saw that it was necessary for them to have control of Lakes Erie and Ontario.

Ships were accordingly fitted out

and placed under the command of Commodore Oliver Hazard

Sept. 10,  
1813

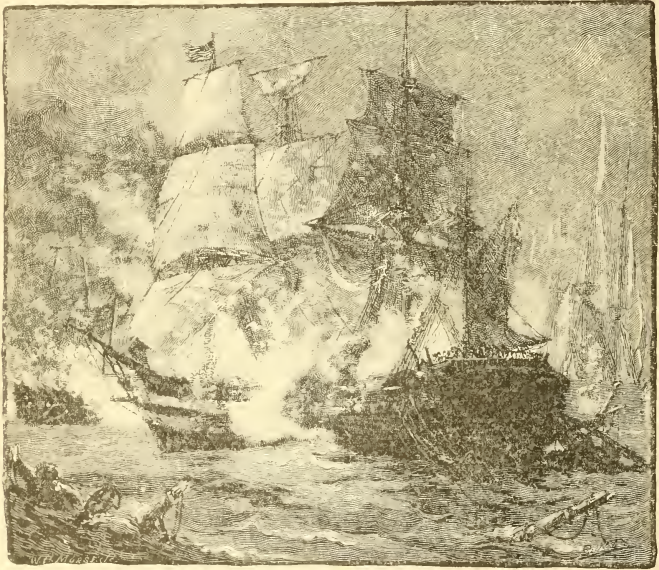
Perry. The British fleet on the lakes was commanded by Commodore Barclay. In September, the two fleets met in the western part of Lake Erie. Perry had named his flagship *Lawrence*, in honor of the commander of the *Chesapeake*. A flag with the hero's dying words, "Don't give up the ship," was raised upon the mast as the battle began. All the British guns were turned toward the *Lawrence*. It was soon disabled. In



COMMODORE PERRY

were turned toward the *Lawrence*. It was soon disabled. In

a small boat, amidst heavy fire from the enemy, Perry crossed to another vessel, and the battle went on. In four hours every British soldier had surrendered. Commodore Perry wrote to General Harrison, "We have met the enemy, and they are ours."



BATTLE OF LAKE ERIE

The war upon the sea was continued successfully, and many English trading vessels surrendered. The British succeeded in capturing several of our war ships.

**374. Battle of the Thames.** — Soon after Perry's victory the British left Detroit. The Americans under Harrison pursued the enemy and overtook them near the Thames River. There a battle was fought, which resulted in another victory for the Americans. Tecumseh, who led the Indians, was killed, but the British general managed to escape. In consequence of these successes, Michigan was

Oct. 5,  
1813

freed, the Indian confederacy broken, and the war in that part of the country ended.

By the following year, the war in Europe had ended, and Napoleon had been banished from France. England was able to send to America a larger number of men, and British vessels blockaded the whole Atlantic coast of the United States.

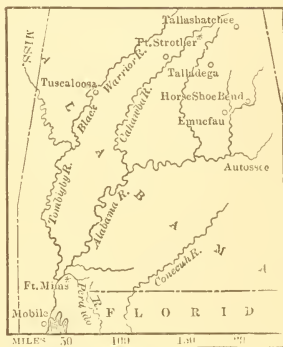
**375. War with the Creek Indians.** — In August the Creek

1813-4 Indians attacked Fort

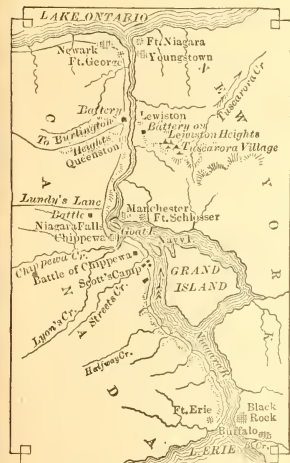
Mims, north of Mobile, on the Alabama River, and killed three hundred persons. The militia of Georgia and Tennessee, commanded by General Andrew

Jackson, of Tennessee, marched against them. Five battles

were fought, in each of which the Indians were defeated.



SCENE OF THE CREEK WAR



NIAGARA FRONTIER

The savages gathered their remaining forces, and waited at "The Horseshoe Bend," or, in their language, Tohopeka, on the Tallapoosa River. Here they were completely routed by General Jackson's army, and a treaty of peace was afterwards made with them.

**376. American Victories in 1814.**

— All plans and efforts were directed toward another

1814

march into Canada. General Brown, assisted by Colonel Winfield Scott, crossed the Niagara River and captured Fort Erie. At Chippewa, July 5, a battle was fought and a victory won for the

Americans. Lundys Lane, opposite Niagara Falls, also was the scene of a desperate battle, in which the Americans were again successful. Nevertheless, our army had to fall back to Fort Erie, which they finally blew up, retreating across the Niagara River.

In September, General Prevost, the British governor, led an army against Plattsburg, on Lake Champlain. After Prevost began the battle on land, Commodore Downie brought his British fleet against the American vessels near Plattsburg, under the command of Commodore Macdonough. The most important part of the fighting was done on the lake, and the conflict is generally called the battle of Lake Champlain. After a battle of two hours, the whole British fleet surrendered. Prevost retreated.

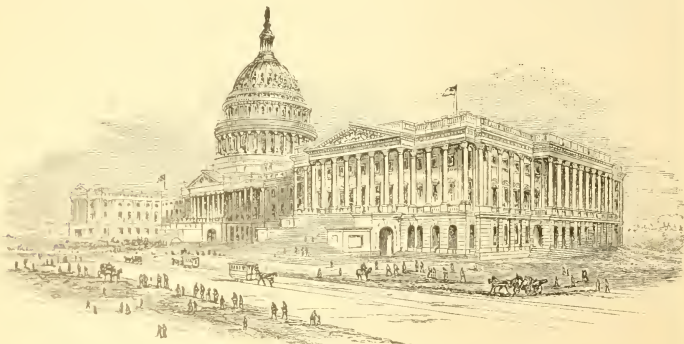
Sept.,  
1814



COMMODORE  
MACDONOUGH

**377. Expedition against Washington.** — A short time before this battle, English vessels reached the Chesapeake Bay, with English troops commanded by General Ross. They landed and marched toward the capital. Nearly all of the United States troops had been sent to Canada, and there were none left to defend the capital. The militia

Aug.,  
1814



THE PRESENT CAPITOL AT WASHINGTON

collected to check the approach of the enemy soon began to retreat, and General Ross went on to the city. His soldiers burned the public buildings, among them the Capitol and the President's mansion. The citizens fled in great haste, and Mrs. Madison saved some of the White House silver by carrying it with her. The British returned to the fleet, which now moved toward Baltimore. The troops landed a few miles from the city, and were again opposed by a militia force. During the engagement General Ross was killed, and the army did not continue their advance upon the city; but the fleet bombarded Fort McHenry,<sup>1</sup> during a day and night, and then sailed away.



**378. Hartford Convention.** — The people of the New England States had from the beginning opposed the war, and their opposition increased as its ruinous effects upon commerce were felt. After the extension of the blockade and the burning of the capital, the struggle seemed hopeless, and they called a convention at Hartford, in December, 1814, to devise measures for relief. The meeting was secretly conducted; no record was kept. The members were all Federalists, and the Republicans accused them of advising secession. It was said that they passed resolutions approving the secession clause of the Kentucky Resolutions.<sup>2</sup>

Dec.,  
1814

<sup>1</sup> **The Star-Spangled Banner.** — Francis Scott Key of Baltimore had been sent to one of the British ships upon some military business, and was compelled to remain while the bombardment of Fort McHenry lasted. He watched anxiously the United States flag floating over the fort, and while there composed the well-known poem entitled "The Star-Spangled Banner."

<sup>2</sup> Their published report says: "Whenever it shall appear that the causes



These secret sessions aroused such bitter opposition that the Federalist party was ruined. Before their committee reached Washington, with the statement of their objections to the war and a request for some changes in the Constitution, peace had been declared.

**379. Battle of New Orleans.** — A part of the British plan was the conquest of Louisiana. After General Jackson's victory



BATTLE OF NEW ORLEANS

over the Creek Indians, he was placed in command of the troops in the South. In the middle of December, about eight thousand British troops landed below New Orleans. General Jackson, with about half that number of volunteers and militia, prepared to defend the city. He strengthened the fortifications by throwing up a long line of breastworks, built partly of sandbags, and a deep ditch was dug in front of it. Many of the men in

Jackson's army were forest hunters, and trained marksmen. As the British advanced, nearly every shot from the breastworks laid one of them wounded and bleeding upon the ground. After several attempts to pass the works, they were compelled to retreat. Their leader, General Pakenham, was killed. The American loss was eight men killed and thirteen wounded.

Jan. 8,  
1815

**380. Peace.** — The news of this victory and of the treaty of

(of our calamities) are radical and permanent, a separation by equitable arrangement will be preferable to an alliance by constraint among nominal friends, but real enemies."

peace were received in Washington about the same time. Toward the end of the summer of 1814, commissioners from the United States met commissioners from England at Ghent, Belgium. The following Christmas eve they agreed upon a treaty, but news of it did not reach America in time to prevent the battle of New Orleans. The close of the war in Europe made the impressment of sailors unnecessary, and relieved neutral vessels; so the treaty said nothing about impressment or Orders in Council. This war had cost the United States about one hundred million dollars, and the lives of thirty thousand men. Both nations were tired of the contest, and Congress ratified the terms which England had sanctioned. Our seamen had won the respect of the world, and our soldiers had learned the arts of war. Winfield Scott in the battles around Niagara, William Henry Harrison at Tippecanoe, and Andrew Jackson at New Orleans had shown their skill as leaders.

Dec. 24,  
1814



ALGERIAN PIRATE SHIPS

**381. War with Algiers.** — About the time that peace was made with Great Britain, the Dey of Algiers began to rob and capture American merchant vessels, as the pirates of Tripoli had done. Commodore Decatur was sent to the Mediterranean with a fleet to protect the commerce of the United States. He captured two of the Algerian vessels, compelled the Dey to return the property and prisoners taken, and to pay for the damage done.

**382. New States.** — In 1812 Louisiana was admitted as one of the United States. Afterwards all the Louisiana purchase, except that included in the state of Louisiana, was placed under a government like that of the other territories, and called the Missouri Territory. St. Louis was made its capital.

In 1816 Indiana, which had been a part of the Northwest Territory, became one of the United States. At the close of Madison's administration, there were nineteen states in the Union.

**383. The National Bank.** — The commerce of the United States had suffered so seriously from the war, that nearly all the gold and silver money had been taken from the country.

In 1816, for the purpose of supplying the country with a uniform currency, Congress chartered for twenty years a National Bank, with branches in many of the states. The public money was deposited in these banks, the Secretary of the Treasury having the right to remove the money from the branch banks, after giving satisfactory reasons to Congress.

**384. Presidential Election.** — This year the Republican candidates, James Monroe, of Virginia, and Daniel Tompkins, of New York, were elected President and Vice President, with almost no opposition.

#### QUESTIONS FOR STUDY

What effect did the blockading acts of England and France have upon the Americans? What was the object of the Embargo Act? Why did the Americans go to war with England in 1812? How did the two wars

with Great Britain differ? Where was the strongest opposition to this act? What made Perry's victory important? Where had many of our seamen received their training? Why were the American soldiers at New Orleans more than a match for the British veterans? What did we gain by the War of 1812? Mark upon the map the places where the Americans were victorious. Mark those in which the British were successful.

Make a chronological table of the principal land battles, and one of the naval battles, of this war, using the following form :

LAND (OR NAVAL) BATTLES

DATE	WHERE FOUGHT	AMERICAN COMMANDER	ENGLISH COMMANDER	VICTORY

## CHAPTER III

### PEACE AND PROGRESS

#### MONROE'S<sup>1</sup> ADMINISTRATION — 1817-25

**385. The Era of Good Feeling.** — Monroe found the country at peace with foreign nations; and the close of the war having removed the causes which had agitated political parties, all sections had become so harmonious that his administration has been called the "era of good feeling." People were busy making improvements, constructing roads and canals, and devising plans for regulating the tariff, managing the public lands, and advancing education.



JAMES MONROE

**386. Florida.** — Although Florida belonged to Spain, she held

<sup>1</sup> James Monroe was born in Westmoreland County, Virginia, April 28, 1758; he died in New York city, July 4, 1831. After his course of study at William

it merely in name. Few settlements had been made, and the country was inhabited by roving Indian tribes, runaway slaves, and adventurers who cared nothing for law or right. Before the close of the war with England, the Seminole and Creek Indians began to plunder the settlements along the Florida boundary of Georgia, and, in 1817, General Jackson invaded Florida, burned several of their towns, and took their crops and cattle. Believing that the Spanish officers were aiding and encouraging the savages, he marched to Pensacola,



UNITED STATES IN 1819

captured the fort, and sent the Spanish governor with all his forces to Havana. Two British traders, who were accused of furnishing the Indians with arms and ammunition, were arrested, tried by a court-martial, and condemned to death.

This invasion of Florida, and this hasty execution of two British subjects, came near involving the United States in war

and Mary College was completed, he enlisted as a soldier in the war of the Revolution, and fought in several of its battles. He also served in the army in 1814. His public life covered a space of more than fifty years. As a statesman, he was prominent in the legislature of his state and in Congress. He went as minister to France, to Spain, and to England, and he was the principal agent in making the Louisiana purchase. He was twice governor of Virginia. During Madison's term he was a member of the Cabinet as Secretary of State, and a part of that time he was also Secretary of War.



with two nations. After excited debates Congress decided that Jackson should not be censured. Pensacola was, however, restored to Spain; but as the Floridas could not be held by her without much trouble and expense, in 1819 Spain gave up all claim to Florida and to the Territory of Oregon<sup>1</sup> on the Pacific, for \$5,000,000. The United States relinquished her claim to Texas under the Louisiana purchase, and agreed to the Sabine River as the southwestern boundary. General Jackson was appointed first governor of Florida.

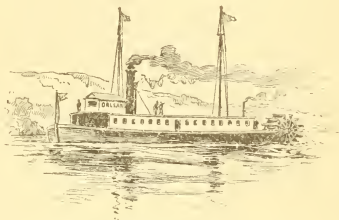
**387. Steamboats in the West.** — Steamboats opened a new era in emigration. As the first one steamed down the Ohio River, the people along the banks watched with fear the shower of sparks, and listened with wonder to the rush of the wheels.

Many steamboats were soon upon the western rivers.

These could run from New Orleans to Louisville in twenty-five days, while the boat rowed by hand had taken three months for the trip. Now that the Mississippi valley could be so easily reached, a steady stream of emigration poured into it.

New towns were built, its vast acres came under cultivation, and it developed into the richest section of the country. The Great Lakes also became an important water way for trade and travel, and thriving cities — Chicago, Milwaukee, Cleveland, and others — came into existence.

**388. The First Ocean Steamer.** — In 1819 the commerce of the world was greatly increased by the introduction of steam as a power to move seagoing vessels. The first steamer that crossed the Atlantic was the *Sa-*



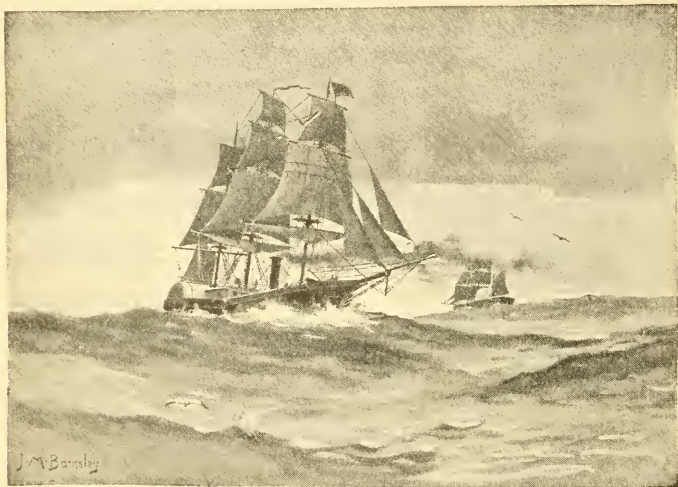
FIRST STEAMBOAT ON THE OHIO

May,  
1819

<sup>1</sup> Oregon then embraced the present states of Oregon, Washington, and Idaho, and all the country north to the parallel 54° 40', between the Rocky Mountains and the Pacific.

*vannah*. This was built in New York, but it belonged to merchants in Savannah. Its first voyage was made from the city for which it was named to Liverpool and St. Petersburg, and it was an object of wonder and interest in all the ports visited.

Before this invention, the trade between different countries depended upon sails and winds. A trip from Europe to



THE SAVANNAH

America required two or three months; now it can be accomplished in less than a week.

**389. Emigrants from Europe.** — When the defeat of Napoleon closed the long war in Europe, the nations there were terribly exhausted and impoverished, and much suffering among the laboring classes was the result. The steamship now offered a cheap and easy means of reaching America, and thousands, attracted by the hope of large rewards for their toil, crowded our ports, ready to begin life anew in the rich valleys of the West. In twenty years from the appearance of the first steamboat upon the Mississippi, the states west of the Alleghanies had a population of four millions.

**390. New States.**—The Mississippi Territory, ceded by Georgia to the general government in 1803, included the present states of Alabama and Mississippi. The western portion was admitted into the Union, as the state of Mississippi, in 1817. In 1818 Illinois became one of the United States. Before the close of 1819, Alabama was enrolled as the twenty-second state.

**391. Slavery.**—Negroes had been bought and sold in all the colonies; later each state decided for itself whether or not

1817-9



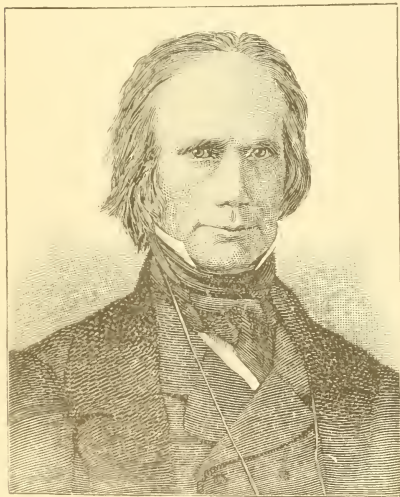
IN THE COTTON FIELD

its people should own slaves. The increased production of cotton and rice in the South made slave labor so valuable there, that the number of slaves rapidly increased, while nearly all of the negroes had been sold and sent away from the North. Some of the people there believed that slavery was wrong and ought to be abolished. In the South also a few men opposed

it for the same reason; but most of the people saw nothing wrong in the relation between master and slave, and thought it the best under which the two races could live together. It was easy to understand that an immediate emancipation would bring great poverty to the South. The slave states were all south of Mason and Dixon's line and the Ohio River. When Alabama was admitted, half of the states were free and half were slave-holding; thus each section had an equal number of votes in the Senate, but the free states, because of the rapid increase of population in the North, had a larger representation in the House of Representatives.

**392. The Missouri Compromise.** — When the question of receiving Missouri as a state came before Congress, intense and

bitter feeling  
1818-20  
was aroused  
between the two sections. If Missouri came in as a slave state, the power of the South in Congress would be strengthened; if slavery were excluded from her territory, the influence of the North would be increased in the same proportion. One party was in favor of her admission as a free state; the other party thought Congress had no right to interfere in this question, which all the other



HENRY CLAY

states had settled for themselves. Maine had separated from Massachusetts and applied for admission in the usual way; the bill for receiving Missouri on the same terms was annexed to the Maine bill. Then Mr. Thomas, a senator from Illi-

nois, proposed an amendment which prohibited slavery from every part of the Louisiana purchase north of the parallel of  $36^{\circ} 30'$ , except the state of Missouri. This parallel is the southern boundary of Missouri. This amendment, known as the "Missouri Compromise,"<sup>1</sup> was passed, and Maine was admitted as a new state in 1820.



ON THE MISSOURI

**393. Missouri admitted.** — Missouri was still refused a place among the states, because of an article in her constitution forbidding free negroes to settle within her territory. Through the effort of Henry Clay, this article was amended, and she was enrolled as a member of the Union in 1821, after a proclamation from the

<sup>1</sup> At the suggestion of Mr. Clay, a committee, made up of members from the House and the Senate, was appointed to devise a plan for deciding this matter. Mr. Clay was made chairman. His report was a resolution that Missouri be admitted "on an equal footing with the original states in all respects," provided her legislature should "pass no law in violation of the rights of the citizens in other states." Hence Missouri came into the Union, not under the first compromise, but in accordance with Mr. Clay's resolution.



President, prescribing that her legislature should pass no laws that would conflict with the Constitution of the United States. The name of this state was taken from the great river which winds through it. The word means "muddy water."

**394. Monroe Doctrine.** — Encouraged by the successful struggle which the United States had made for independence, the Spanish colonies in Mexico and South America had rebelled against the government of Spain. After the downfall of Napoleon, the leading nations of Europe formed a union which they called the "Holy Alliance"; they declared that its purpose was to "preserve peace, justice, and religion in the name of the Gospel." Its real object was to preserve monarchies by mutual protection in revolutions and rebellions. There were reasons for believing that the Holy Alliance intended to help Spain to subdue her colonies, and it was possible that nations stronger than Spain might get possession of them.

1823

Russia was preparing to found a colony on the northwest coast of America, and might seize California. President Monroe, then serving his second term, in a message to Congress asserted:

(1) That the United States would refrain entirely from taking any part in the political affairs of Europe, and that they would consider any attempt of European nations to establish their system in any portion of America as "the manifestation of an unfriendly disposition toward the United States."

(2) That the American continents, having asserted their freedom and independence, were henceforth "not to be considered as subjects for future colonization by any European power."

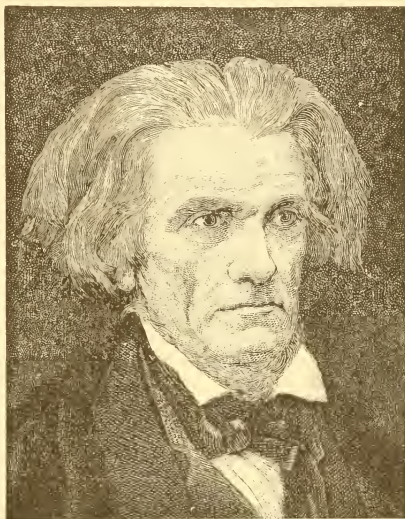
These principles, though Washington, Jefferson, and others had stated their belief in them, have since then been called the "Monroe Doctrine." The announcement had an excellent effect. The Holy Alliance decided not to unite with Spain against the new states, and, the next year, Russia signed a treaty, giving up every claim to territory south of 54° 40'.

**395. Lafayette's Visit.** — During the last year of President Monroe's administration, General Lafayette returned to the United States. He visited each of the twenty-four states, and was everywhere received by immense crowds of delighted

1824 people;<sup>1</sup> and every town through which he passed prepared magnificent entertainments in his honor.

**396. Presidential Election.** — The Republican party had been divided upon the tariff question. One division of this party

1824 nominated William H. Crawford, of Georgia, for President, and John C. Calhoun, of South Carolina, for Vice President. Before the election, Mr.



JOHN C. CALHOUN

Crawford was stricken with paralysis, and though Mr. Calhoun received the majority of the votes for the Vice Presidency, the votes for President were divided among Andrew Jackson, John Quincy Adams, William H. Crawford, and Henry Clay, neither receiving a majority. The House of Representatives elected John Quincy Adams.

<sup>1</sup> He was entertained by the Vice President at his home on Staten Island. A number of distinguished citizens met him there and accompanied him to the city of New York. The steamboats which carried the party were ornamented with the flags of different nations. At Boston, the fiftieth anniversary of the battle of Bunker Hill was celebrated, and Lafayette laid the cornerstone of the monument, which was then begun. Congress voted him \$200,000 and a township of land in Florida. Before leaving America, he spent a short time at Mount Vernon. The old hero wept as he stood at the grave of his friend.

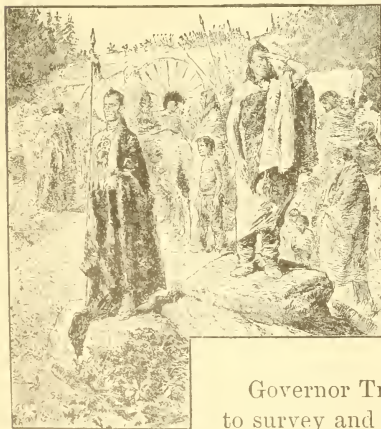
JOHN QUINCY ADAMS'S<sup>1</sup> ADMINISTRATION — 1825-9

**397. The President Unpopular.** — Although General Jackson had not received a majority of the electoral votes, the largest number had been cast for him, and many people thought that he should have been President. Consequently President Adams throughout his administration met with much opposition from Jackson's friends.

**398. The Creek Indians** owned several million acres of land within the boundaries of Georgia and Alabama, which the United States had promised to buy from them. The government was slow



JOHN QUINCY ADAMS



MOVING THE INDIANS

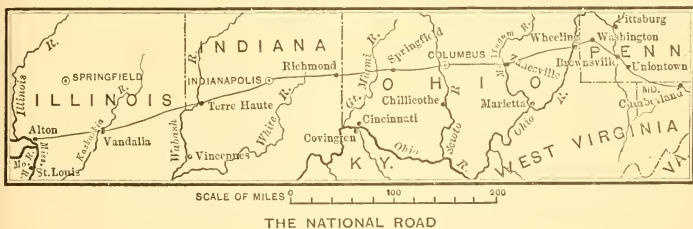
about fulfilling its promise, and the people became impatient at the delay. In 1825 a few of the Creek chiefs, without the consent of their tribes, ceded their lands to the United States. The rest of the Indians were so enraged at this that they burned the house of McIntosh, the principal chief, and murdered him.

Governor Troup, of Georgia, now began to survey and take possession of the land. The Creeks sent an appeal to the Presi-

<sup>1</sup> John Quincy Adams was born at Braintree, Massachusetts, in 1767. When a boy of eleven, he went with his father to France and was sent to school in Paris. On a second visit to Europe, he was for a short time in school at Amsterdam and then at Leyden. After his return to America, he

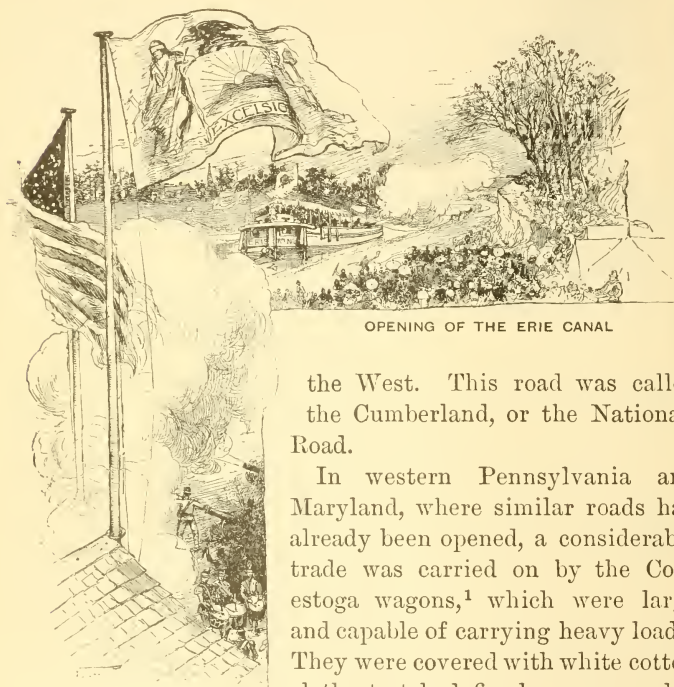
dent, asking that their property be returned to them. He sent a body of United States troops to Georgia, and another treaty was made the next year which satisfied the Indians; but the governor, thinking the state could manage this matter without interference, continued his survey according to the provisions of the first treaty. A threat that his surveyor would be arrested came from Washington; he, in turn, threatened to resist if force were used. Quite a long controversy followed between the United States government and the state. At last, however, the Indians gave up their lands and promised to move their families to the other side of the Mississippi. The government gave to every Indian warrior who went within two years, a rifle, a butcher's knife, a blanket, and a brass kettle; food and wagons for the journey were also supplied.

**399. Cumberland Road and Internal Commerce.**—The population of the United States had reached ten millions, and,



as the settled portions spread westward, the need for better roads and better means of communication began to be felt. When Ohio was admitted as a state, Congress agreed to expend a part of the money obtained from the sale of public lands in that state for building roads through it, and for graduated from Harvard University, and in a few years was established as a lawyer in Boston. He was appointed minister to the court at the Hague, and later to Portugal and to Russia; he was also a leading member of the commission for negotiating the treaty of Ghent in 1814. The office of Secretary of State was ably filled by him during both terms of Mr. Monroe's administration. After he retired from the presidency, he was returned as a representative in Congress, where he remained seventeen years, until his sudden death February 21, 1848.

extending a highway from the Ohio River to some river flowing into the Atlantic. In 1812 the work was begun, and in this administration it was completed from Cumberland, on the Potomac, to Zanesville. It furnished a much easier way to



OPENING OF THE ERIE CANAL

the West. This road was called the Cumberland, or the National, Road.

In western Pennsylvania and Maryland, where similar roads had already been opened, a considerable trade was carried on by the Conestoga wagons,<sup>1</sup> which were large and capable of carrying heavy loads. They were covered with white cotton cloth stretched firmly over wooden frames to provide protection against

the weather, and were often drawn by four, six, and sometimes eight horses. They carried the products of the western farms to Philadelphia and Baltimore, and returned laden with goods to be sold to the farmers. It was to this western trade that these cities owed much of their growth and importance.

<sup>1</sup> See page 230.



**400. Erie Canal.** — Before the close of the first year of this administration, the Erie Canal, which connects Buffalo, on Lake Erie, with Albany, on the Hudson, was finished. De Witt Clinton, the governor of New York, had been one of the first to propose to the legislature to construct this canal, and he dug the first spadeful of earth at Albany. The canal was called "Clinton's Ditch." Five years before this canal was completed, freight had been carried from Albany to Buffalo by wagons for \$88 per ton; the boats on this canal carried it at first for \$22.50, and afterwards for \$6.50. The population of central New York increased so rapidly that the villages along the route of the canal soon grew into towns. This canal afforded transportation for western produce, and the immense commerce between Lake Erie and the Hudson added greatly to the commercial importance of the city of New York. Its success proved the need of such works in other parts of the country. Many thought the right of Congress to make these improvements was implied in the Constitution; others considered that such work should be done by each state. Jefferson had recommended an amendment to the Constitution giving the states the surplus revenue to be used for roads, canals, and schools. Bills appropriating public money for such improvements had been passed by Congress, but Madison and Monroe had vetoed them, on the ground that they were unconstitutional. 1825

**401. Death of Adams and of Jefferson.** — The fiftieth anniversary of our independence was celebrated July 4, 1826. The day was also made memorable by the death of John Adams and of his friend, Thomas Jefferson. Each had served his country in prominent and honored positions. Both had signed the Declaration of Independence, and both had been on the committee that framed it. Each had been foreign minister, Vice President, and President. The whole country mourned over the loss of the two aged statesmen. 1826

**402. The Protective Tariff.** — During the war with England, the people of the United States were unable to buy foreign

goods, and they began to manufacture for themselves. At first, they made only coarse homespun, but they soon began to use improved machinery. Factories multiplied to supply the wants of the people. They were built mostly in New England, where the rivers furnished abundant water power, and the scarcity of fertile land made agriculture comparatively unprofitable. After the treaty of peace, English goods were brought into the country and sold much cheaper than they could be made in America, because there were a great many cotton mills in England, and the workmen there received lower wages. The manufacturers sought help from Congress. The duties on imported goods were increased, with the result that English goods sold higher than those made in the United States. This tariff was called a "protective tariff." The tariff planned by Hamilton, though partially protective, was mainly a revenue tariff. The Northern States of the East received most of the advantage from this new law. The Southern States, on the other hand, were almost entirely agricultural, and they objected to the high tariff because it compelled them to pay more for their goods. They declared it unconstitutional, because it bestowed benefits upon one section of the country, while it was injurious to the other.<sup>1</sup> In 1828 Congress passed another bill for the protection of raw materials for manufacture, such as wool and hemp; this won the approval of the West. Daniel Webster voted for it, and John C. Calhoun led the opposition. The new tariff thus increased the bitter feeling between the two sections of the Union.

**403. New Political Parties.** — The old Federalist party had no followers left, and presented no ticket. The Republicans

<sup>1</sup> The feeling against the tariff bill was explained by a Southern senator in this way: A Northern farmer sends one hundred bales of wool to a mill in New England, to be made into cloth, and a Southern planter sends one hundred bales of cotton to Old England to be made into calico. They both bring their cloth and calico to Charleston on the same day. The Northern man is allowed to land his goods free of duty, but the Southern man must leave forty of his bales in the customhouse to pay for the privilege of landing his remaining sixty.

were divided into two parties, which had taken the names of Democrats and National Republicans. Those who were in favor of a high tariff and of paying for internal improvements out of the public treasury, which together formed the "American System," thus giving more power to the Federal government, were National Republicans. Henry Clay was their most prominent leader.

**404. Presidential Election.** — The National Republicans nominated President Adams and Richard Rush; the Democrats, General Jackson and John C. Calhoun. Jackson's military victories had made him so great a favorite with the people that he was elected by a large majority. 1828

### QUESTIONS FOR STUDY

Explain the "Missouri Compromise." State your opinion of the Monroe Doctrine. Why was cheap and rapid transportation necessary for the development of this country? Give the history of Florida from its discovery to the time when it was purchased by the United States. Why did the Northern States become free states, and the Southern, slave states?

## CHAPTER IV

### SECTIONAL DIFFERENCES

#### JACKSON'S<sup>1</sup> ADMINISTRATION — 1829-37

**405. Changes.** — The presidency of General Jackson began a new period in the history of our country. The old statesmen who had helped to frame the Constitution, and who until

<sup>1</sup> Andrew Jackson's parents were emigrants from Ireland. Their new home was in the Waxhaw Settlement, North Carolina, near the boundary line of the state. Andrew was born in 1767, soon after the death of his father. He was only thirteen years old when he shouldered his musket and joined the men who followed Sumter in Carolina, but he was soon taken prisoner. After the war he worked at the saddler's trade, and taught a country school. Every hour that he could spare was given to the study of law. After his admission to the bar he removed to Nashville, where he became so widely known and so popular that he was sent as the first representative to Congress from Tennessee. The next year he was elected to the Senate, but he resigned his seat to accept the position of judge of the supreme court in Tennessee; he continued in the

now had managed the new government, had nearly all disappeared from public life; and new men with new ideas were taking their places.

**406. The "Spoils System."** — It had been said that Jackson would "reward his friends and punish his enemies." The



ANDREW JACKSON

prophecy was correct. In the first year of his administration he removed about two thousand federal officers, and appointed in their places his friends and those who had been of political service to him. The Presidents who preceded him had in all made only seventy-four removals. Washington was soon crowded with office seekers. One of the senators, speaking of this custom, said that politicians could "see nothing wrong in the rule, to the victors be-

long the spoils"; from his remark this system of appointment became known as the "spoils system." The Presidents succeeding Jackson adopted it, and it was productive of much evil.

**407. Black Hawk War.** — The Sacs and Foxes had made attacks upon the white settlers living on the land in the Northwest Territory which these Indians had sold to the gov-

office six years. His military fame is connected with the Creek War in 1813, with his victory at New Orleans, and with the Seminole War. In 1823 he was again in the Senate, and a few years later he was elected President. Jackson had grown up among the people of the West, and that young and growing section regarded him with great pride and strong affection. His military success had everywhere won for him respect and confidence. He was honest and brave, but he was bitterly hostile to all who opposed him. His experience in war had increased his naturally strong will, and his administration was marked by the same firm hand that had characterized his career in the wars with the English and the Indians. He died in 1845.

ment. They were led by their chief, Black Hawk. General Scott was sent to drive them back. After two battles, in which the Indians suffered defeat, they were driven to a reservation in what is now the state of Iowa. 1832 Black Hawk was captured, and the fighting ceased. This warlike chief afterwards made a visit to some of the eastern cities of the United States, and saw that it was useless for his savage warriors to contend with their more powerful white brothers.

**408. The Tariff and State Rights.** — The high protective tariff continued to irritate the people of the South, and their leaders firmly opposed it. It began a great controversy between the North and the South in regard to the nature of the Constitution, in which Calhoun,<sup>1</sup> Clay,<sup>2</sup> Webster,<sup>3</sup> and Hayne,<sup>4</sup> the most eminent statesmen of that time, took part. There were then many who believed that, as the Union had been formed by the states vol-



WEBSTER

<sup>1</sup> John Caldwell Calhoun, a native of South Carolina, was born in 1782. First a member of the legislature of that state, he was afterwards elected to the United States Senate, where his genius and eloquence made his name familiar in every part of the Union. He was a strong advocate of state rights, and his active opposition to the tariff won for him the name of the "great nullifier." At one time he held the office of Secretary of War. He was Vice President during John Quincy Adams's administration, and during a part of Jackson's term. He was in the Senate at the time of his death in 1850.

<sup>2</sup> Henry Clay, the senator who offered the Compromise Bill in 1850, was also the pride of the American people. He was born in Virginia in 1777, but his father removed to Lexington, Kentucky, when he was quite a child. After he had been chosen as a candidate for the presidency, he was told that his Compromise Bill would probably keep him from being elected. He answered, "I would rather be *right* than be President." He died in 1852.

<sup>3</sup> Daniel Webster was born at Salisbury, New Hampshire, in 1782. Although his parents were poor, they felt the importance of educating their children. He was twice sent to Congress from his native state, and twice from Massachusetts after his removal to Boston. He became a prominent leader in the House, but it was in the Senate that he won his greatest fame, chiefly by his brilliant speeches in his debates with Senators Hayne and Calhoun. He died in 1852, four months after Clay.

<sup>4</sup> Robert Young Hayne was born in Colleton District, South Carolina, in 1791. He was educated in Charleston, and was admitted to the bar before he was



untarily, it could continue to exist only by their consent. Senator Hayne, of South Carolina, in 1830 advocated, with powerful eloquence, this doctrine of state rights. He declared that each state had the right to resist, within her own borders, any act of Congress that was a violation of the Constitution. Daniel Webster, of Massachusetts, replied to him in a speech which is considered a masterpiece of oratory. He denied the independent rights of the states, and made an earnest plea for the preservation of the Union.

The attention of Congress, through the succeeding sessions, was given almost entirely to the tariff question. Mr. Calhoun, the great Southern leader, claimed for the states a right similar to that expressed in the Virginia and Kentucky Resolutions. He said that the Constitution had not given Congress the power to enact laws for a protective tariff, and that the states had the right to declare such laws null and void. He did not advise secession. He thought that the best way to preserve the Union was to check whatever might lead to a separation of the states

**409. Nullification.** — A convention of delegates met in South Carolina, and passed a resolution called the “Nullification Ordinance.” It declared the protective tariff a violation of the Constitution, pronounced the Tariff Act null and void, and said that the duties would not be paid in that state.

1832

The President instructed the customhouse officer at Charleston to collect the duties, and an armed vessel was sent to protect him. South Carolina threatened to secede if the tariff were forced upon her. Henry Clay offered a resolution in Congress for the gradual reduction of the tariff. Mr. Calhoun, who had resigned the office of Vice President and been reelected to the Senate, accepted the compromise as satis-

twenty-one. After serving two terms in the legislature of his state, he was elected to the United States Senate, where he became prominent by his strong opposition to the protective tariff and his eloquent defense of state rights. Soon after the passage of the Nullification Ordinance, he was elected governor of South Carolina. He died in Asheville, North Carolina, in 1840.

factory to the people of South Carolina. The resolution was adopted by Congress, and quiet was restored.

**410. First National Convention.** — This year the political parties nominated their candidates in national conventions. Previous nominations had been made by caucuses in Congress, by state legislatures, or by state conventions. 1832 Henry Clay was the candidate of the National Republicans, and President Jackson, of the Democrats. Jackson was successful, and Martin Van Buren was elected Vice President.

**411. The National Bank.** — A bill for rechartering the United States Bank passed both houses of Congress; but the President refused to sign the bill because he thought it unconstitutional. The National Republicans, believing that the bank was necessary to supply a uniform currency to the country and to transact business for the government, wished to see it continued. Jackson thought that the bank had not served its purpose, that it was being used dishonestly in the management of elections, and he opposed it violently. Soon after vetoing the bill for the renewing of the charter he was reelected by a large majority, and he therefore believed that a majority of the people agreed with him in his opposition.

1833 Before the charter expired he had all the public money removed from the bank. Many disapproved this act, and were very bitter in their opposition to him. The people soon became divided into two parties. Those who opposed President Jackson called themselves Whigs, in imitation of the Whigs in England who had opposed George III; those who favored Jackson were called Democrats. There were many people in the South who did not favor nullification, but they thought that the President had no right to use military force to put it down. John Tyler, of Virginia, was one of the leaders of these men, who united with the National Republicans in their opposition to the President, and took the name of State Rights Whigs.

**412. Removal of the Indians Westward.** — During the first year

of this term, a bill was passed in Congress for moving all the Indian tribes to a region west of the Mississippi, where they could not endanger the settlements along the frontier, and where they could live in a way that suited their wild habits. The Indian Territory was afterwards organized, and a portion of it given to the Cherokees of Georgia, the task of removing them being assigned to General Scott.

**413. Seminole War.** — Although the Seminole Indians in

1835-42 Florida had promised to leave their old homes and

hunting grounds, some refused to go. More than a thousand slaves had fled into Florida while it belonged to Spain, and were living with the Indians. Many of them had married Indians, and the Seminoles, hiding them in the swamps and everglades, refused to give them up. General Scott commanded the military force sent against them to recover the slaves, and to compel the Indians to go. One hundred and fifty of these soldiers were surprised on their march, and almost exterminated, by a body of Seminoles in ambush. On the same day, the Indian chief Osceola, and his warriors, murdered a party of officers dining at a house not far from the scene of battle. The whole country along the Florida border was exposed to the horrors of Indian war. Slaves were captured, houses were robbed and burned, and their inmates were compelled to flee to the forts for safety. At last Osceola, though received into the American camp under a flag of truce, was seized and imprisoned. He was sent to St. Augustine, and then to Fort Moultrie in Charleston harbor, where he died.

**414. Battle of Okeechobee.** — Colonel Zachary Taylor fought a desperate battle with the Indians on Christmas, 1837. The

1837 Seminoles were on an island in Lake Okeechobee, and the soldiers had to pass several hundred yards through water breast-deep to reach them. Many of his soldiers were killed, but the Indians were defeated. After this battle, the savages fled to the Everglades. The fighting did not cease until 1842. By that time, so many of the

Seminoles had been killed that the tribe was not able longer to resist.

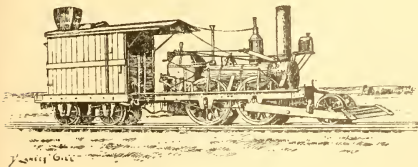
**415. Abolition Movement.** — William Lloyd Garrison began in Boston the publication of a paper called "The Liberator," in which he urged the immediate emancipation of all the slaves, and condemned slavery in such harsh terms that he aroused much bitter feeling. He delivered lectures on the subject, and many societies were formed throughout the Northern States for the purpose of bringing others to the same belief. Other newspapers published articles upon the subject, pamphlets were sent everywhere, speeches were made, and candidates who favored abolition were elected to public office.



WILLIAM LLOYD  
GARRISON

In 1831 an insurrection of slaves in Virginia, led by Nat Turner, in which sixty white persons were killed, alarmed the Southern people, who thought it a result of the abolition movement, and the slavery question attracted more attention than it had ever done before. The Abolitionists began to petition Congress to abolish slavery in the District of Columbia; the Southern members opposed these petitions. After heated discussion, a resolution was passed that no petitions in regard to slavery should be received in Congress.

**416. The First Railroad** in America, about three miles long, was built from Quincy, Massachusetts, to the granite quarries. For two years horses were used to move the cars on this road; at the end of that time, other



THE FIRST LOCOMOTIVE

roads had been constructed. The first steam locomotive in America was made by George Stephenson in England, and was brought to America in 1831. The first one made in America

was called the "Best Friend," and was used on the South Carolina Railroad, from Charleston to Hamburg. Before the trial was made, many thought that the wheels would spin around upon the track without being able to move the train. This new means of conveyance was the mightiest power for growth and advancement which had yet been known. Since then, railroads have been built from one end of the land to the other, and cross it in every direction. Wherever the railroad has pushed its way, the wild forests and prairies have been brought under the influence of civilization. Villages have sprung up, farms have been planted, churches and schoolhouses have followed, and the principal railroad centers have grown into large cities. Before the close of Jackson's administration there were fifteen hundred miles of railroad in the United States.

**417. New States.** — Arkansas became one of the United States in 1836, and the next year Michigan was admitted.

**418. Presidential Election.** — At President Jackson's suggestion, the Democrats nominated Martin Van Buren for the next President. The Whigs divided their votes among William Henry Harrison, Daniel Webster, Hugh L. White, and W. P. Mangum. Van Buren's success was easily won; but as there had been no election of Vice President, the Senate chose Richard M. Johnson, of Kentucky.

#### VAN BUREN'S<sup>1</sup> ADMINISTRATION — 1837-41

**419. The Panic.** — Before Van Buren's term, the United States had been in a very prosperous condition. The war debt had been paid, and there were nearly

<sup>1</sup> Martin Van Buren was born at Kinderhook, New York, in 1782. He attended the academy of the village until he began the study of law. He was a member of the New York legislature, and then attorney-general in the same state. After taking a prominent part in the convention which revised the constitution of his state, he was successively a senator in Congress, governor of New York, Secretary of State in President Jackson's Cabinet, minister to England, Vice President, and President. He and his friends established the Free Democratic, or Free-soil, Party, so called because it was opposed to slavery in the territories. He died in 1862.



forty million dollars in the treasury, which had been in part divided among the different states. But there were strong influences at work undermining this apparently sound condition. A great many banks had been established throughout the country, and these were circulating more paper money than they could pay for in gold and silver; business was being done largely on credit, and many speculations entered into. This state of things continued two or three years, and then failures began; those in New York city amounted to one hundred million dollars. The banks suspended specie payments, which means that they were not able to redeem their money. The panic extended throughout the country.



MARTIN VAN BUREN

A petition from merchants and bankers was sent to the President, asking for more time to pay the duties for which they had given bonds, and for a change in the law requiring the duties to be paid in gold or silver. He extended the time for collecting the duties, and called an extra session of Congress, at which an act was passed for issuing ten million dollars in treasury notes — that is, paper money. This somewhat relieved the people, but industry and time were required to bring back the prosperity of other days.

**420. Subtreasury Bill.** — At President Van Buren's suggestion Congress passed a bill, known as the Subtreasury Bill, by which the revenues should be paid in gold and silver, and by which the public money, instead of being deposited in banks, should be kept in specially built vaults in various cities, and placed in the keeping of public officers called subtreasurers. 1840

**421. The Canadian Rebellion.** — Some of the people of Canada determined to assert their independence as the United States

had done. There were persons in New York, near the Canada boundary, who sympathized with the Canadians and went to help them. As the United States was then at  
 1837 peace with Great Britain, the President called them home, and ordered them to have nothing to do with the affairs of Canada. The rebellion was soon crushed.

422. “Tippecanoe and Tyler too.” — The Democratic party had not been responsible for the panic, yet this was the cause of its defeat at the next election. It renominated  
 1840 Martin Van Buren. The Whigs nominated William Henry Harrison, who had won renown in the battle of Tippecanoe during the Indian war of 1811; John Tyler was their

candidate for Vice President. Some one laughed at Harrison’s Western habits, and said, “Give him a log cabin and a barrel of hard cider, and he will be satisfied.” This only added to the enthusiasm of the most enthusiastic election campaign the country had ever seen. Mass meetings were held, men and boys joined in torchlight processions in which they carried log cabins and cider barrels, and hurraed as they marched for



WILLIAM HENRY HARRISON

“Tippecanoe and Tyler too.” The election was a great victory for the Whigs and their favorites.

#### ADMINISTRATIONS OF HARRISON<sup>1</sup> AND TYLER—1841-5

423. The President’s Death. — President Harrison had filled his office just one month, when a severe attack of pneumonia suddenly ended his life. According to the Constitution, Mr.

<sup>1</sup> William Henry Harrison was born in Berkeley, Charles City County, Virginia, in 1773. His father, Benjamin Harrison, was one of the signers of the Declaration of Independence. At nineteen he began the life of a soldier, and went on several expeditions against the Indians in the Northwest. After the

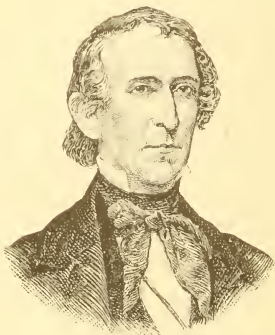
Tyler<sup>1</sup> succeeded President Harrison, and was inaugurated as the tenth President.

**424. The Northeastern Boundary.** — The boundary between Maine and New Brunswick had never been settled, and there

was a tract claimed by both governments. A treaty with Great Britain in 1842 decided exactly the line of division between the United States and the British provinces on the northeast.

**425. The Telegraph.** — The first telegraph line was completed in 1844 between Washington city and Baltimore, by Professor Morse, the inventor.

He had secured a patent for his invention, but not having sufficient money to give it a satisfactory trial, he asked assistance from Congress. After many delays, thirty thousand dollars were appropriated to pay the cost of an experimental line, and he was given the use of a room in the Capitol while he was making his preparations. His invention proved to be a wonderful success. The first message was, "What hath God wrought!" It was dictated by Miss Ellsworth, the daughter of the Commissioner of Patents in Washington. The first news sent was of the nomina-



JOHN TYLER



S. F. B. MORSE

organization of the Northwest Territory, he was made secretary, and two years later he was chosen by the people of that section to represent them in Congress. In 1801 he was appointed governor of the Territory of Indiana. While in that position he made several important treaties with the Indians, and often distinguished himself in war with them on the frontier. In the War of 1812, he was a dashing leader until its close. When peace was made, he again entered Congress.

<sup>1</sup> John Tyler, a son of one of the governors of Virginia, was born in Charles

tion of Mr. Polk for President by the Democratic convention in Baltimore. His friends hastened to Washington by the first train to inform him, but the telegraph announced the news before their arrival.

**1845-6**      **426. New States.**—Florida was admitted as a state in 1845. Iowa was received in 1846.

**427. Texas wins Independence.**—Mexico, including her province of Texas, had in 1821 won independence from Spain. To



AT THE ALAMO

induce settlements in Texas, Mexico had offered land to those who would emigrate to the province, and a large number of people went there from the United States; they soon became discontented under the government of Mexico, made a declara-

City County, Virginia, in 1790. He graduated at William and Mary College, and, after devoting some time to the study of law, was admitted to the bar. His political life began in the legislature of Virginia. He was at different times a member of Congress, governor of his state, Vice President, and President. He cast his lot with the South when the Southern States seceded. He was president of the Peace Congress assembled at the call of Virginia in 1861. At the time of his death in 1862 he was a member of the Confederate Congress.

tion of independence, elected Henry Smith as governor, and prepared to fight. General Sam Huston (hews'-ton) was made commander in chief of the army. A flag "with a single star" had been chosen as an emblem for the new republic. Fighting soon began. At Fort Alamo the Texans fought against a large force of Mexicans under Santa Anna, until every Texan was killed. Later the Mexican army was completely routed, and Santa Anna made a prisoner. He agreed to acknowledge the independence of Texas, but the Mexican government refused to ratify the agreement. One year later the new republic was formally recognized by the United States, and then by France, England, and other European powers.

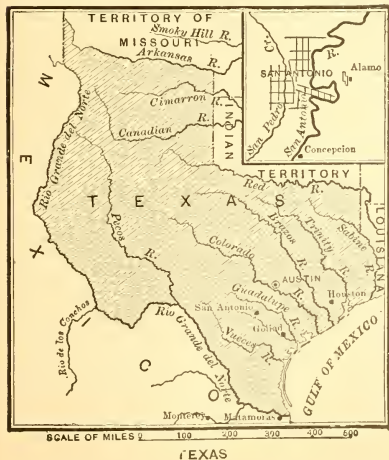


SANTA ANNA

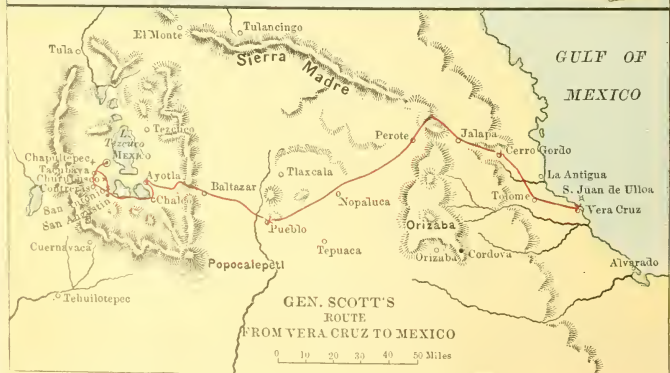
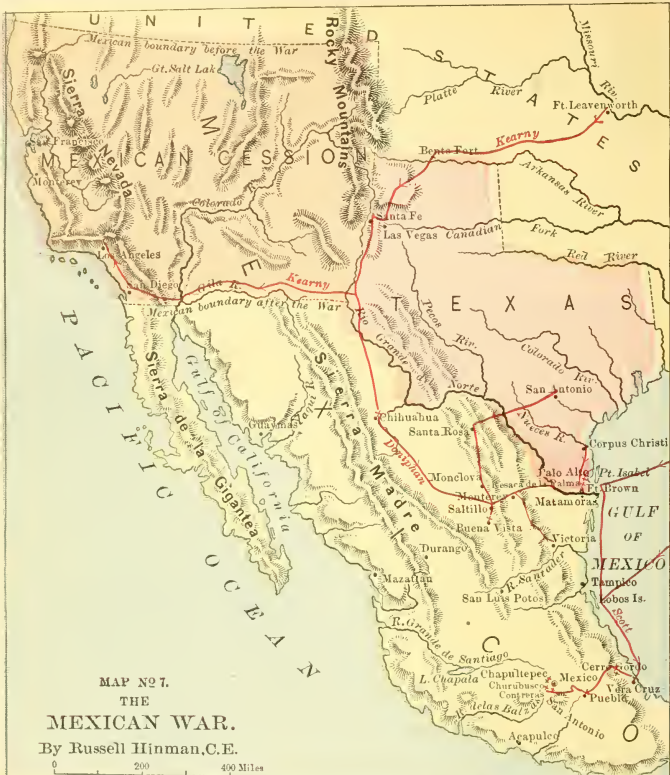
The same year Texas applied for admission into the Union. Our government hesitated to annex Texas while Mexico was unwilling to acknowledge its independence, for such an act would involve the United States in a war with Mexico.

Moreover, the North opposed annexation, because it would add a vast region of slave territory; while the South favored it, because it would increase her representation in Congress.

**428. Annexation of Texas.**—The debate on this question lasted until the presidential campaign of 1844, when it became the main point of issue. The Democratic candidates, James K. Polk, of







Tennessee, and George M. Dallas, of Pennsylvania, favored annexation; the Whigs, who opposed it, nominated Henry Clay for President. As Mr. Polk's election showed that a majority of the people desired annexation, Congress passed the bill, and President Tyler signed it on March 3, 1845, just before his term of office expired. Texas accepted the terms offered, and next December the "Lone Star State" became a member of the Union.

### QUESTIONS FOR STUDY

What is meant by the "spoils system"? What can be said in favor of it? To what evils does it lead? Is the government money deposited in banks now? In what way have banks been connected with the history of our country? Why should a Southern planter object to the high protective tariff? Why should a New England manufacturer favor it? What did the people of South Carolina declare they would do, if they were forced to pay this tax? What did President Jackson understand the Constitution to require of him in this case? What is the veto power? What advantage has it? What was the abolition movement? Describe the progress of settlements in the West, and state the causes which promoted development in that section. To what cities did Western produce find its way? By what means of transportation? What parts of the country depended upon Savannah and Charleston for their markets? What effects have railroads produced in this country? What improvements have been made in railroads?

## CHAPTER V

### WAR WITH MEXICO

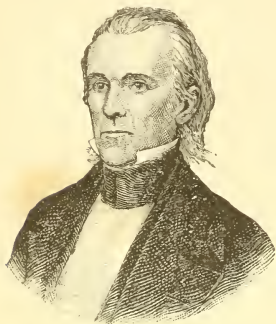
#### POLK'S<sup>1</sup> ADMINISTRATION — 1845-9

**429. The Northwestern Boundary.** — The United States claimed all the country watered by the Columbia River, and the British government claimed the northern part of America along the Pacific coast. They had agreed

1846

<sup>1</sup>James Knox Polk was born in Mecklenburg County, North Carolina, in 1795. When he was eleven years old, his father's family removed to Tennessee. After he had completed his education and studied law, he began the practice

that Oregon should be occupied by the traders of both countries, jointly, for a certain number of years. In 1846, a treaty was made by which the country was divided, and the 49th parallel was made the boundary of the United States. Two years afterwards the territory of Oregon was organized, from which have been formed the states of Oregon, Washington, and Idaho.



JAMES K. POLK

**430. Beginning of the War with Mexico.** — Texas claimed the Rio Grande for her southwestern boundary, but Mexico insisted that her territory extended 1846 to the Nueces River. The President sent General Zachary Taylor with troops to take possession of

the land between the two rivers. On the 11th of March, 1846, he marched from Corpus Christi, on the border, to Fort Brown, on the Rio Grande. The Mexicans, considering this movement an invasion of their country, sent a force to attack General Taylor. In May they were defeated at Palo Alto and Resaca de la Palma, and then retreated to the western side of the river. General Taylor followed, and took possession of Matamoras. War had begun, and preparations for continuing it were made without delay; a call was made for fifty thousand volunteers.

**431. Mexico invaded.** — The United States army was to invade Mexican territory in three divisions. General Taylor's command was to move forward from Matamoras; General Kearny's (kär'-nī) to pass through New Mexico to California; and

of his profession in Maury County. The reputation which he made soon won for him election to the Tennessee legislature. He was a member of Congress for fourteen years, and during a part of that time was speaker of the House of Representatives. On his return to Tennessee, he was elected governor of the state. Three months after the close of his presidential term, he died at his home in Nashville from the effects of a short illness.

General Wool's to march into the northern provinces of Mexico.

Reënforcements increased General Taylor's army, and in September he advanced to Monterey (mon-tā-ray'). There were strong forts in different parts of the town defended by heavy cannon. General Taylor led the attack on one side, while one of his generals advanced upon it through the mountains from another direction. At the end of four days the place surrendered.

A few weeks later, Saltillo (säl-teel'-yō) was taken by his forces; afterwards Tampico was captured by Commodore Perry, with his fleet.

**432. Battle of Buena Vista.** — General Scott was sent with an army against Vera Cruz (vē'-rā krōōth) with instructions to proceed from that place to the city of Mexico. He was made commander in chief, and a large part of General Tay-



GENERAL TAYLOR AT BUENA VISTA

lor's force was ordered to reënforce him. Santa Anna, at the head of the Mexican forces, marched to attack Taylor's weakened force at Saltillo. Taylor, however, stationed his troops in a narrow mountain pass at Buena Vista (bwā'nā vēs'-tā), eleven miles from Saltillo, and waited for the enemy. A battle was fought there, in which the Mexicans were compelled to retreat, and their strength so broken that General Scott was able to move all his army against Vera Cruz and the city of Mexico.

**433. Conquest of New Mexico and California.** — In June, 1846, General Kearny began his march from Fort Leavenworth, Kansas, and met little difficulty in obtaining possession of New Mexico.



CAPTAIN FRÉMONT

Before the war, Captain John C. Frémont had been sent to survey the country between the Rocky Mountains and the Pacific Ocean. With the assistance of Commodore Stockton of the United States navy, who had been sent to the Pacific because of the prospect of war with Mexico, and who now arrived at Monterey, California, Frémont succeeded in forcing the Mexicans into the southern part of the country. Then Kearny arrived, and soon after, in January, 1847, California declared herself independent of Mexico, and Kearny assumed the governorship.

**434. Capture of Vera Cruz and Fall of Mexico.** — In March, 1847, General Scott landed his army near Vera Cruz, and for nine days poured a destructive fire upon the city from batteries on land and the fleet in the harbor.

At the end of that time, the Mexicans surrendered to him the city and the castle.

General Scott's next movement was toward the city of Mexico. On the way he found Santa Anna's army strongly fortified in a rocky gap of the mountains. The United States engineers, Robert E. Lee and Gustave T. Beauregard,



opened a road through the mountains, by which the forces were led beyond the enemy. The Mexicans were surprised, and a great victory was gained. Many of them fled. Santa Anna, in his haste, left his wooden leg, which was brought to the United States, and dressed in a handsome boot for exhibition. The city of Mexico was defended by forts and castles along the roads that led to it. On September 12, General Scott's army fought all day very near the capital. When night came, the Mexican soldiers left the city, and the next morning the American army took possession.

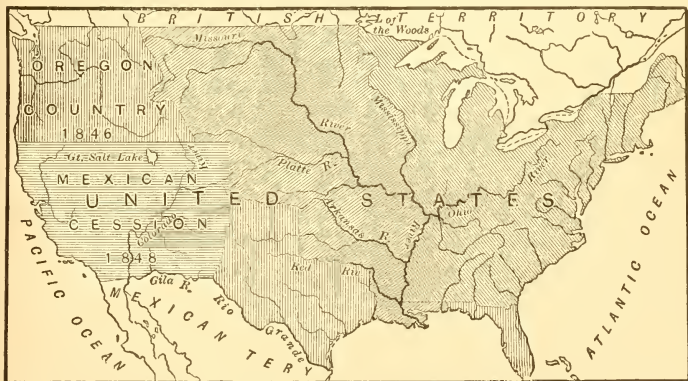
Sept. 13,  
1847



GENERAL SCOTT

**435. Treaty of Peace.**—The war came to an end soon after these victories, and a treaty of peace, known as the treaty of Guadalupe Hidalgo (gwä-dä-lōō'-pä ē-däl'-gō), from the place where it was signed, was concluded on February 2, 1848. It fixed the boundary between Texas and Mexico at the Rio Grande, and ceded to the United States the territory which now includes all of California, Nevada, and Utah, nearly all of Arizona, and

Feb. 2,  
1848



THE UNITED STATES IN 1848

parts of New Mexico, Colorado, and Wyoming—in all over five hundred thousand square miles. In return, our government paid fifteen million dollars, and became responsible for the debts (amounting to about three million dollars) which Mexico owed to citizens of the United States. This war cost the United States about twenty-five thousand men and one hundred million dollars.



DISCOVERY OF GOLD

**436. Gold in California.**—The quiet of peace had scarcely settled over the country and its new possessions, when a discovery was made which caused a rush of fortune seekers to California. While cutting a millrace on a branch of the Sacramento River, a workman noticed in the sand below the dam a shining substance which he found to be gold. He and the owner of the mill tried to keep the discovery a secret, but the news spread rapidly through California, and then to the Atlantic States, causing the wildest excitement. Thousands of men left their homes to find the gold fields of California. Some of them made the long, peril-

1848

ous voyage around Cape Horn, others crossed the Isthmus of Panama to sail northward from its western shore, while many struggled across the continent over plains and mountains, spurred by the hope of riches at the end of the journey. Two years after this discovery, the population of San Francisco had increased to one hundred thousand. Immense fortunes were made, and it has been estimated that, by the year 1870, one thousand million dollars' worth of gold were taken from the mines of California.

**437. The Wilmot Proviso.** — A short time after war was declared between Mexico and the United States, the President asked Congress for an appropriation that he might treat with Mexico for a portion of territory not then included in Texas. While a bill for granting this money was before Congress, Mr. Wilmot, of Pennsylvania, added an amendment which excluded slavery from the territory that might be annexed from Mexico. This amendment, called the "Wilmot Proviso," produced great excitement in Congress, and among the people everywhere. The Senate voted against it, and it was lost. Those who favored this proviso were called Free-soilers.

Aug.,  
1846

**438. New States.** — During the excited discussions on this subject, Iowa was admitted in 1846, and Wisconsin in 1848.

1846-8

**439. General Taylor elected President.** — The time to elect a new President was again approaching, and the Whigs nominated General Zachary Taylor, of Louisiana, who had distinguished himself in the Mexican War, and Millard Fillmore, of New York. The Democrats selected Lewis Cass, of Michigan, and the new Free-soil party nominated ex-President Van Buren for President. General Taylor received a large majority of the votes.

1848

### QUESTIONS FOR STUDY

Upon what did the Americans base their claims to the Oregon country? What were the British claims? How was the Oregon question

finally settled? Who made the first settlements in Texas? What was the cause of the controversy over the annexation of Texas? Why was Vera Cruz important? Why did the Americans wish to take the city of Mexico? Draw a map of Mexico and indicate upon it Taylor's line of march. Show also the march of Scott's army. Show the boundaries of the territory acquired by this war. Of what recent event does the discovery of gold in California remind you? What difference is there in the means of travel to the new mines? Compare the size of the United States at the close of the Revolution with that at the close of Polk's administration.

## CHAPTER VI

### SLAVERY AND STATE RIGHTS

ADMINISTRATIONS OF TAYLOR<sup>1</sup> AND FILLMORE — 1849-53

**440. California.** — The wonderful discoveries of gold made the territories along the Pacific grow rapidly in value and importance. A part of California lay south of the parallel  $36^{\circ} 30'$ , 1849 agreed upon as the dividing line between the free territories and the slave states. The Northerners wanted slavery excluded from the gold region, and the Southerners thought they ought to have the right to take their slaves with them to the mines. Congress was the scene of long and heated debates upon this question. The press of both sections kept it before the people. The population of the mining region increased so rapidly that, in 1849, California asked to



ZACHARY TAYLOR

<sup>1</sup> Zachary Taylor was born in Orange County, Virginia, in 1784. When he was but a few months old, his father moved to a farm near Louisville, Kentucky. That part of the country was then in the backwoods, and the boy grew up with few educational advantages. The first twenty-four years of his life were spent at work upon the farm; at the end of that time, having received an appointment as lieutenant, he entered the army. He inherited a soldierly courage from his father, who had been an officer in the Revolutionary army. We hear of him afterwards drawing his sword in battle with the Indians along the border, fighting the British in 1812, leading his men into Florida to drive back the Seminoles, and marching triumphantly into Mexico, winning

be admitted as a state. A constitution forbidding slavery had previously been adopted.

**441. The Five Bleeding Wounds.** — The “Great Trio,” Calhoun, Clay, and Webster, were, in 1850, again members of Congress, and each took a prominent part in the debates that were then interesting the people. The 1850 trouble about the admission of California had not been ended, when New Mexico and Utah requested to be admitted to the Union. The South contended that Congress ought to have nothing to do with slavery in the territories, and that when states were admitted the question should be left for them to decide. The people of the slave states said they were willing to divide the public land with the North, but they were not willing to give up all right to it, because they had done as much as any other section to gain it, both by enlisting men in the army and by contributing money. At this time, Texas claimed the Rio Grande to its source for her western boundary, and this claim included a part of New Mexico. The North was also making a movement to abolish the slave trade in the District of Columbia. At the same time slaveholders complained that the old law for the arrest and return of slaves who ran away to the free states was not enforced. Mr. Clay called these questions, then before Congress, the “five bleeding wounds.”

**442. The Compromise, or Omnibus, Bill.** — Mr. Clay offered a set of resolutions by which he hoped these wounds might be healed. It was called the “Omnibus Bill” because 1850 it came before Congress in the shape of one bill covering all the difficulties under discussion. It provided: first, that California should be admitted according to her constitution; second, that New Mexico and Utah<sup>1</sup> should be

victory after victory for the United States. His soldiers called him “Old Rough and Ready.” His popularity in the army made the people anxious to see him at the head of the government, and after his return from Mexico he was elected President. At that time his home was at Baton Rouge, Louisiana. He died in Washington, of bilious fever, in 1850.

<sup>1</sup> **New Mexico**, as organized in 1850, included nearly all of the present territories of New Mexico and Arizona; Utah included the present states of Nevada, Utah, and parts of Colorado and Wyoming.



organized into territories and left to decide the question of slavery for themselves; third, that Texas should be paid ten million dollars for her claim on New Mexico, and a boundary be made; fourth, that the slave trade should be abolished in the District of Columbia; fifth, that slaves who had left their masters should be arrested in the free states and returned to their owners. This last law was called the "Fugitive Slave Law." Each party found something to oppose in this bill. Continued and bitter debates in Congress agitated both sections. At last, the five divisions of the bill were adopted.

**443. California admitted.** — After the settlement of the question of slavery in the territories, California was received as one of the states of the Union in 1850.

**444. Death of Prominent Men.** — Mr. Calhoun's health had become so feeble that he was unable to deliver his speech on the Compromise, and it was read by one of the senators from Virginia. His death occurred a few weeks afterwards. In July of this year, President Taylor died in Washington, after a short illness. He was succeeded by the Vice President, Millard Fillmore.<sup>1</sup>

July 9,  
1850



MILLARD FILLMORE

Before the close of Fillmore's

<sup>1</sup> Millard Fillmore was born in Cayuga County, New York, in 1800. His home was then in the wilderness, the nearest house being four miles away, and he had no opportunities for gaining an education. When he was nineteen years old he had never seen a grammar or a geography. At the age of fourteen, he was apprenticed to a fuller, but he was so fond of books that he spent every spare moment in study. Before the last two years of his time had expired, he persuaded his master to release him, on his promise to pay. He then became clerk in a law office with the privilege of study when at leisure. Two years of this struggle to learn passed before he went to Buffalo. There he was admitted to the bar; in a few years, hard study and perseverance gained for him a place among the first lawyers of New York. At the age of twenty-eight, he was elected to the legislature of his state. He entered Congress a candidate of the Whig party, and remained there a series of years. He died of paralysis at his home in Buffalo in 1874.

administration another heavy loss came to the people of America in the death of two more of their greatest statesmen — Clay and Webster.

1852



CLAY'S KENTUCKY HOME

**445. Presidential Election.** — General Winfield Scott, the conqueror in the Mexican War, was now put forward by the Whigs as their candidate for President, and Franklin Pierce, of New Hampshire, by the Democrats.

1852

The candidate of the Free-soil party was John Parker Hale, also from New Hampshire. Franklin Pierce was elected, with William R. King, of Alabama, as Vice President.

PIERCE'S<sup>1</sup> ADMINISTRATION — 1853-7

**446. Gadsden Purchase.** — A short time after the beginning of this term a treaty was made with Mexico through James

<sup>1</sup> Franklin Pierce was born at Hillsboro, New Hampshire, in 1804. He graduated at Bowdoin College, Maine, and was afterwards admitted to the bar. He became first a member of the New Hampshire legislature, and then a member of Congress. He favored the doctrine of state rights, and opposed antislavery efforts. At the outbreak of the Mexican War, he joined a company of volunteers, but he was soon appointed colonel of a regiment enlisted for Mexico, and was afterwards commissioned a brigadier general. His gallantry in battle won for him the approval of his commander, and he was selected to aid in arranging for an armistice. At the expiration of his term as President, he made an extended tour through Europe, and then returned to his home in Concord, New Hampshire. He died in 1869.

Gadsden by which the disputed boundary with Mexico was decided, and a large tract of country, including part of what is now Arizona and New Mexico, was purchased for twenty million dollars. 1853



FRANKLIN PIERCE

**447. The Fugitive Slave Law** caused trouble in some of the Northern States. A slave was taken by force from the government officers in Syracuse, New York; two others were seized in the same way in Boston, Massachusetts, where the militia had to be called out to assist the officers. The legislatures of some of the states passed laws called "Personal

Liberty Bills," which required a trial by jury before a slave could be returned to his owner. The Southerners found that the recovery of fugitive slaves cost more money and trouble



THE UNITED STATES IN 1853

than they were worth, for they were of comparatively little value as laborers after their return.

**448. Kansas-Nebraska Bill.** — Senator Douglas, of Illinois,

introduced a bill in Congress for organizing the territories  
of Kansas and Nebraska, and al-  
1854 lowing the people there to decide  
the question of slavery for themselves. This  
method was called "squatter sovereignty,"  
and the settlers were called "squatters."  
These territories were within the region  
purchased from Louisiana, and north of  
latitude 36° 30'. If Kansas and Nebraska  
were admitted as slave states, the South  
would gain four senators and a certain  
number of representatives in Congress, which would add  
greatly to its power. The North was anxious to obtain the  
same advantage. Each section began to work for its own  
interests, and intense excitement was again aroused every-  
where. After much opposition the bill was finally passed.  
In order that the new territories might enter as free states,  
the antislavery party organized societies for raising money  
to send emigrants to Kansas and Nebraska. Some of the  
people of the South moved to Kansas with their slaves. The  
emigrants from the two sections hated each other, and this  
ill-will soon led to fighting and bloodshed, which grew to  
such proportions that the struggle has been called the  
"Kansas war." Arms were provided by the Northern societies  
for the emigrants they had sent. In Missouri, "Blue Lodges"  
were organized, and from farther west the "Jayhawkers"  
came to fight for the slaveholders. At one time each party  
had its own constitution and its own capital.



STEPHEN A. DOUGLAS

**449. The American Party.** — About this time, a new party  
was secretly organized under the name of the American party,  
with many members all over the country. Its object was to  
keep foreigners and Roman Catholics from holding office in  
the government. On account of the secrecy of its meet-  
ings, those who belonged to this party were called "Know-  
nothings."

**450. Negotiations with Japan.** — The people of Japan had always kept the vessels of foreign nations away from their shores, except that the Dutch were permitted to enter one port. But before the close of this administration, Commodore M. C. Perry succeeded in making a treaty with that nation, by which two of its ports were opened to strangers. This treaty, and another made with China about ten years before, opened to the influences of Christianity and civilization an immense territory which had lain for ages under the darkness of heathenism.

**451. Presidential Election.** — The antislavery men in the North, — the Northern Democrats, the Whigs, the Free-soilers, and some members of the American party, — determined to prohibit slavery in the territories, united to form the Republican party. This party exists still, under the same name. There were, then, three political parties — the Democratic, the American, and the Republican. In 1856 the Republicans held their first national convention and nominated John C. Frémont for President. Millard Fillmore was the candidate of the American party. The Democrats declared themselves in favor of forbidding Congress to have anything to do with slavery in the territories, and the election of their candidates, James Buchanan, of Pennsylvania, and John C. Breckenridge, of Kentucky, showed that the majority of the people were satisfied with that decision.

#### BUCHANAN'S<sup>1</sup> ADMINISTRATION — 1857-61

**452. The Dred Scott Case.** — Dred Scott was the slave of Dr. Emerson, a surgeon of the United States army stationed in Missouri. When Emerson's duties called him to Illinois, he

<sup>1</sup> James Buchanan was born in Franklin County, Pennsylvania, in 1791. He graduated with high honor at Dickinson College, and after three years of study was admitted to the bar. The different offices of public trust given to him were creditably filled. He was a member of the Pennsylvania legislature, a representative in Congress, minister to Russia, United States senator, Secretary of State in President Polk's Cabinet, minister to England, and President. He died in 1868.



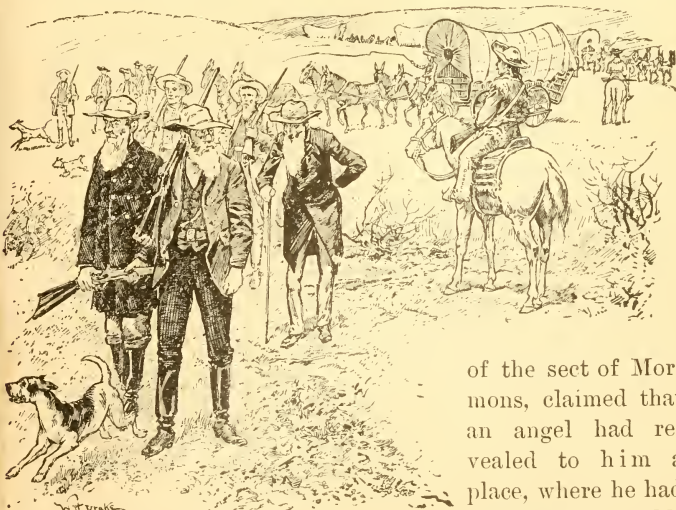
took Scott with him. After remaining there several years, he went to Minnesota Territory. On their return to Missouri, Scott claimed his freedom because his owner had taken him north of the "Compromise line."

The case was taken before the Supreme Court of the United States, and soon after Mr. Buchanan's inauguration the court decided that Dred Scott was not a citizen of Missouri, but a slave; that Congress had no right to prohibit a citizen from taking his slaves as property into any territory, and that he could claim its protection there. This decision declared the Missouri Compromise unconstitutional.



JAMES BUCHANAN

**453. The Mormons.**— Joseph Smith, of Vermont, the founder



MORMONS MOVING TO UTAH

of the sect of Mormons, claimed that an angel had revealed to him a place, where he had found plates of gold,

upon which were written by God the laws of a new religion. Smith called this revelation the "Book of Mormon." Those who became his followers were called Mormons. They attempted to make a settlement at Nauvoo, Illinois, but the people would not allow them to remain. After Smith's death Brigham Young became prophet, and was made governor. In 1849 he induced the Mormons to emigrate to Salt Lake, Utah, where, under his direction, they built a city which now contains a magnificent temple. They also made wonderful improvement in the productiveness of the country by bringing water from the mountains to their dry lands. They believed in polygamy, and opposed the authority of the Federal courts on this question. The President sent General Albert Sidney Johnston with troops to bring them into subjection, and quiet was at last restored.

**454. John Brown's Raid.** — John Brown, an old man who had taken a prominent part in the war in Kansas, began in October, 1859, to carry out a plan for freeing the slaves. He collected a party of armed men, and led them to Harpers Ferry, Virginia. There he took

Oct. 17,  
1859



JOHN BROWN

possession of the arsenal, intending to arm the slaves for an insurrection to begin in Virginia, and be carried onward through the South; but the negroes did not join him as he expected. The government sent a body of troops, commanded by Colonel Robert E. Lee, to capture him. Several of Brown's men in the arsenal were killed, and others wounded, before the party surrendered. A few escaped, but the rest were captured.

He and six of the men with him were afterwards tried, condemned, and executed as violators of the laws of Virginia.

**455.** Three New States were admitted during Buchanan's

presidency — Minnesota in 1858, Oregon in 1859, and Kansas, which had been the cause and the scene of so much trouble, in 1861. 1858-61

**456. Presidential Election.** — In 1860 four political parties nominated candidates for President. John C. Breckenridge, of Kentucky, was brought forward by the Southern Democrats; Stephen A. Douglas, of Illinois, by the Democrats of the North; John Bell, of Tennessee, by the Constitutional Union party, composed of the Americans and others; and Abraham Lincoln, of Illinois, by the Republicans. Abraham Lincoln was elected, though none of the electoral votes of the Southern States had been cast for him.

**457. Secession.** — The news of Lincoln's election produced intense excitement throughout the South. He had said publicly that the Union "could not permanently endure, half slave, half free." His party opposed slavery in the territories, and the action taken by the Northern States in reference to the return of runaway slaves, together with John Brown's raid, made the Southern people believe that the only means for preserving their constitutional rights was to separate from the Union. Among them were a few men who believed that the better plan would be to contend for their rights under the old flag. The legislature of South Carolina, having remained in session until after the election, at once called a convention to act for the state. The convention met, and on December 20, 1860, passed a resolution known as the "Ordinance of Secession." This ordinance declared "the union between the state of South Carolina and the other states united with her under the compact entitled the Constitution of the United States," to be dissolved. By February 1, 1861, six other states — Mississippi, Florida, Alabama, Georgia, Louisiana, and Texas — had followed South Carolina's example. The senators and representatives from each of these states resigned their seats in Congress, as soon as the ordinance of secession was passed by their state. Dec. 20, 1860

**458. The Southern Confederacy.** — Delegates were immedi-

ately elected by these states and sent to Montgomery, Alabama, where another union under another constitution was formed. To this new union was given the name of "The Confederate States of America."

Feb. 4,  
1861

The constitution was very much like that of the United States. A provisional government was organized for one year, until the proposed laws could be submitted to the people. Jefferson Davis,<sup>1</sup> of Mississippi, was elected President, and Alexander H. Stephens,<sup>2</sup> of Georgia, Vice President. Mr. Davis was inaugurated President, February 18, 1861.

<sup>1</sup> Jefferson Davis was born in what is now Todd County, Kentucky, June 3, 1808. A few years after his birth, his father, who had served as a captain in the siege of Savannah during the Revolution, removed to Mississippi Territory, and the boy grew up as a citizen of Mississippi. At the age of sixteen, he entered the Military Academy at West Point. After his graduation he entered service with the United States troops in the West, where the Indians had become unfriendly and troublesome. Nearly five years were passed upon the frontier, when he resigned his commission and returned home. There he married a daughter of Colonel Zachary Taylor, and engaged in the cultivation of cotton. His wife died, and in 1845 he married Miss Varina Howell, of Natchez. Shortly after this he was elected to Congress as a representative from Mississippi. When a call was made for volunteers in the war with Mexico, he resigned his seat in Congress and offered his sword for his country's service. He went as colonel of the First Mississippi Regiment, and won distinction as a brave officer under General Taylor's leadership.

After his return from Mexico, he was elected to the United States Senate, where he became an able champion of state rights. When the Southern States seceded from the Union, he was chosen President of the Confederacy, which office he continued to fill until the close of the war. He died December 6, 1889, at his home in Mississippi. The people of the South gave public expression of their grief and paid every honor possible to his memory. Meetings were held, and addresses were made rendering the highest tributes of praise to his character.

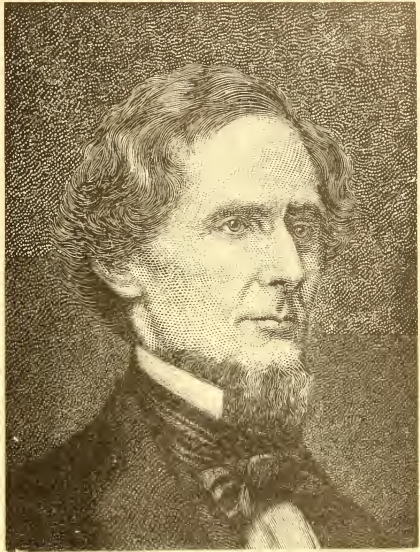
<sup>2</sup> Alexander Hamilton Stephens was born September 12, 1812, near Crawfordville, Georgia. His early education was obtained by attending the "old field school," in the neighborhood of his home. After his father's death, he was sent to a larger school in the town of Washington, Wilkes County. From Washington he went to the State University in Athens, where he remained until his graduation. Of his life there, he has said: "I was never absent from roll call without a good cause; was never fined; and, to the best of my knowledge, never had a demerit against me." He was engaged in the practice of law when elected to the Georgia legislature in 1836. At the age of thirty-one, he went as a representative from Georgia to Congress, where he continued until 1858 to take a prominent part in the debates which occupied the attention of that body. He served as Vice President of the Confederacy from the beginning until the close of the war. After the surrender of the

**459. The Peace Congress.** — Southern soldiers had fought in the army that had won independence for the states, and South-

ern statesmen

Feb. 4,  
1861 had helped  
to form and

build up the government under which the country had developed; hence there were many who loved the Union, and who would have been glad to find some honorable way for the return of the seceded states. Virginia proposed that a Peace Congress of delegates from all the states should be held in Washington. The delegates met in February. Seven Southern States were repre-



JEFFERSON DAVIS

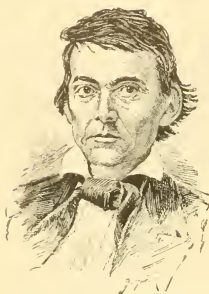
sented and, including Kansas, fourteen Northern States. It was hoped that some compromise might be reached; but the genius of Henry Clay, the great compromiser, was no longer present, and the differences in political principles were too radical. Nothing could be done to close the breach.

**460. Peace Commissioners.** — The Confederate government sent three commissioners to Washington to make a settlement with the United States government, to offer to pay off

Southern armies. Mr. Stephens was captured in his home by Federal soldiers, and sent as a prisoner to Fort Warren in Boston harbor. He was released on parole after an imprisonment of five months. When he returned to Georgia he wrote his "History of the War between the States," and "History of the United States." In 1873 he was again elected a representative in Congress. He was governor of Georgia at the time of his death in 1883.



its part of the public debt, and to demand its share of the public property. President Buchanan would not receive them.



ALEXANDER H. STEPHENS

Before this, the Confederate government had taken possession of all the forts and arsenals within its boundaries, except Fort Sumter at Charleston, South Carolina, Fort Pickens on Santa Rosa Island near Pensacola, Florida, and the forts on the islands near the southern coast of Florida. No effort had been made to retake them.

### QUESTIONS FOR STUDY

What was the feeling in the North about the extension of slavery in the territories? How did the Kansas-Nebraska bill affect the Missouri Compromise? What effect had the Dred Scott decision upon the Missouri Compromise? What efforts were made to make Kansas a free state? What duty did the Fugitive Slave Law require of the free states? How did the Abolitionists treat this law? What provision for fugitive slaves was made in the Ordinance of 1787? In the Constitution of the United States? What was John Brown's object in attempting to take the United States arsenal at Harper's Ferry? Trace the causes which brought about the excitement of the country at this time? What differences had arisen between the Democrats of the South and those of the North? On what occasions had secession been threatened before 1860? What reasons did the South now give for exercising the right of secession?

### TOPICS FOR REVIEW

1. State briefly the important events of Washington's administration.
2. Tell about Hamilton's plan for paying the debts of the United States.
3. Give an outline of the treaties with England and Spain during this administration.
4. Tell about the trouble which almost led to a war with France in Adams's administration, and about the excitement over the acts passed because of it.
5. What was the greatest event of Jefferson's administration, and how was it brought about?

6. Describe the events which led to the War of 1812, and enumerate the causes of the war.
7. Describe the great naval battles of this war.
8. Tell about the American invasions of Canada.
9. Where did the British invade the United States, and how were the armies repulsed ?
10. Give the history of the Hartford Convention.
11. Describe the battle of New Orleans.
12. What treaty closed the War of 1812, and what were its results ?
13. Tell about the two wars with the pirates of the Mediterranean.
14. What war led to the purchase of Florida ? Give an account of both events.
15. What is the "Monroe Doctrine" ? Give its history.
16. Who was Lafayette ? Describe his visit to the United States.
17. What effect did the internal improvements completed in John Quincy Adams's administration have upon interstate commerce ?
18. What system did Jackson inaugurate in the filling of public offices ?
19. Describe the Indian wars that occurred in his administration.
20. Give the history of Nullification in South Carolina.
21. Give an account of the panic of 1837.
22. In what way was the northeastern boundary settled ?
23. How was the northwestern boundary settled ?
24. Tell about the events which led to the Mexican War.
25. Give an outline history of this war.
26. Give the history of California.
27. What were the Fugitive Slave Laws, and Personal Liberty Bills ?
28. Tell something of the Kansas war.
29. Who are the Mormons ?
30. Tell about the discoveries of natural resources in the country at various times, and state the influence they have had upon its progress and wealth.
31. Give the history of the steamboat, from its invention to the present time.
32. How was the cotton gin invented, and what influence did it have upon the history of the country ?
33. Tell about the railroad, and the electric telegraph. What effect did they have upon the spread of civilization ?
34. Outline the history of the tariff to 1861.
35. Give the history of slavery in the North and the South.
36. Enumerate the important bills passed in regard to slavery, state the occasion for bringing each of them before Congress, and give the chief conditions of each.

37. Give brief outlines of the great statesmen who took part in the debates over the tariff and slavery.

38. Write a brief history of the rise of the various parties from Washington's administration to 1861.

39. Tell about the abolition movement.

40. Give an account of John Brown's raid.

41. Name the four candidates for President in 1860.

42. What was the object of the Peace Congress?

43. Make a table of the Presidents, using the following form :

#### PRESIDENTS (1789-1861)

NAME	BIRTH AND DEATH	PARTY	ADMINISTRATION	CHIEF EVENT

44. Make a table of the states admitted since the adoption of the Constitution, in chronological order, using the following form :

#### STATES ADMITTED (1789-1861)

NAME	DATE	ADMINISTRATION	FREE OR SLAVE

45. Make a table of the wars waged by the United States with other countries since 1789, using the following form :

#### WARS (1789-1861)

WITH WHOM	CAUSES	DATE	RESULTS

46. Make a table of the various acquisitions of territory, using the following form :

#### TERRITORIAL ACQUISITIONS OF THE UNITED STATES (1789-1861)

TERRITORY	YEAR OF ACQUISITION	METHOD OF ACQUISITION	STATES AND TERRITORIES FORMED

## CHRONOLOGICAL TABLE OF IMPORTANT EVENTS (1789-1861)

*President*

## GEORGE WASHINGTON (1789-97)

- 1789. Washington inaugurated, April 30.
- 1790-3. Trouble with the Indians of the Northwest.
- 1791. Vermont admitted to the Union.
- 1792. Kentucky admitted to the Union.
- 1793. Trouble began with France.  
The cotton gin invented.
- 1794. The whisky insurrection.
- 1795. Treaties with Spain and England concluded.
- 1796. Tennessee admitted.

## JOHN ADAMS (1797-1801)

- 1798. Alien and Sedition Acts passed.  
Virginia and Kentucky Resolutions passed.
- 1799. Death of Washington, December 14.
- 1800. The difficulties with France ended by treaty.  
The capital changed to Washington on the Potomac.

## THOMAS JEFFERSON (1801-9)

- 1801-5. War with Tripoli.
- 1803. Ohio admitted.  
Louisiana Purchase concluded.
- 1804. Columbia River explored.
- 1806. England began to exercise the right of search.
- 1807. Battle between the *Chesapeake* and the *Leopard*.  
Congress passed the Embargo Act.  
Robert Fulton completed his steamboat.

## JAMES MADISON (1809-17)

- 1811. Battle of Tippecanoe.  
Battle between the *President* and the *Little Belt*.
- 1812. Louisiana admitted.  
United States declared war against Great Britain, June 18.  
General Hull surrendered Detroit.  
Naval victory gained by the *Constitution*, August 19.
- 1813. Battle between the *Chesapeake* and the *Shannon*, June 1.  
Commodore Perry's victory on Lake Erie, September 10.  
Battle of the Thames, October 5.
- 1813-4. War with the Creek Indians in Georgia and Alabama.

1814. Battle of Lundys Lane, July 25.  
Battle of Lake Champlain, September 11.  
General Ross burned the public buildings in Washington, in August.  
Fort McHenry near Baltimore bombarded.  
Hartford Convention met in December.  
Treaty of peace signed at Ghent, December 24.
1815. Battle of New Orleans, January 8.  
War with Algiers.
1816. Indiana admitted.  
The National Bank chartered.

JAMES MONROE (1817-25)

1817. Mississippi admitted.  
Seminole War begun in Florida.
1818. Illinois admitted.
1819. The first ocean steamship completed.  
Alabama admitted.
1820. Congress passed the Missouri Compromise.  
Maine admitted.
1821. Missouri admitted.  
Florida and Oregon ceded by Spain.
1823. Monroe formulated the "Monroe Doctrine."
- 1824-5. General Lafayette visited the United States.

JOHN QUINCY ADAMS (1825-9)

1825. Trouble with the Creek Indians in Georgia.  
The Erie Canal finished.
1826. Death of John Adams and of Thomas Jefferson.
1827. The first railroad built.

ANDREW JACKSON (1829-37)

1829. The "Spoils System" inaugurated.
1832. The Black Hawk War begun.  
South Carolina passed the Ordinance of Nullification.  
First National Convention met.
1833. A compromise made by reducing the tariff.  
The President vetoed the bill for rechartering the National Bank.
- 1835-42. Seminole War.
1835. Texas began her war for independence.
1836. Arkansas admitted.
1837. Michigan admitted.



## MARTIN VAN BUREN (1837-41)

1837. A financial panic began.  
The question of abolishing slavery was discussed in Congress.  
The battle of Okeechobee in Florida.  
The Canadian rebellion.
1840. Congress passed the Subtreasury Bill.

## WILLIAM H. HARRISON (1841)

1841. President Harrison died.

## JOHN TYLER (1841-5)

1842. The northeastern boundary settled.
1844. The first line of telegraph completed.
1845. Florida admitted.

## JAMES K. POLK (1845-9)

1845. Texas admitted.
1846. The northwestern boundary of the United States settled.  
The Mexican War begun.  
The Wilmot Proviso discussed by Congress.  
Iowa admitted.
1847. The conquest of California effected, January.  
The battle of Buena Vista.  
Bombardment of Vera Cruz, March 18-27.  
Capture of the city of Mexico, September 13.
1848. The war ended by a treaty of peace, February 2.  
Gold discovered in California.  
Wisconsin admitted.

## ZACHARY TAYLOR (1849-50)

1850. Death of Calhoun and of President Taylor.  
Clay's Compromise or "Omnibus" Bill passed.

## MILLARD FILLMORE (1850-3)

1850. California admitted.
1852. Death of Clay and of Webster.

## FRANKLIN PIERCE (1853-7)

1853. Gadsden purchase completed.  
Personal Liberty Bills passed in some of the Northern States.
1854. The Kansas-Nebraska Bill passed.  
The Kansas war begun.  
Negotiations opened with Japan.

## JAMES BUCHANAN (1857-61)

1857. The Dred Scott case decided.  
Troops sent to keep order among the Mormons.
1858. Minnesota admitted.
1859. John Brown's raid.  
Oregon admitted.
1860. Abraham Lincoln elected President.  
South Carolina passed the Ordinance of Secession, December 20.
1861. Other states seceded.  
Kansas admitted.  
The Southern Confederacy formed, February 4.  
A Peace Congress met in Washington, February 4.  
Jefferson Davis inaugurated President, February 18.

## PARALLEL READING

MASON L. WEEMS's *Anecdotes of Washington* (in Library of American Literature, Vol. IV, p. 25). — EDWARD EGGLESTON's *The Graysons*. — LOSSING's *Field Book of the War of 1812*. — COOPER's *History of the United States Navy*. — RICHARD HENRY DANA's *Two Years before the Mast*. — MACKENZIE's *Life of Commodore Perry*. — *Memoirs and Letters of Dolly Madison*, edited by her grandniece (in Story of the Nation Series). — LADD's *War with Mexico*. — DAVID CROCKETT's *Exploits and Adventures in Texas*. — SAMUEL ADAMS DRAKE's *The Making of the Great West*. — GEORGE CARY EGGLESTON: *The Big Brother; Captain Sam*. — PARKMAN's *Oregon Trail*. — ALEXANDER ROSS's *Fur Hunters in the Far West*. — HELEN HUNT JACKSON's *Ramona*. — MORSE's *Account of his Invention* (in Library of American Literature, Vol. V, p. 235).

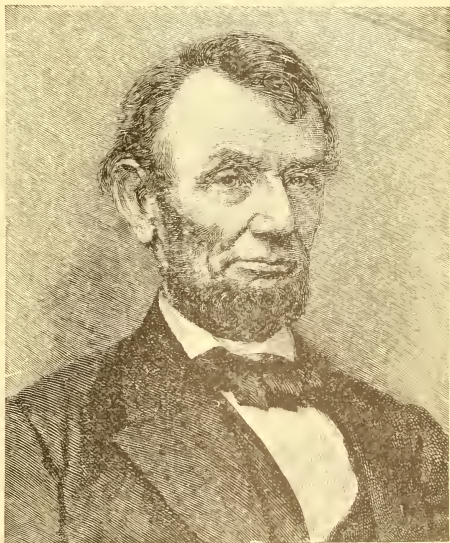
## V—WAR BETWEEN THE STATES

LINCOLN'S <sup>1</sup> ADMINISTRATION — 1861-5

### CHAPTER I

#### BEGINNING OF THE WAR — 1861

**461. Inauguration.** — Abraham Lincoln, of Illinois, was inaugurated the sixteenth President, March 4, 1861. Hannibal Hamlin became Vice President. In his address at that time, the President declared that his principal object would be to preserve the Union; that he would continue to collect the public revenues at the ports of the seceded states; and that he would "hold, occupy, and possess" the forts and all the United States property in those states. In his message to



ABRAHAM LINCOLN

<sup>1</sup> **Abraham Lincoln** was born in Kentucky in 1809, but before he was old enough to remember much about his home there, his father moved first to the frontier of Indiana and then to Illinois. His parents were plain, uneducated

Congress, he assured the South that he would not interfere with slavery in the states, and urged the people to stand by the Union.

**462. Fort Sumter.** — Governor Pickens, of South Carolina, received notice on April 8, that an armed fleet was on its



ROBERT ANDERSON

way to strengthen and provision Fort Sumter. This was considered a declaration of war against the Confederate States. Major Anderson then commanded a garrison of eighty men at the fort. About six thousand men who had volunteered to defend Charleston, were placed under the command of General Gustave T. Beauregard, who received orders from the authorities at Mont-

gomery "to demand at once the evacuation" of Fort Sumter, "and if this should be refused, to proceed immediately to reduce it." Major Anderson refused to leave the fort. The fleet was nearing Charleston; General Beauregard informed Major Anderson of the hour at which the bombard-

people, and he grew up as a farmer boy, plowing corn and splitting rails. His mother taught him to read and write. When he was twenty-one, he began work for himself. He split wood, worked on a flatboat, became a clerk in a country store, was a postmaster, and engaged in any kind of employment that he could find. He managed to study law by borrowing books from a lawyer at night, returning them in the morning. After he was admitted to the bar, he showed a taste for politics. First he became a member of the legislature of Illinois, then he was elected to Congress, and finally he received the nomination for President. The most noted event of his administration was the Emancipation Proclamation. He died in 1865. He won the hearts of the people, and many honors have been paid to his memory. He is often called the "martyred President."

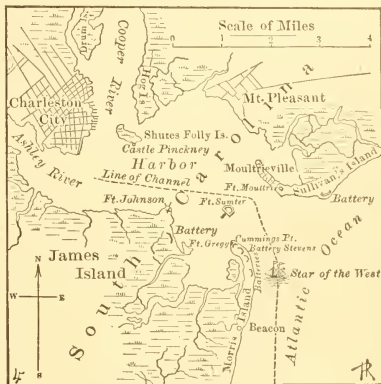
ment would begin. At half past four on the morning of April 12, the firing from Charleston commenced, and the

guns from Sum-  
April 12 ter answered.

Although the fleet was in sight, it did nothing. After the bombardment had continued thirty-two hours, Major Anderson consented to surrender.

The whole garrison was allowed to march out from the fort with the honors of war. Not a single life had been lost during the long and terrific bombardment. The

bursting of a cannon with which Major Anderson fired a salute to his flag killed one man.



CHARLESTON HARBOR

**463. The Result.** — When Sumter fell, the news spread quickly all over the country, and caused the wildest excitement. The North suddenly realized that war could not be avoided, and men of all political parties united in a determination to preserve the Union. President Lincoln immediately called for seventy-five thousand troops to crush the rebellion, and for an extra session of Congress to meet in July. Large numbers of volunteers were soon in arms. He issued a proclamation ordering that all the ports of the Confederate States should be placed in a state of blockade. Ships were immediately fitted out and sent to guard the Southern coast. President Davis also



FEDERAL SOLDIER



made a call for troops. This call was answered from every part of the Confederacy, and preparations for fighting were begun in earnest.

**464. Four More States secede.** — When Lincoln made his call for troops, Virginia, Arkansas, North Carolina, and Tennessee decided at once to leave the Union and join the Confederacy; but Maryland,<sup>1</sup> Kentucky, and Missouri, though they contained a great many people who sympathized with the seceded states, remained in the Union.



CONFEDERATE SOLDIER

**465. Southern Reasons for the War.** — When the Constitution was adopted there was a general feeling that any state might at will withdraw from the Union, which she had voluntarily entered. In 1803 when the Louisiana purchase was made, in 1811 when Louisiana applied for admission as a state, and in 1844 when the annexation of Texas was proposed, representatives from the New England States had carried their oppo-

sition so far as to make threats of disunion. Virginia and New York ratified the Constitution with the express understanding that they could reassume the powers delegated by them to the general government, "whenever the same shall be perverted to their injury or oppression." The people of the South clung to this belief in state rights. They felt that they had been unjustly treated in the settlement of the territories and the violation of the fugi-



CONFEDERATE  
FLAG

<sup>1</sup> The Baltimore Riot. — The Northern States sent large numbers of men to Washington. On April 19, 1861, while a regiment from Massachusetts was passing through Baltimore on its way to the capital, it was attacked by a mob of citizens. Three soldiers and several citizens were killed. These were the first lives lost in the war.

tive slave laws. Virginia had been entered by an armed and hostile band of men. A President had been elected who had not received a single electoral vote from the Southern States. Fearing that their rights were in danger, the people of the South believed that their only safety was in separation.

**466. Northern Reasons for the War.**—The people of the North were determined to exclude slavery from the territo-



CONFEDERATE CAPITOL AT RICHMOND, VIRGINIA

ries, and they denied the right of the states to secede. The fact that the United States flag had been fired upon at Sumter thoroughly aroused them, and with a fixed resolution to save the Union at any cost, the North prepared for war. Her army, because it fought to preserve the Union, was called the Union, or Federal, army. The citizens of the seceded states, because they took up arms to resist invasion and assert their rights were declared to be “rebels.”

**467. The Two Sections.** — In 1861 the South had a white population not quite one third that of the North. Her people had devoted their time to raising cotton and tobacco, buying almost everything they needed from the North; now they were cut off from their main source of supplies. The North was richer and stronger, but the Southern leaders were confident of success. They thought that the factories of Europe depended so much upon their cotton, that England and France would send them assistance.

**468. Preparations for War.** — Soon after the secession of Virginia, the capital of the Confederacy was removed from Montgomery to Richmond. Efforts were soon begun by the Federals to gain possession of that city. The first battle were fought in the border states — Virginia in the east, Missouri and Kentucky in the west. The Confederate line of defense extended from Norfolk, Virginia, along the Potomac to Harpers Ferry, and west of the mountains through Tennessee and Kentucky to the Mississippi River. Strong batteries were placed along the banks of the Mississippi, and forts were built along the coast from the Potomac to the Rio Grande.

**469. The Federals in Virginia.** — General Scott commanded the army that had been collected at Washington. General Patterson was stationed a short distance from Harpers Ferry. Fortress Monroe, on the Yorktown peninsula at the entrance of Chesapeake Bay, was held by the Federals under General

Butler. General George B. McClellan crossed the Ohio into northwestern Virginia, with a large force, and by the close of the year, a large portion of western Virginia was occupied by the Federals.



GENERAL G. T.  
BEAUREGARD

**470. The Confederates in Virginia.** — General Beauregard was placed in command of the Confederate army stationed at Manassas Junction, to resist attack upon the Southern capital. General Joseph E. Johnston's troops were in the Shenandoah valley at Winchester, watching the movements of

General Patterson. General John B. Magruder was sent to Yorktown and Big Bethel on the Peninsula, to oppose an advance by General Butler.

**471. First Battle of Manassas.** — About the middle of July, in obedience to orders from General Scott, General Irvin McDowell marched from Washington, intending to fight his way to Richmond and end the war. He found General Beauregard's army on the southern bank of a stream called Bull Run, and was forced back. General Johnston hastened to Manassas. On July 21, a desperate and bloody battle was fought, which continued until late in the day. Sometimes it

seemed as if the Federals would succeed; but, about four o'clock in the afternoon, General E. Kirby Smith, with reënforcements from General Johnston, arrived from Winchester, and a great victory was gained. McDowell's troops became panic-stricken and fled in the wildest confusion, scattering guns, clothing, and articles of all kinds on the way. The entire Federal loss in this battle was four thousand. That of the Confederates was a little less than one half that number.

**472. Effects.** — The result of this battle was a great surprise to the people of the North; it convinced them that the struggle was to be long and terrible, and not to be ended in ninety days, as some of their leaders had predicted. Congress voted to call for three hundred thousand volunteers, and to appropriate \$500,000,000 for carrying on the war. The Confederates were so much elated by the victory, that many believed the war was over, and relaxed their efforts.



SCALE OF MILES 0 10 20 30 40 50  
FIRST BATTLE OF MANASSAS



# THE WAR

## BETWEEN THE STATES.

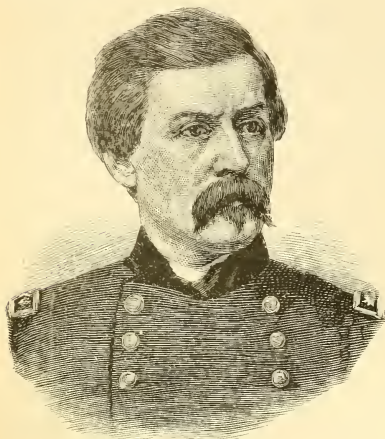
By Russell Hittman C.E.

0 50 100 150 200 250 Miles





**473. General McClellan.**<sup>1</sup>—General Scott had become too feeble to march with the army, and at his own request was allowed to resign. General George B. McClellan's successes



GENERAL GEORGE B. MCCLELLAN

in western Virginia had made him a favorite with the Northern people; and after the defeat at Manassas, he was made the commander of the Federal army in Virginia.

**474. The West.**—During this time, the people west of the Mississippi had not been idle. Though Missouri had not joined the Confederacy, many of the men of that state had entered the Southern

July 5-  
Sept. 20

army. General Sterling Price commanded the forces from Missouri, and General McCullough those from Texas. These troops gained victories over the Union forces in that section the most important being at Carthage (July 5), at Oakhill, or Wilsons Creek (August 10), and at Lexington (September 20), where General Price captured three thousand prisoners and took possession of the place.

**475. The Blockade.**—A large number of steamships were built at the North and sent to the Southern coast to prevent other countries from sending supplies to the Confederacy

<sup>1</sup> General George B. McClellan spent the early part of his life in Philadelphia. He was born in that city in 1826. His education was finished at West Point Military Academy, where he graduated with honor. His first experience as a soldier was in the Mexican War under General Scott. At the beginning of the civil war, he was appointed major general of the Ohio troops by the governor of that state. The results of both of his campaigns in eastern Virginia were so unsatisfactory to his government, that he was relieved of his command, and he did no further service as a soldier during the war. He died at his home in Orange, New Jersey, October 29, 1885.

her only means of obtaining money, or medicines, or other necessities, was by selling her cotton, and her fleet steamers often escaped in the darkness with their cargoes. In like manner the love of adventure and the desire for profit caused others to run the blockade from without, and sell their goods for a high price abroad.

**476. The Confederate Navy.**—At first the Confederate States had no navy; but a number of small vessels were armed and sent out by private citizens to do service for the government. They were commissioned as privateers, and did great damage to the commerce of the North.

In a short time, twenty vessels were taken as prizes and brought to the southern ports.<sup>1</sup>

**The Trent Affair.**—The Confederate government, hoping aid from England and France, sent James M. Mason and Slidell as commissioners to those countries.

They succeeded in passing the blockading steamers sent to Havana, where they took passage on the *Trent*, a steamer belonging to Great Britain. The next day they were seized by Captain Wilkes, who commanded the *Albatross* of the United States navy, and were carried as

prisoners. Two steamers, the *Sumter* and the *Nashville*, were sent out by the Confederate government, under the command of officers who had resigned from the United States navy. The *Sumter* succeeded in running the blockade at the mouth of the Mississippi. The *Nashville* reached the open sea at Charleston. Large cargoes valued at millions of dollars were captured by these vessels, and the blockade was seriously felt throughout the Northern States.



BATTLEFIELDS IN MISSOURI AND ARKANSAS

prisoners to Fort Warren, near Boston. This seizure of passengers on board a British vessel might have brought on war with England, had not the authorities at Washington disapproved the act of Captain Wilkes and returned the commissioners.

**478. Confederate Presidential Election.** — Before the close of the year, the people of the Confederate States, in accordance with the provisions of the constitution adopted, Nov. 6 elected a President and Vice President. Mr. Davis and Mr. Stephens were chosen to fill those offices for six years, beginning February 22, 1862.

### QUESTIONS FOR STUDY

Why was General Beauregard ordered to bombard Fort Sumter? What effect did the fall of Sumter produce in the North? What were the Federal plans for invading the Confederate States? What was the effect of the blockade? For what was the South fighting? For what did the North go to war? What plan of the Federal generals was thwarted by the first battle of Manassas? What was the effect in the North? What in the South? If McDowell had been successful at Manassas, what might have been the result?

Make a table of battles in accordance with the following form:

#### BATTLES OF 1861

WHERE FOUGHT	WHEN FOUGHT	FEDERAL COMMANDER	CONFEDERATE COMMANDER	VICTORY

## CHAPTER II

### SECOND YEAR OF THE WAR — 1862

**479. Plans for the New Year.** — The United States authorities realized that a mighty task lay before them, and they determined to use their vast supply of men and means to accomplish it. The South, confident of success, was also



preparing to continue the struggle. The Federals had decided to send a force on to Richmond, while others were to move from the Ohio and Mississippi toward the Gulf States. The Federals were doing all in their power to get possession of the lower Mississippi, to use it as a means of communication. This would cut the Confederacy in two, and so shut off from the eastern half the immense supplies of beef sent from Texas; hence the Confederates were making every effort to keep control of the river.

**480. The Armies.** — The Federal troops in Virginia were commanded by McClellan; those in the West, by Halleck. The Confederates



GENERAL JOSEPH E. JOHNSTON



GENERAL ALBERT SIDNEY JOHNSTON

placed General J. E. Johnston at the head of the army in Virginia, now called the Army of Northern Virginia. General Albert Sidney Johnston took command of the Southern forces in the West. He stationed his army in Kentucky along a line reaching from Columbus on the Mississippi to the Cumberland Mountains. With the exception of a small army maintained beyond the Mississippi, all that could be spared from defending the long stretch of seacoast were sent to these two generals.



## WEST OF THE MOUNTAINS

**481. Mill Springs.** — The first military movements were made in Kentucky. At Fishing Creek, or Mill Springs, the Confederates were attacked January 19, 1862, by General Thomas with a portion of General Halleck's troops. The Southern forces were driven back, and General Zollicoffer, who commanded them, was killed. By this retreat the Confederates lost eastern Kentucky.



COMMODORE FOOTE

**482. Forts Henry and Donelson.** — Federal gunboats, commanded by Commodore Foote, were sent up the Tennessee and Cumberland rivers to attack

the forts built to defend the passage of those streams. General Grant was ready with his forces on land and joined in the attack. Both forts were taken in February, 1862, although the Confederates defended them bravely. At Fort Donelson, they fought four days amidst the ice and snow. The capture of these forts was a heavy blow to the Southern cause. General A. S. Johnston was forced to retreat, and nearly the whole of Tennessee was lost, for the Union gunboats patrolled the rivers. The Federals moved farther south and took possession of Nashville, where a large amount of stores fell into their hands. This victory greatly encouraged the Federals, and made a hero of General Grant.



THE WAR IN WESTERN KENTUCKY AND TENNESSEE

**483. Battles of Shiloh.** — Grant moved as far south as Pittsburg Landing, on the Tennessee River, where he expected General Buell to join him. General A. S. Johnston's army had encamped along the Corinth road, near a little log church, called Shiloh Church. While the Federals waited for Buell, they were surprised by an attack by the Southern army. The fighting was desperate and lasted throughout the day; the Federals were driven to the river to seek the protection of their gunboats. Just at the point of victory General Johnston was killed. General Beauregard, who had gone to the West, succeeded him. Buell having arrived with fresh Union troops, another bloody battle was fought the next day. The Federals reoccupied the ground lost the previous day, but nothing of importance was gained by either side. The Confederates returned to Corinth. Both armies had lost heavily. In killed, wounded, and missing, the Confederate loss was ten thousand; the accounts given by the Federals place theirs at an even greater number. The death of General Johnston was a sad loss to the South.

April 6  
and 7



GENERAL BUELL

**484. Retreating.** — Island No. 10 in the Mississippi was captured on April 7, having withstood through a whole month a dreadful storm of shot and shell from the river and the land. Beauregard removed to Tupelo, Mississippi, at the head of the Tombigbee. In June the Confederate boats were compelled to move down the Mississippi River from Fort Pillow, Memphis fell into the hands of the Federals, and the Mississippi was opened to them as far south as that point. Beauregard's health failed, and his position was given to General Braxton Bragg. This army was afterwards known as the Army of Tennessee.

April 7

June 4  
and 6

**485. Battle of Pea Ridge.** — The command of the Confed-

erate army west of the Mississippi had been given to General Earl Van Dorn. A threatened attack from a strong Federal



GENERAL BRAGG

force had prevented him from sending assistance to General Johnston. This attack was made early in March. The Confederates, under March 7  
and 8 Generals Price and McCullough, had fortified Pea Ridge, in north-western Arkansas, and there fought three days the attacking columns of General Curtis. At last their ammunition was exhausted, and they were compelled to retreat. General McCullough was killed.

**486. General Bragg in Kentucky.** — Grant's army was stationed along a line between Memphis and Huntsville, Alabama, and Buell was sent to take Chattanooga. Bragg, having recruited his army, was joined by General E. Kirby Smith, and they together marched northward toward the Ohio. They remained two months in the central part of Kentucky, expecting that the people would enlist for the Confederate cause and enlarge their army. Disappointed in this hope, they returned to Chattanooga, having collected large quantities of supplies.



SCALE OF MILES 0 20 40 60 80 100  
KENTUCKY AND TENNESSEE

**487. Battle of Murfreesboro.** — Bragg moved from Chattanooga toward Nashville, and built fortifications at Murfreesboro. General Ros-

Dec. 31 and  
Jan. 2

ecrans, now in com-  
mand of the Fed-  
erals, began preparations  
for driving him back. On the  
last day of 1862 a battle  
was fought at Murfreesboro,  
and was resumed on Janu-  
ary 2, after which Bragg with-  
drew. Each side lost heavily  
in this battle, but nothing  
was gained by either army.

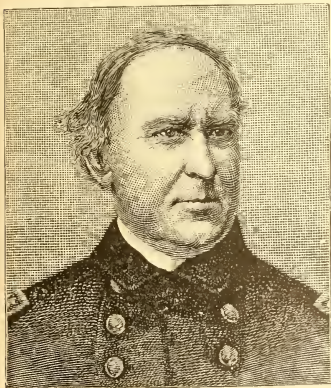
488. Fall of New Orleans. —

The greatest misfortune that befell the Confederacy this year was the surrender of New Orleans. Admiral Farragut (fär' à-güt) commanded a fleet of armed vessels, sent out to capture that city. It was defended by two forts — Fort Jackson and Fort St. Philip — built on opposite sides of the river, seventy miles below the city. During six days incessant firing was kept up between the fleet and the forts, the fleet sometimes firing "ten shells a minute." A raft of logs and boats bound together with chains and ropes had been placed across the river to keep vessels from passing. Rafts and steamboats loaded with cotton were set on fire and



SCALE OF MILES 0 20 40 60 80 100

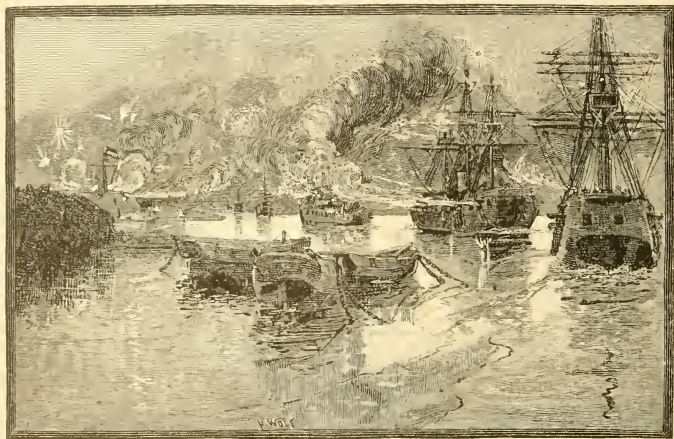
NEW ORLEANS AND VICINITY



## ADMIRAL FARRAGUT

floated down to burn the Federal ships. The ironclad *Manassas* and other armed vessels were sent from New Orleans to

aid the forts; but at three o'clock on the morning of April 24, amidst the smoke and the firing, in spite of April 25 the brave struggle made by the Confederates, Farragut's boats cut through the obstructions, ran past the forts, and on the morning of the next day he took possession of the city.



FARRAGUT AT NEW ORLEANS

The forts surrendered three days later; and General B. F. Butler, with a land force, marched into New Orleans and took command.

## ON THE COAST

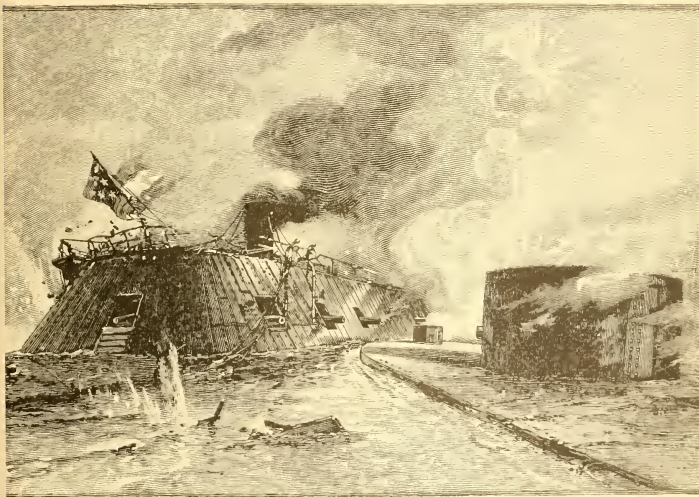
**489. The Virginia.** — When, at the beginning of the war, the United States naval commander left Norfolk, he destroyed and sank most of the vessels in that harbor. One of these vessels, the *Merrimac*, the Confederates raised and repaired, covered with iron and strong beams of wood, and fitted with a steel bow. This curiously built ship, renamed the *Virginia*, accompanied by two steamers and three gunboats, in March attacked the Federal fleet in Hampton

March 8



Roads, whose balls glanced from her sides without inflicting the slightest injury. The work done in one day by this iron-clad ram was fearful. The *Cumberland* with her crew was sunk, the *Congress* was burned, and the *Minnesota* left helpless on the shore.

**490. The Monitor.** — Fears were felt throughout the North, lest this monster might carry destruction to the harbors



VIRGINIA AND MONITOR

of Baltimore and New York, and even to the capital itself. But during the night, a strange-looking ironclad war ship, the *Monitor*, arrived from New York. The first who saw it said that "it looked like a cheese box on a raft." The next day witnessed a fight between the *Monitor* and the *Virginia*. Though the battle lasted several hours, and both vessels carried heavier guns than had ever before been used at sea, no serious damage was done to either. At last, the *Monitor*, in its efforts to protect the *Minnesota*, ran into water so shallow that the *Virginia* was unable to follow. She then

March 9

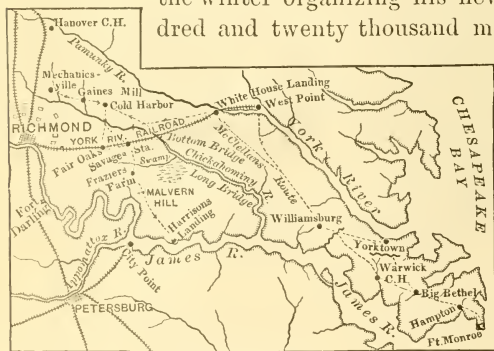
ceased firing and returned to Norfolk, where she remained to protect that town against attack, and keep the Federal boats from ascending the James River.

This battle proved the advantage of ironclad war ships, and soon there was a complete change in the navies of the world.

**491. Extension of the Blockade.** — A Federal fleet succeeded in taking Roanoke Island in February, and Newbern, North Carolina, in March. In April, Fort Pulaski, near Savannah, also was taken by the Federals. By the capture of these forts, the blockade was rendered still more effective.

#### THE PENINSULAR CAMPAIGN

**492. The Armies in Virginia.** — In accordance with the Federal plans for 1862, General McClellan had been busy during the winter organizing his new army of one hundred and twenty thousand men, for another advance upon Richmond.



THE PENINSULA

Early in March, General J. E. Johnston moved his army south of the Rapahannock, that he might be ready to oppose a movement either by

way of Manassas or Fredericksburg, or along the peninsula from Fortress Monroe.

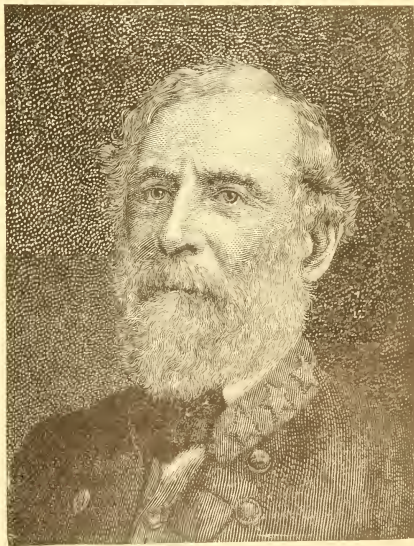
**493. Beginning of the Campaign.** — In April, McClellan moved his troops by steamers down the Potomac from Washington to Fortress Monroe. From that place, he marched toward Richmond, along the peninsula between the York and James rivers, using those rivers as a

means of conveying his supplies. McDowell was left near Fredericksburg to protect Washington. There was some fighting as McClellan's army advanced. For May 4 a whole month the Federal army besieged Yorktown, which Johnston evacuated on May 4. At Williamsburg, on May 5, a battle was fought in which neither side gained anything. The Confederate army retreated.

Norfolk was attacked and surrendered. The *Virginia* was blown up to prevent her falling into the hands of the Federals.

**494. Battle of Seven Pines.**—McClellan continued to advance, and Johnston skillfully retreated before his immense numbers.

May 31  
and June 1 The Federal army reached the Chickahominy late in May, and on the last day of the month, a battle was fought at Seven Pines, or Fair Oaks. The battle was continued the next day, and Johnston was wounded. The news caused some confusion among his soldiers, and nothing of importance was gained. The losses in killed, wounded, and missing were very heavy. General Robert E. Lee<sup>1</sup> was then



GENERAL LEE

<sup>1</sup> General Robert Edward Lee, a son of General "Lighthorse Harry" Lee, was born at Stratford, Westmoreland County, Virginia, in 1807. He was sent to the United States Military Academy at West Point, and graduated with honor. It has been said of him that, "during his stay at West Point, he was never reprimanded nor marked with a demerit." He served through the Mex-

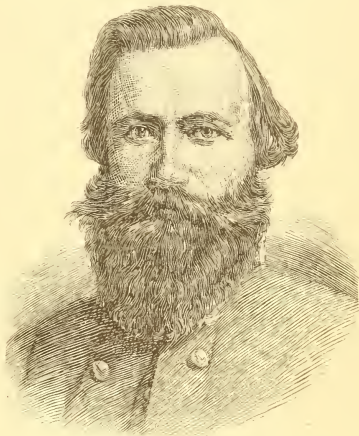




Winchester, General Banks retreated before him (May 25); at Cross Keys, he defeated Frémont's forces (June 8), and the next day, at Port Republic, Shields again retired. He had prevented McDowell from joining McClellan, and had caused such alarm for the safety of Washington, that the four generals who opposed him, Milroy, Banks, Frémont, and Shields, had hurried to that place. He had within forty days marched his little army of fifteen thousand over four hundred miles; "he had sent three thousand five hundred prisoners of war to the rear, he had left as many more of the Federals killed or disabled on the field; and he had defeated four separate armies, amounting in the aggregate to at least three times his own numbers."

#### 496. Seven Days' Battle.

—While everything was quiet in the valley, and before McClellan could be strengthened by reënforcement, Jackson joined Lee. Then General J. E. B.



GENERAL J. E. B. STUART

Stuart rode with his cavalry entirely around McClellan's army, greatly annoying him and thwarting his plans. Lee then ordered Jackson to move his army quickly and secretly

He was "the poor orphan boy that walked to Washington from Lewis County, Virginia, and appeared before John Tyler in his plain homespun suit, with leathern saddlebags upon his shoulders, asking for a cadetship at the United States Military Academy at West Point." He was "the awkward, ungainly youth who wrote in his private book of maxims, 'You may be whatever you resolve to be.'" It was in the first battle of Manassas that the name of "Stonewall" was given to him. When a portion of the Confederate lines were giving way before the Federal advance, General Bee, of South Carolina, called to his retreating men, "Look! there is Jackson standing like a stone wall."



to Mechanicsville, beyond McClellan's right wing and between his army and McDowell's. Three weeks after the battle of Port Republic, Jackson had obeyed this order. Lee then crossed the Chickahominy, and seven days of bloody battle and of victory to the Southern arms followed — first, at Oak

Grove (June 25), then at Mechanicsville and Beaver  
 June 25- Dam Creek (June 26), and at Gaines Mill (June  
 July 1 27). After the battle of Gaines Mill, McClellan

had to change his base from the York to the James, where he could be near his gunboats. Lee pursued him, and there were three more days of fighting, at Savages Station (June 29), Fraziers Farm, and White Oak Swamp (June 30), and Malvern Hill (July 1). McClellan's army retreated to the shelter of his gunboats, at Harrisons Landing on the James.

This ended the Peninsular campaign, in which Lee, with about eighty thousand men, had faced McClellan's well-disciplined army of one hundred and five thousand. The losses were more than fifteen thousand on each side. The Confederates captured quantities of small arms and many pieces of artillery.

#### LATER CAMPAIGNS IN THE EAST

**497. Generals Halleck and Pope.** — After this series of Federal disasters, General Henry W. Halleck was recalled from the West, and made general in chief of the land forces. A new army was organized under General John Pope, who determined to make another movement against Richmond. Stonewall Jackson was sent with a part of the army to watch Pope, whose army lay along the Rappahannock and Rapidan rivers, and reached as far as the Shenandoah valley. Jackson found Banks, in command of the western portion, at Cedar Mountain, where he attacked him; after the fight, Banks retreated.

**498. Second Battle of Manassas.** — General Lee gathered all the troops that could be brought together, and joined Jackson

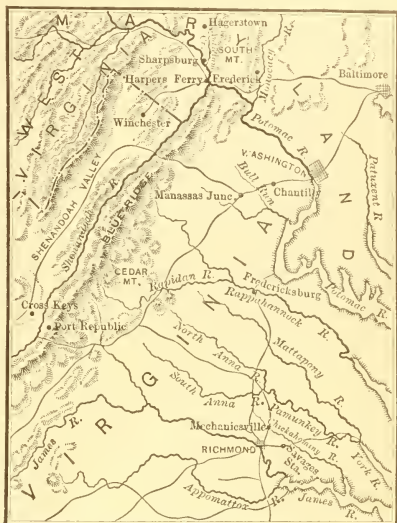
at once. Together they moved forward to Manassas Junction and attacked Pope. Again the plains of Manassas were the scene of blood and death.

Where, a year before, the first battle had been fought, another victory was recorded for the Confederate cause. Pope retreated to the fortifications of Washington, having lost heavily in men, artillery, and small arms. After this defeat, General McClellan was again put in command of the Federal army.

**499. Lee's Invasion of Maryland.**—A short time after the second battle of Manassas, Lee crossed the Potomac and entered

Maryland, threatening Washington and Baltimore. McClellan pursued him. On September 15 Jackson regained possession of Harpers Ferry, where he captured eleven thousand prisoners and a large quantity of arms. By rapid marches, he rejoined Lee two days afterwards at Sharpsburg. On September 17 McClellan ordered an attack to be made on the left of the Confederate army; there the troops of both generals fought stubbornly for hours. The Confederates held their ground against double their numbers. This engagement has been called "the drawn battle of Sharpsburg, or Antietam." The next day passed in comparative quiet, and during the night Lee recrossed the Potomac into Virginia.

**500. Battle of Fredericksburg.**—Before the close of the



SCALE OF MILES 0 10 20 30 40 50  
LEE'S LATER CAMPAIGNS OF 1862

Sept. 15

Sept. 17

year, McClellan was again removed from his position, and General Ambrose E. Burnside was made commander of the



GENERAL BURNSIDE

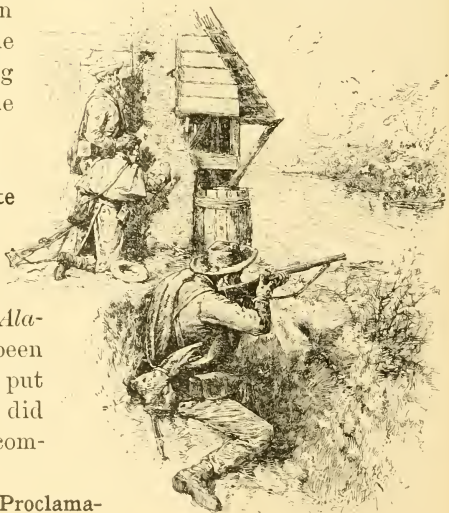
Army of the Potomac, the name given to the Federal army in Virginia. Burnside tried a new plan of attack upon Richmond, by way of Fredericksburg. He crossed the Rappahannock on pontoon bridges, and attacked Lee, who, with a much smaller army than Burnside's, fought behind hastily constructed works. This battle was a great victory for Lee, and completely checked Burnside's advance.

Dec. 13

The Federals recrossed the river, and the two armies remained encamped on opposite sides of the Rappahannock during the remainder of the year.

**501. New Confederate Ships.** — During the summer of this year, two new armed ships, the *Florida* and the *Alabama*, which had been built in England, were put upon the sea. They did much damage to the commerce of the North.

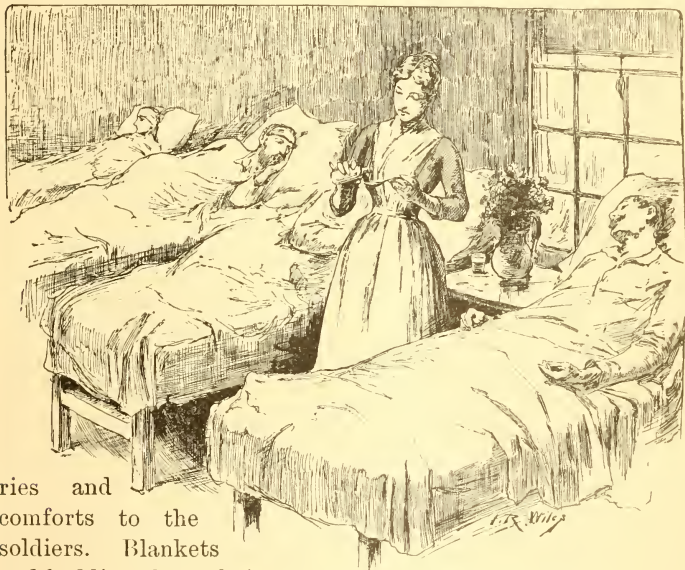
**502. Emancipation Proclamation.** — The people of the North saw that freeing the slaves would



SHARPSHOOTERS AT FREDERICKSBURG

weaken the South, and President Lincoln decided that it should be done. On September 22, a few days after the battle of Antietam, he issued a proclamation declaring that on the first day of the new year all the slaves in any state, or part of a state, then in rebellion against the United States, should be freed. On January 1, 1863, this proclamation took effect. Sept. 22

**503. Soldiers' Aid Societies.**—The patriotic women of the country, North and South, had organized to supply necessa-



IN THE SOLDIERS' HOSPITALS

ries and comforts to the soldiers. Blankets and bedding from their own homes were cheerfully given to supply the brave men at the seat of war. Socks were knitted and clothing made by their own fingers, and every delicacy that love could suggest was prepared and sent to the sick and wounded in the hospitals. Many women volunteered as nurses, and their untiring and tender attentions soothed the last hours of many a dying soldier.

## QUESTIONS FOR STUDY

State the Federal plans for 1862. Describe the Western campaigns. The Eastern. What did General Bragg hope to gain by the invasion of Kentucky? What was his success? What did the Confederates lose by the fall of New Orleans? What change in the navies of the world was produced by the battle between the *Monitor* and the *Virginia*?

Mark upon an outline map the battles of the first and second years of the war. Mention the leading generals on both sides during these years. Trace the movements of the armies in each campaign. What portions of the Confederacy had been invaded by the close of the second year of the war? Add to your table of battles those of 1862 (see p. 316).

## CHAPTER III

## THIRD YEAR OF THE WAR—1863

## IN THE EAST

**504. Chancellorsville.** — The Army of the Potomac had been increased to one hundred and thirty-two thousand men, and placed under the command of General Joseph Hooker. Gen-



GENERAL HOOKER

eral Lee still held Fredericksburg, which he had fortified. He could muster only fifty-three thousand soldiers to confront the hosts that crossed the Rap-  
pahannock above Fredericksburg  
and marched to Chancellors-  
ville. There Hooker occupied a strong  
position, "surrounded on all sides by a  
dense forest filled with a tangled under-  
growth, in the midst of which breastworks

May 2  
and 3

of logs had been constructed, with trees felled in front." Lee thought it unwise to attack in front, and he sent General Jackson around to the rear while he held the front. A long, tiresome march took Jackson's force around Chancellorsville, and he attacked the rear of the Federal army. The surprise was so complete that, after a few efforts to resist, Hooker's



forces began to fly in disorder. The battle continued through the next day. Hooker's advance was completely checked, and on May 5 his immense army recrossed the river.

**505. Stonewall Jackson killed.** — In the evening of the first day of this battle, General Jackson ordered General A. P. Hill's

May 2 troops to relieve those who, after a long march, had been for hours in the hottest of the fight. As Hill's men came on, they met General Jackson with several officers returning from the front, and mistook them, in the darkness, for Federals. Hill's men fired, and General Jackson fell, mortally wounded. He died a week later.<sup>1</sup> His command was given to General J. E. B. Stuart, an honored officer,

and worthy of the position; but the death of Stonewall Jackson was a loss that could not be repaired. Speaking of the misfortune, General Lee said, "I have lost my right hand."

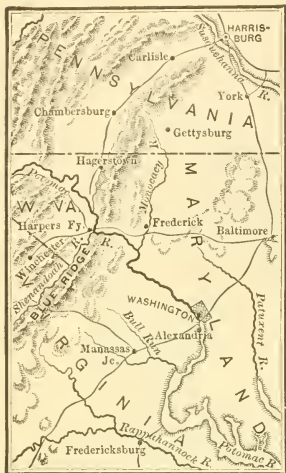
**506. Invasion of Pennsylvania.** — Early in June, Lee sent a part of his forces into the valley of Virginia. The Confederates recaptured Winchester and Martinsburg, and took a large number of guns and prisoners. Lee joined them with the rest of the army. The whole command, numbering about sixty thousand, then crossed the Potomac, and moved on through



GENERAL JACKSON

<sup>1</sup> Jackson was a man of deep piety and noble character. During his last moments, while in a state of feverish sleep, the friends watching by his bedside heard him say, "Let us pass over the river and rest under the shade of the trees." These were his last words. The duties he had fulfilled so faithfully were all done, and he passed beyond the noise of battle into eternal rest. The rejoicings of the people over the great victory, which he had done so much to win, were soon hushed into silence and sorrow over the death of the great leader.

Maryland to York, Chambersburg, and Carlisle, Pennsylvania, threatening Washington and Harrisburg. By this means Lee



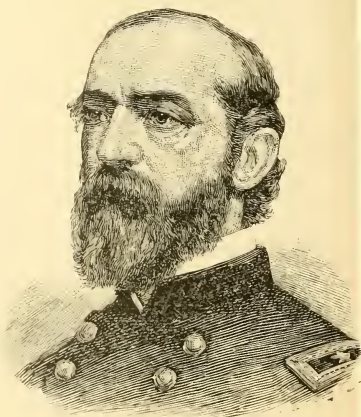
LEE'S INVASION OF PENNSYLVANIA

hoped to thwart the plans of the Federal commanders, to obtain much-needed supplies in a country where everything was raised in abundance, and by victory in a Union state to gain recruits for his army from friends of the Confederacy in Maryland.

**507. Gettysburg.** — About this time, Hooker resigned, and General George B. Meade took command. When the news of Lee's advance reached Meade, he moved his army beyond the Potomac, to defend Washington. A part of Lee's army met a part of Meade's forces at Gettysburg, July 1. The Fed-

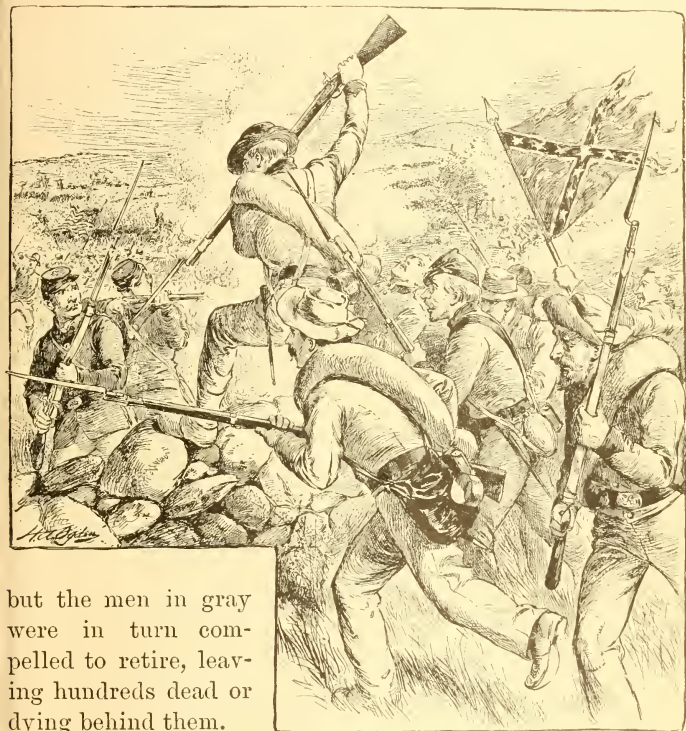
July 1  
and 2

erals were driven back through the town. Lee at once ordered his troops at Carlisle and Chambersburg to join him, and a portion of the army reached the neighborhood of Gettysburg at night, ready for battle the next day. Lee planned to begin the attack early the next morning, but the battle was not begun until late in the afternoon, by which time Meade's whole army of one hundred and five thousand had arrived. The work of thousands of men had



GENERAL MEADE

strengthened his position on the hills southeast of the town. The Confederates, by desperate charges, drove the Federals from their lines in various places, and captured some guns;



PICKETT'S CHARGE AT GETTYSBURG

but the men in gray were in turn compelled to retire, leaving hundreds dead or dying behind them.

Lee hoped that a united attack the next day would win what had seemed so nearly within his reach on the morning of the 2d. For two hours a terrific cannonade was continued by both armies, and the blue smoke hid the Confederates as they moved forward. The last heroic charge was led by Pickett's division of Virginians, but it was impossible to get possession of the strong

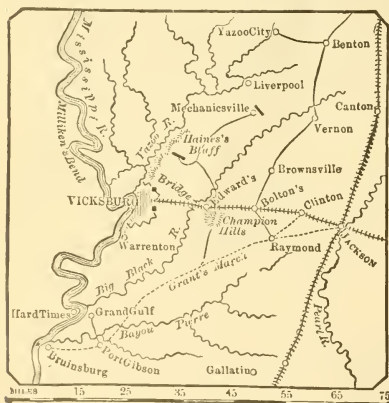
July 3

Federal position. After a day of rest, Lee began his retreat to Virginia. With the exception of several cavalry engagements, there were no battles on the way.

Lee's loss in this campaign was more than twenty thousand. This battle decided the fate of the Confederacy, for the South could not raise the thousands needed to replace the brave soldiers lost at Gettysburg. Meade followed Lee across the Potomac and the Rappahannock. By August the Confederates were once more on the southern bank of the Rapidan, with General Meade's army opposite them on the north side of the river. The remainder of the season was one of quiet. The Federal plans seemed entirely broken up, and no further advances were made.

#### IN THE WEST

**508. Advance on Vicksburg.** — In the early part of this year, General Grant began the task of opening the Mississippi from Vicksburg to Port Hudson. During February and March, he made several unsuccessful attempts from different directions



VICKSBURG AND VICINITY

to take Vicksburg. He then sent his army down on the west side of the Mississippi to Hard Times below Vicksburg. His boats passed the batteries at Vicksburg in the night (April 16) and moved the army to Grand Gulf on the eastern side of the river. The army then marched toward Vicksburg. Several battles were fought on the way — at Port Gibson, Raymond, and Bakers

Creek, near the Big Black River. Then General Pemberton retreated to the fortifications of Vicksburg.



**509. The Siege.** — Sherman joined Grant, and with a large force they began the siege of Vicksburg, which continued more than six weeks. The Federal batteries on land, and the gunboats, kept up an almost incessant fire. On the 4th of July, the day before General Lee began his retreat from Gettysburg, Vicksburg was occupied by General Grant. The garrison had almost exhausted its store of provisions, and could do nothing but surrender. Four hundred

July 4



MORGAN'S WILD RAIDERS

guns were given up, and thirty thousand prisoners paroled. This blow, coming at the same time as the defeat at Gettysburg, greatly depressed the people of the South. Shortly after, Port Hudson was surrendered. This gave the Federals entire control of the Mississippi River, afforded them a new route for bringing supplies to their armies, divided the Confederacy, and separated the Confederates from a country which had sent them quantities of provisions and numbers of men.

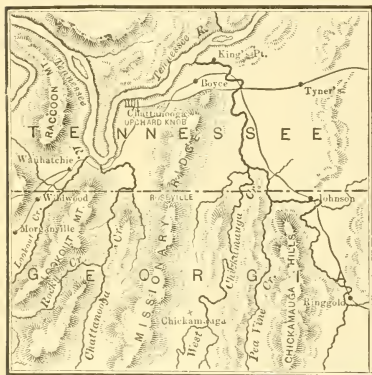


**510. Morgan's Raid.**—Late in June, General John H. Morgan started from Tennessee upon his famous raid through Kentucky, where a number of Southern sympathizers joined him. He crossed the Ohio River and dashed through southern

June and  
July

Indiana and Ohio, plundering the country, burning bridges, destroying railroads, and capturing prisoners. The governor of Ohio called out the state militia to oppose him. Morgan and a number of his officers fell into the hands of their pursuers, and were sent to the penitentiary at Columbus. By digging under the walls of the prison, he and several of his companions managed to

escape and find their way back to the Confederate lines.<sup>1</sup>



SCALE OF MILES 0 2 4 6 8 10

CHATTANOOGA AND ITS VICINITY

**511. Battle of Chickamauga.**—After the battle of Murfreesboro, General Bragg fell back to Tullahoma, but General Rosecrans did not make any advance until the following June. Sept. 19  
and 20

As he moved forward, Bragg continued to retreat through Tennessee to Georgia. Large numbers of reënforcements were sent to Rosecrans, and General Lee sent troops from the Rapidan to aid Bragg. In September Rosecrans followed Bragg to Chickamauga,<sup>2</sup> in Georgia, twelve miles from Chattanooga. There a terrible battle was fought. It continued through two days, and resulted in a victory for the Confederates.

**512. Chattanooga.**—From Chickamauga, Rosecrans moved

<sup>1</sup> Death of Morgan.—The next year Morgan made another raid into Kentucky, but he was met by a large Federal force and compelled to retreat. In September, 1864, a woman rode into the Federal camp and told where he could be captured; he was surrounded and shot.

<sup>2</sup> An Indian name which means the "river of death."

back to the fortifications of Chattanooga. Bragg strengthened his defenses on Missionary Ridge, where he remained for some time. He managed to keep Rosecrans shut up in Chattanooga until November, and nearly starved the Federal army there. At length, General Sherman brought troops from Vicksburg, and General Hooker brought others from Virginia. About this time Grant was given the chief command of the Western armies, and he went to Chattanooga. Bragg sent a part of his forces to make an attack upon the Federals at Knoxville; but nothing was gained by the expedition except that Burnside was kept in that town for a time.

**513. Battle of Missionary Ridge.**—While this portion of Bragg's troops was away, Grant prepared for an advance.

Nov. 25

On November 25 his army, led by General Thomas, fought the Confederates at Missionary Ridge, and gained a victory which drove them back into Georgia. After this battle, Bragg asked to be relieved of his command, and he was succeeded by General Joseph E. Johnston.



GENERAL THOMAS

**514. Naval Operations.**—The United States navy had been greatly increased, but its principal work was keeping up the blockade. In April an attempt was made to capture Fort Sumter, at Charleston, but the Federal fleet was so much injured in the attempt that it was compelled to retreat. Afterwards, another fleet, aided by a land force, made a second attack. Both withdrew without taking the city. Still later, Fort Sumter was bombarded by an ironclad fleet, whose heavy shot "made holes two and a half feet deep in the walls." It was battered into ruins, but left in the hands of the Confederates.

The Confederate vessels did great damage to the commerce of the United States; but the prizes captured could not be used, because there was no port in which to leave them.

**515. West Virginia admitted to the Union.**—The majority

of the people living in the northwestern part of Virginia were Union men; that is, they were opposed to secession and the war. They had refused to join the state in that movement and had organized a legislature for themselves. According to the Constitution, a state cannot be divided without the consent of the legislature; but as this body was the only legislature in Virginia recognized by the Federal government, the western counties were admitted in 1863 as a separate state, under the name of West Virginia.

### QUESTIONS FOR STUDY

In what respects was General Lee a great man? What traits of character do you admire in Stonewall Jackson? What did General Lee hope to gain by invading Pennsylvania? What made the battle of Gettysburg a disaster to the South? What made Pickett's charge famous? Describe the steps by which the Federals obtained control of the Mississippi River. What advantages did this give them? Give an outline of the campaigns of the third year of the war. Trace upon the map the movements of both armies during this year. Name the leading generals on each side. Add to your table the battles of 1863.

## CHAPTER IV

### FOURTH YEAR OF THE WAR—1864

#### FLORIDA, MISSISSIPPI, AND LOUISIANA

**516. The Situation.** — At the beginning of this year, the Federals were in possession of the states of Tennessee, Kentucky, Arkansas, Missouri, and parts of Florida, Louisiana, and Mississippi, besides having entire control of the Mississippi River.

**517. Events in the South.** — A Federal force marched from Jacksonville toward the interior of Florida. At Ocean Pond, or Olustee, a battle was fought, in which the Confederates were victorious. The invading forces retreated, and Florida was saved.

General Sherman planned to attack Mobile and moved an army in that direction. At Meridian, Mississippi, he destroyed

the railroads in order to keep the Confederates from reaching the Mississippi, so that Federal troops might be spared from guarding the fortifications along its banks, and aid in the invasion of Georgia in the spring. General Forrest, a famous Southern general, drove back the Federal cavalry sent forward to assist in this work, and succeeded in checking the advance upon Mobile. Sherman returned to Vicksburg.

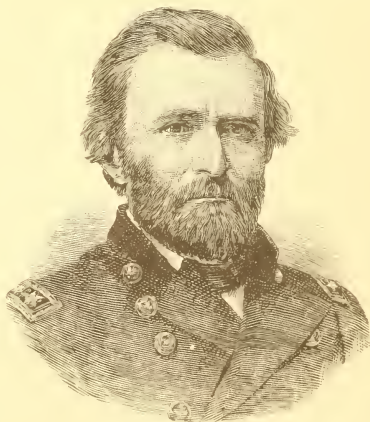
**518. Red River Campaign.** — Early in March General Banks started from New Orleans, intending to conquer Louisiana, and then to push onward through Texas. General Steele was to move southward from Arkansas and join him. The route selected by Banks was along the Red River to Shreveport. He was assisted by a detachment from Sherman's force at Vicksburg, and Admiral Porter's fleet of gunboats. At Mansfield he was attacked by the Confederates under General Richard Taylor, and defeated. Taylor followed the retreating Federals, and late in the afternoon of the next day another battle was begun, which ended only as night came on. Both armies held their ground, but Banks retreated during the night.

After Banks's defeat Steele also withdrew, pursued by General E. Kirby Smith, then in command of the Trans-Mississippi department. The campaign was a failure.

“ON TO RICHMOND”

**519. Changes in the Army.** — General Grant's success in the West had made him a great favorite throughout the North, and

in March he was promoted to the rank of



GENERAL GRANT

lieutenant general, which had not been given to any man since General Scott had held the office. According to the Constitution, the President was commander in chief of the army. Grant left Sherman in command of the army at Chattanooga, and removed his headquarters to Virginia, where Meade still held his position, subject to the orders of General Grant.

**520. Plans.** — Preparations were begun for two grand movements of the Federal armies — one, under the special direction of Grant, toward Richmond, still defended by Lee; the other under Sherman, toward Atlanta, against the forces of Johnston. The possession of Atlanta was considered important because of the many railroads centering there, its manufactories of military stores, and the immense quantities of supplies in the city. The strength of both governments was directed toward these two movements.

**521. Grant advances.** — About the first of May, the new Federal commander began to move his army. He sent Sigel  
May to Staunton and Lynchburg, to cut off Lee's supplies from the south. He also sent Butler up the James River against Petersburg. About the same time he himself, with an army numbering one hundred and fifty thousand, crossed the Rapidan, leaving behind a large reserve to be used as reënforcements if necessary.

**522. Lee meets Grant.** — The force with which General Lee was to meet and keep back this immense army numbered seventy-five thousand. With these men he fought a succession of battles, which began soon after General Grant's advance and did not end until nearly the middle of June. The first  
May 5 and 6 of these is known as the battle of the Wilderness. It began the day after Grant crossed the Rapidan, and lasted through two days. The losses were terrible. Grant now attempted to get his army between Lee and Richmond by a flank movement, but Lee hurried  
May 8-10 his troops to Spottsylvania Courthouse, and placed them behind earthworks there. Grant tried in vain to drive them from that position. After desperate



fighting at Spottsylvania Grant began another flank movement, but he found Lee at the North Anna ready to meet him again. Another effort at flanking brought Grant to Cold Harbor, nearer to Richmond. The Confederates fought behind earthworks, and every charge made upon them was repulsed. The ground in front of the works was covered with the dead and the wounded. This battle proved to Grant that he could not drive Lee from his fortifications on the north of Richmond, and he changed his base to the James, where he took his position about the middle of June. He had lost forty thousand men — nearly two thirds as many as General Lee's whole army.

June 3

**523. Petersburg and Lynchburg.** — While the fighting in the Wilderness was going on, General Beauregard, by rapid and skillful marching, succeeded in reaching Petersburg in time to prevent General Butler's advance upon the town. General Breckenridge met Sigel's expedition and routed him at Newmarket, May 15. General Hunter then took Sigel's command and marched to Lynchburg. Early had been sent by Lee to Lynchburg; he succeeded in routing Hunter's force, and compelled it to retreat to the Ohio.

May 6  
and 15

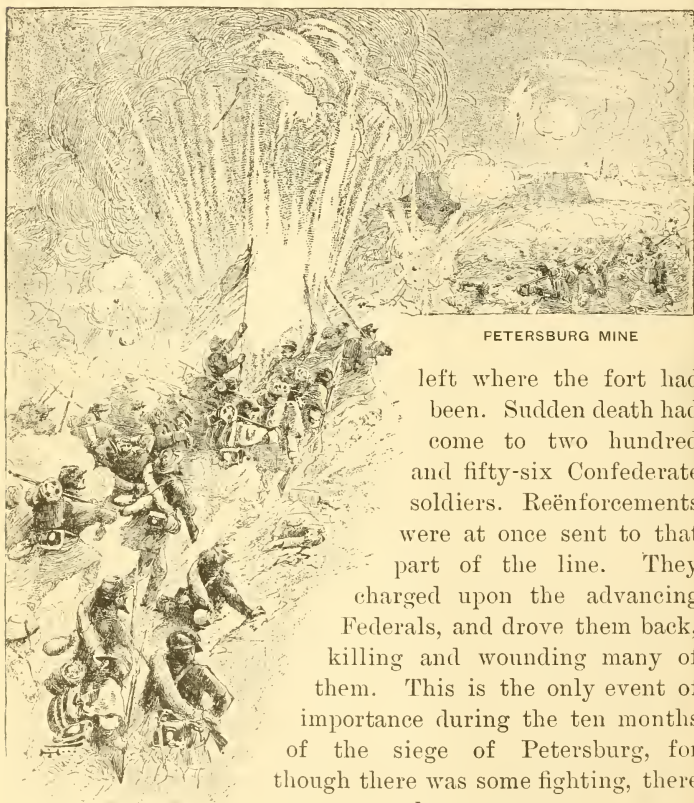
**524. Siege of Petersburg.** — By crossing the James River, Grant hoped to be able to capture Petersburg, twenty miles south of Richmond, before it could be strongly fortified; but Lee sent a part of his army to reënforce Beauregard at that place, and although Grant struggled four days for the possession of the city, he failed again. He then encamped his army south of the Appomattox River. All active movements were ended for the year. Heavy earthworks were thrown up by the Federals in preparation for the siege of Petersburg and Richmond.

June 15

**525. The Petersburg Mine.** — One of the generals in Grant's army proposed that a tunnel be dug to one of the Confederate forts at Petersburg, so that it might be blown up with gunpowder. A regiment of Pennsylvania

July 30

miners was put to work, and when the mine was finished powder was placed under the fort. With the explosion, a mass of earth and smoke burst up into the air and fell backward with a tremendous noise. A wide chasm was



PETERSBURG MINE

left where the fort had been. Sudden death had come to two hundred and fifty-six Confederate soldiers. Reënforcements were at once sent to that part of the line. They charged upon the advancing Federals, and drove them back, killing and wounding many of them. This is the only event of importance during the ten months of the siege of Petersburg, for though there was some fighting, there was no general engagement.

**526. Early's Invasion.** — General Lee, supposing that but few troops had been left at Washington, and hoping to induce Grant to move a part of his force from Petersburg, sent General Early with about twelve thousand men into Mary-

land, northwest of Washington. He marched more than two hundred miles through the Shenandoah valley, and then moved toward the capital. Fears were at once excited for the safety of Washington and Baltimore, frightened citizens having reported his force to be four or five times its real numbers. He found the fortifications of Washington too strong to be taken by a small army, and, after remaining in the neighborhood of the capital long enough for his march to produce its desired effect, he



GENERAL EARLY

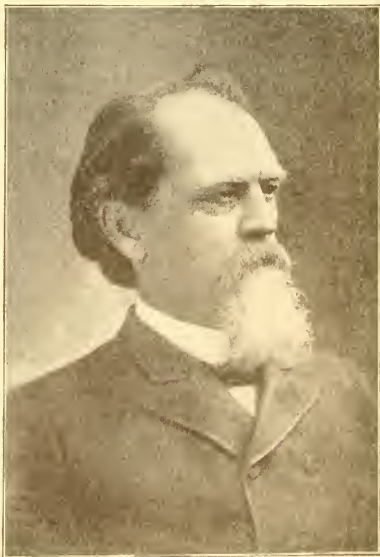
returned to Virginia. Near the close of July, he sent his cavalry to Chambersburg, Pennsylvania, and it set fire to the town. Having collected a large amount of supplies, he then retreated to Winchester.

**527. General Philip Sheridan**, who had superseded General Hunter, was sent in pursuit. He attacked Early at Winchester, and forced him to retreat. Just one month after this defeat, Early sent General John B. Gordon<sup>1</sup> to attack

Sept. 19

retreat. Just

<sup>1</sup> John Brown Gordon was born in Upson County, Georgia, July 6, 1832. After graduating with honor from the State University of Georgia, he studied law and practiced in Atlanta. When the South called for volunteers, he was among the first to offer his sword in her defense. From his Revolutionary ancestors he inherited a soldier's courage, and by repeated promotions he rose from a gallant



GENERAL GORDON

Sheridan's army at Cedar Creek. He marched at night along a narrow road between the river and the mountains, reached the rear of the Federal camp a little before daylight, and woke the soldiers with the noise of his muskets. At the same time, Early appeared in front. The surprise was so complete that Sheridan's army was soon flying panic-stricken back to Winchester. The commander, who was absent at the time of the attack,

Oct. 19

met his routed army, restored it to order, and returned with it. The Confederates were in turn surprised, defeated, and driven back.



GENERAL SHERIDAN

crow, in traversing the valley, would be obliged to carry his rations."<sup>1</sup>

captain to lieutenant general. He commanded a wing of the Army of Virginia, and became one of the most famous of the Confederate generals. In 1873 he was elected to the United States Senate; after holding the office of governor of Georgia two successive terms, he was again returned to the Senate. Through his efforts the Federal troops were removed from South Carolina, and the ladies of the state expressed their appreciation by presenting him with a massive silver service, mounted with a gold palmetto tree. At the organization of the United Confederate Veteran Association he was unanimously chosen commandant, and at every annual meeting he has been reelected with great enthusiasm by the old soldiers.

<sup>1</sup> According to Sheridan's official report, he burned 2000 barns filled with wheat and hay, 70 mills stored with flour and grain, and drove off or killed 7000 head of cattle and sheep, besides a large number of horses.

## SHERMAN IN GEORGIA

**528. Sherman's Advance.** — About the time that Grant crossed the Rapidan, Sherman, with one hundred and fifty thousand men, began to move toward Atlanta. General J. E. Johnston opposed him with an army of forty-two thousand, stationed at Dalton, Georgia. With these, he managed to check Sherman's advance and to keep him seventy days on the march of one hundred miles between Dalton and Atlanta. Sherman's marches were flank movements, similar to those of Grant's against Lee in Virginia. He kept a part of his army in front, and sent the rest around through the country to move behind the Confederates. Johnston's army was so small that he was compelled to retreat before every such movement, yet he fought whenever he saw any hope of success. At Resaca, a battle was fought (May 14, 15), after which Sherman moved to the left again, and Johnston retreated to New Hope Church and Dallas. The fighting continued through three days at New Hope Church. Johnston then marched southward to Kenesaw Mountain.



GENERAL SHERMAN

**529. Kenesaw Mountain.** — Johnston fortified this strong position and held it a month.<sup>1</sup> Sherman's attacks were repulsed with great slaughter. Finding that he could not drive the Confederates back, he moved his army

June 27

<sup>1</sup> **Death of General Polk.** — General Johnston, with a party of officers, among whom was General Polk, rode to the front on June 14 to examine his fortifications. Just as they were about to return, a Federal battery directed its fire toward them, and the third shot was fatal to General Polk.



around Kenesaw, and threatened to cut Johnston off from his supplies. This compelled Johnston to cross the Chatta-

hoochee early in July, and retreat to Atlanta. About five thousand of the reserve militia of Georgia were then sent to Atlanta by Governor Brown<sup>1</sup> to aid General Johnston. They were commanded by Generals G. W. Smith and Robert Toombs. A short time after arriving at Atlanta, Johnston was removed from the command of the army, and General John B. Hood was appointed his successor.



SCALE OF MILES 0 10 20 30 40 50

ATLANTA CAMPAIGN

**530. Fall of Atlanta.** — Soon after taking command, Hood sallied out to attack Sherman, on the north and east of the city. Three great battles were fought near Atlanta, in which Hood lost eight thousand men. The siege of Atlanta then began, and continued forty days. Sherman moved slowly from the east around toward the south, his advance held in check by the Confederates. A battle was fought at Jonesboro, which resulted in giving the

July 20, 22,  
and 28



GENERAL TOOMBS

<sup>1</sup> Joseph Emerson Brown was born in Pickens District, South Carolina, April 15, 1821. His parents removed to the northern part of Georgia while he was still a child. His school days were passed in the log schoolhouse near his mountain home. He had heard something of the Calhoun Academy, in Anderson, South Carolina, and he determined to become a student there. Although the journey was a long one in those days, that did not discourage him. He owned a yoke of oxen, which his younger brother helped him to drive more than one hundred miles of the way. The sale of his oxen, and the amount which he received for teaching a country school during vacation months, paid his expenses for the first year. He was allowed to continue his studies two years longer on his "promise to pay"; this he did by taking charge of a flourishing school in Canton, Georgia. He was admitted to the bar at the age of twenty-four, and did not remain long in private life. He

Federals control of the railroad to Macon. As Atlanta was dependent upon this road for supplies, Hood retreated toward Newnan, and Sherman marched triumphantly into the city, September 2.

Sept. 2

**531. Hood's Campaign in Tennessee.** — All the supplies for Sherman's army were brought over the railroad from Chattanooga to Atlanta, and Hood formed the plan of moving his army behind Sherman and destroying this railroad. This he accomplished, and then marched on toward Nashville. Sherman, however, did not retreat, as Hood expected, but remained in Atlanta. Hood found a Federal force at Franklin, Tennessee, which he attacked on November 30. The Federals fought behind fortifications, and his losses were frightful. At night, after the battle, the opposing force retreated, and Hood pressed on to Nashville. There, he fought two days, amidst sleet and snow, for the possession of the city, but his desperate struggle accomplished nothing. His army was defeated and scattered, and he had no choice but retreat. After recrossing the Tennessee River, Hood asked to be relieved of his command, and General Richard Taylor, who had been a prominent officer in Louisiana, was commissioned to fill his place.



GENERAL HOOD

Nov. 30

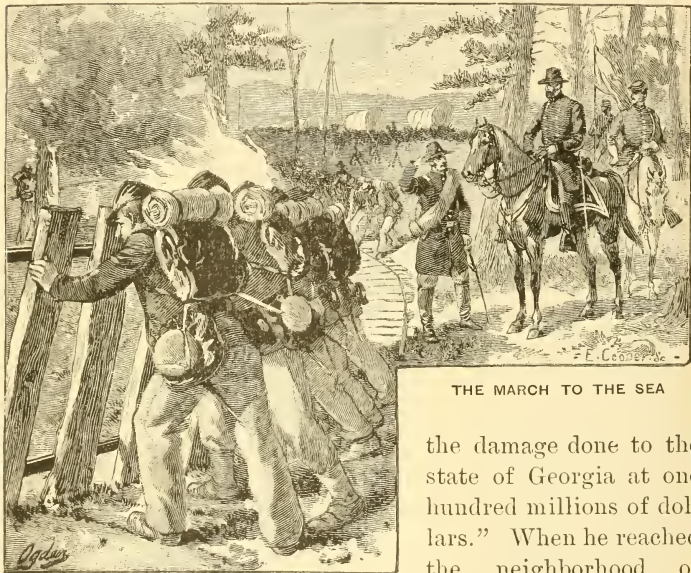
Dec. 15  
and 16

**532. Burning Atlanta.** — While Hood was in Tennessee, Sherman warned the citizens to leave Atlanta. He said he wanted to make the place "a pure military garrison with no civil population to influence military measures." When petitioned by the mayor and councilmen of the city to reconsider the order, he positively refused. Afterwards directions for burning the city were given to the Federal soldiers, and the torch destroyed what cannon balls and shells had left.

was elected to the senate of Georgia in 1849, and afterwards became judge of the superior court. In 1857 he was made governor of the state; he held that office during the war until 1865. For a number of years he held a conspicuous place in the Senate of the United States. He died at his home in Atlanta, November 30, 1894.

**533. The March to the Sea.** — Sherman then started with his army on his march to the sea. All the way from Atlanta to

Nov. 15 Savannah he left behind him a track of desolation thirty miles wide, and he fed his army with supplies captured along the route. In his report, he says: "I estimate



THE MARCH TO THE SEA

the damage done to the state of Georgia at one hundred millions of dollars." When he reached the neighborhood of Savannah, defended by

General Hardee, he began preparations for its capture.

**534. Evacuation of Savannah.** — A few days after his arrival, Sherman demanded the surrender of Savannah, but it was refused. Hardee's little army spent two busy days in the city, and then during the night secretly crossed the Savannah River on pontoon bridges into South Carolina. Sherman was disappointed to find that these troops had escaped capture, and that

Dec. 21 they had taken with them forty-nine pieces of artillery. Four days before Christmas he entered and took possession of Savannah, and at once established communi-

cations with the Federal fleet, Fort McAllister having surrendered a short time before. Besides military stores, thousands of bales of cotton were captured.

### 535. Naval Operations. —

The Confederates lost several valuable war vessels this year. The *Alabama*, under the command of Captain Raphael Semmes, was sunk in a battle with the United States ship *Kearsarge*, near the coast of France. The *Albemarle* was lost near Plymouth,<sup>1</sup> North Carolina, by the explosion of a Federal torpedo. The *Florida* was



CAPTAIN SEMMES

captured off the coast of Brazil. In August a fleet, under the command of Admiral Farragut, was sent to take possession of Mobile. The Confederate ironclad *Tennessee* fought near Mobile until compelled to surrender. Before the end of the month the three forts which defended the city were taken; but Mobile was not surrendered until the next spring.

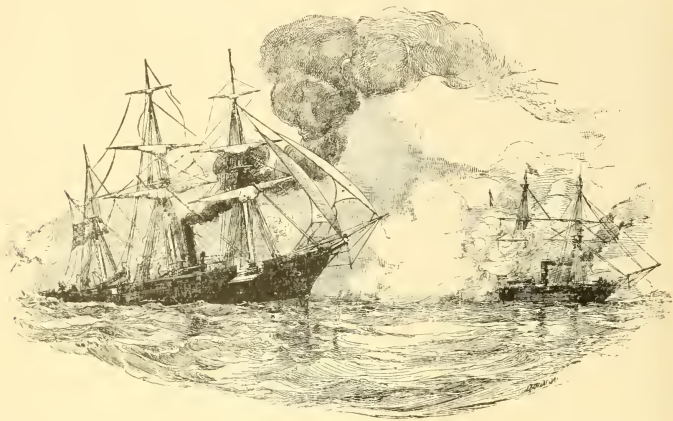
**536. Wilmington.** — There was now but one port left by which the Confederates could evade the blockade, or hope for intercourse with the world beyond. The harbor at Wilmington, North Carolina, was defended by Fort Fisher. Early in the winter a fleet of fifty war ships and ironclads under Admiral Porter, aided by a land force commanded by General Butler, was sent against it. The fort was bombarded by the fleet for two days, but refused to sur-

Dec. 24  
and 25

<sup>1</sup> **Capture of Plymouth.** — General Hoke, with the aid of the gunboat *Albemarle*, on April 20, succeeded in capturing Plymouth, on the North Carolina coast, from the Federals.

render. A ship torpedo, containing two hundred and fifty tons of gunpowder, was exploded, but nothing was gained by it.

**537. Nevada admitted to the Union.** — This year witnessed the admission of Nevada as one of the states of the Union. The name means "snow clad."



THE SINKING OF THE ALABAMA

**538. Presidential Election.** — In November, an election for President was held, and Lincoln was reelected, with Andrew Johnson, of Tennessee, as Vice President. General George B. McClellan had been nominated by the Democratic party, but Lincoln and Johnson received the electoral votes of all but three states.

#### QUESTIONS FOR STUDY

What was the condition of the Confederacy when General Grant took command of the Federal armies? Give an outline of the Virginia campaign. Trace the marches through Tennessee and Georgia to the sea. Name the leading generals on each side. What was accomplished on the coast? Add to your table the battles of 1864.



## CHAPTER V

## CLOSE OF THE WAR — 1865

**539. The Situation.** — New Year's day, 1865, brought little to make the Confederates hopeful or happy. The Federals had obtained possession of the greater part of the Confederacy, and had increased their army to about a million men. The whole Southern army in the field did not number more than one hundred and fifty thousand; their supplies were nearly exhausted, and there was little hope of obtaining more.

**540. Fort Fisher.** — In January the fleet which had attempted the capture of Fort Fisher once more attacked it, aided by a stronger land force than before. After another terrific bombardment its garrison surrendered. Within Jan. 15 a few weeks the other defenses of Wilmington fell into the hands of the Federals, and then the city was taken.

**541. Johnston in North Carolina.** — It was important that a military force should be placed between Sherman in Savannah and Lee's army at Petersburg, and all the troops that could be spared from other places were sent to General Joseph E. Johnston, who had been placed in command in North Carolina.

**542. Sherman in the Carolinas.** — In February, Feb. 17 Sherman marched from Savannah

through South Carolina, destroying everything as he passed. Columbia was captured and burned by his army on February 17. Charleston was evacuated the same day, and the Federals took posses-



SHERMAN'S CAMPAIGN IN NORTH CAROLINA

sion on the 18th. Sherman left a path of smoking ruins behind him. He crossed the Cape Fear River at Fayetteville.

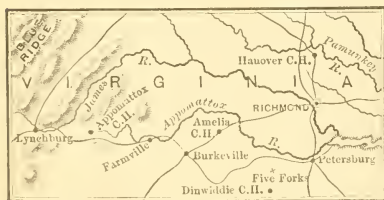
**543. Averysboro and Bentonville.** — At Fayetteville, Sherman divided his army, and the two divisions marched toward Goldsboro, on roads ten or twelve miles apart. **Mar. 16, 19** Johnston attempted to oppose this march, and fought **and 23** two battles with the left wing — at Averysboro and at Bentonville. He could accomplish nothing more than a short delay of the Federal advance. Sherman entered Goldsboro on March 23, where he was joined by reënforcements. Johnston moved to Raleigh.

**544. Virginia.** — The siege of Petersburg and Richmond had been continued through the fall and winter. Several unsuccessful attempts had been made to move around the right of Lee's army and take possession of the South Side Railroad, so as to cut off his supplies from the south.

While Sherman was on his march through the Carolinas, Sheridan with a cavalry force moved toward Staunton. **March** General Early's army had become so small that he was obliged to retreat, and Sheridan, finding nothing in his way, moved on to Petersburg, where he had been ordered to join Grant. In addition to the ruin which he had already accomplished, he destroyed the canal and the railroads by which a part of the supplies were sent to Richmond.

General Lee now commanded an army of less than forty thousand, with which he was defending a line thirty-five miles long around Richmond and Petersburg against Grant's immense host of nearly two hundred thousand.

**545. Richmond evacuated.** — On April 1 Grant ordered the movement of a heavy force against Lee's right at Five Forks. Every man that could be spared was sent to



SCALE OF MILES 0 10 20 30 40 50

VICINITY OF RICHMOND

this place, and the Confederate line, whose ranks had been so thin that "in some places it consisted of but one man to every seven yards," had to be stretched out still more. The next day a general attack was made along the lines near Petersburg, and they were broken. The troops defended their position as long as possible, and then withdrew to a line nearer the city, where they remained until the darkness covered their movements. During the night they marched out. The siege, which had been resisted for nearly a year against such tremendous odds, was ended, and in the morning Grant's army took possession of Richmond.

April 2

**546. The Surrender.** — General Lee then moved his thinned ranks westward, hoping to reach Johnston in North Carolina.



CONFEDERATE TROOPERS AT APPOMATTOX

Grant pursued him and there was some fighting. The retreat continued for seven days. At last, at Appomattox Courthouse, the advance under General Gordon made the last charge. There Lee met the Federal cavalry in his front, and overpowered by numbers he could do nothing but surrender.

April 9

When General Lee returned from his interview with General Grant, his officers gathered around him to express the sympathy they felt for their beloved commander; few words were spoken — their lips quivered with a sorrow too deep for words. Eight thousand men at Appomattox — twenty-six thousand in all — were paroled. They were all that were left of Lee's army.

**547. Johnston's Surrender.** — After the news of General Lee's surrender, Johnston and Sherman met at a  
April 18 house near Durhams Station, not far from Raleigh, to make terms for the surrender of Johnston's army. These two generals signed an agreement that all the Confederate armies should be disbanded, and the soldiers sent to their homes, with orders to place their arms in the state arsenals and "cease from acts of war"; that each of the seceded states should return to its former place in the Union, as soon as its government officers should take the oath of allegiance to the United States; and that the rights of the people under the Constitution should be protected.

The Federal authorities objected to these terms, and on April 26 Johnston surrendered, as Lee had done, without any reference to political questions. By the last of  
April 26 May, all the other Confederate generals had surrendered, and the great civil war was over.

**548. President Lincoln assassinated.** — While Sherman and Johnston were planning for the close of the war, and the people of the North were rejoicing over their success,  
April 14 they were shocked to hear that President Lincoln had been assassinated. He was shot, while seated in a theater in Washington, by John Wilkes Booth, an actor.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> As Booth leaped back to the stage, his spur caught in the folds of a flag draped in front of the President's box, and he fell. The fall broke his leg. Booth escaped during the excitement which his act had caused. A horse was in readiness for him, and he fled without difficulty. He was afterwards pursued and found in a barn. He refused to surrender, and was shot. Four of the persons thought to have had a part in the crime were hanged, and others were sentenced to long terms of imprisonment.

**549. Capture of President Davis.** — Some time before the surrender of Richmond, the President's family had left that city to influence other families to leave it because of the scarcity of supplies. When Richmond was evacuated, President Davis and his Cabinet went by train to Danville, and then to Greensboro, North Carolina. From that place they traveled in ambulances and wagons through the country, intending to go to some place beyond the Mississippi River. Mr. Davis was



CITIZENS LEAVING RICHMOND

captured near Irwinsville, Georgia, and sent to Fortress Monroe, where he remained a prisoner more than two years. He had been accused of treason, but was released without trial. The remaining years of his life were spent quietly at his home in Mississippi.

**550. Federal and Confederate Resources.** — At the beginning of the war, the North contained a population of more than twenty-two millions; that of the South was less than ten millions, and four millions of that number were negro slaves, who took no part in the war. The whole number of Federal troops enlisted in the army and navy amounted to 2,600,000, while the whole number of Confederates was a little over 600,000. When the Federal army was disbanded, over 1,000,000 men were sent home; the whole number of paroled Confederate soldiers was 150,000.

**551. Losses.** — It has been estimated that the number of men killed on both sides during the war, including those who died from wounds or disease, amounted to 450,000.

**552. The War Debt.** — An immense amount of paper money



was issued by both governments to meet the expenses of the vast armies and navies, and a heavy burden of debt was brought upon both. Just before the close of the war one dollar in gold was worth one hundred dollars in Confederate money. The Federal war debt amounted to \$2,700,000,000.

#### CONFEDERATE COMMANDERS IN 1864-5, IN ORDER OF RANK

*General Robert E. Lee*, in command of the Army of Northern Virginia.

*General Joseph E. Johnston*, in command of the Army of Tennessee in 1864, and of all the troops in the Department of South Carolina, Georgia, Florida, etc., in 1865.

*General Gustave T. Beauregard*, in command of the Department of South Carolina, Georgia, Florida, etc., in 1864.

*General Braxton Bragg*, in command at Richmond, Virginia.

*General E. Kirby Smith*, in command of the Trans-Mississippi Department, comprising Taylor's and Buckner's corps in Louisiana, Magruder's corps in Texas, and Sterling Price's corps in Arkansas.

*General John B. Hood*, in command of the Army of Tennessee, after July, 1864.

*General Richard Taylor*, in command of the Department of Alabama, Mississippi, and West Tennessee, after May, 1864.

#### QUESTIONS FOR STUDY

What effect had the surrender of Lee's army upon the Confederacy? Which do you think were the most important battles of the war? Name two of the best generals in the Southern army. Why was there greater suffering in the South than in the North during the war? What became of the Confederate money? What questions did the war settle?

#### TOPICS FOR REVIEW

1861

1. State the cause of the civil war of 1861.
2. Give an account of the bombardment of Fort Sumter, and tell its results.
3. What were the positions of the Federal and Confederate armies in Virginia in the summer of 1861?
4. What movements were made?
5. Describe the battle of Manassas.
6. What movements were made in the West at the same time?

7. Tell the condition of the Confederate navy.
8. Tell what you know of the *Trent* affair.
9. Give a sketch of the lives of the Confederate President and Vice President.

## 1862

10. Give the history of the *Virginia* and its battle with the *Monitor*.
11. Tell about the Federal occupation of Tennessee and Kentucky.
12. Give an account of the battle of Shiloh.
13. What circumstances attended the fall of New Orleans?
14. Give the history of the Peninsular campaign.
15. Write a sketch of the life and character of General R. E. Lee.
16. Tell what you know of General G. B. McClellan.
17. Give a sketch of General Thomas J. Jackson.
18. Describe Jackson's Valley campaign.
19. What occurred while General Halleck commanded the Federal army?
20. Write an account of General Lee's invasion of Maryland.
21. Describe the battle of Fredericksburg.
22. What transpired in the West while Lee was fighting McClellan and Burnside?

## 1863

23. What were the plans for carrying on the war in 1863?
24. Give the history of General Hooker's attempt on Richmond.
25. Tell all you know of the efforts to take Vicksburg.
26. Give the principal events of General Lee's Pennsylvania campaign.
27. Trace the movements of Bragg and Rosecrans after the fall of Vicksburg.
28. What were some of the naval operations of 1863?

## 1864

29. What victory saved Florida from invasion?
30. Give an account of General Grant's advance on Richmond.
31. Tell the history of the expeditions sent to meet Butler, Sigel, and Hunter.
32. Write a sketch of General Early's invasion of Maryland.
33. Describe Sherman's advance on Atlanta.
34. Write the history of the movements of General Hood's army.
35. Give an account of Sherman's "March to the Sea."
36. Tell about the Red River expedition.
37. Tell about the naval losses.

## 1865

38. What was the situation of the Confederates in 1865?

39. What events marked General Sherman's march through the Carolinas ?
40. Give the history of the siege of Petersburg and Lee's surrender.
41. Tell the circumstances of Johnston's surrender.
42. Give an account of the death of President Lincoln.
43. Relate the history of the capture of President Davis.
44. Give a statement of the strength and resources of the North and of the South for carrying on the war.
45. State the losses on both sides, and the debt incurred.

### CHRONOLOGICAL TABLE OF IMPORTANT EVENTS (1861-5)

#### *President*

ABRAHAM LINCOLN (1861-5).

1861. Abraham Lincoln inaugurated President, March 4.  
The bombardment of Fort Sumter, April 12.  
Baltimore riot, April 19.  
Confederate capital changed to Richmond, Virginia, in May.  
Battle at Carthage, Missouri, July 5.  
First battle of Manassas, July 21.  
Battle of Oakhill, Missouri, August 10.  
Battle of Lexington, Missouri, September 20.  
Confederate commissioners seized on the *Trent*, November 8.
1862. Battle of Mill Springs, January 19.  
Surrender of Fort Henry, February 6, and of Fort Donelson, February 16.  
Roanoake Island surrendered, February 8.  
President Davis inaugurated the second time, February 22.  
Fall of Nashville, Tennessee, February 23.  
Battle of Elkhorn, or Pea Ridge, March 7 and 8.  
Battle between the *Monitor* and the *Virginia*, March 9.  
Newbern, North Carolina, surrendered, March 14.  
Jackson's Valley campaign, March-June.  
Siege of Yorktown, April 4-May 4.  
Battle of Shiloh, April 6 and 7.  
Surrender of Island No. 10, April 7.  
Fort Pulaski, Georgia, surrendered, April 11.  
Fall of New Orleans, April 25.  
Battle of Williamsburg, May 5.  
Battle of Seven Pines, May 31 and June 1.  
General R. E. Lee made commander in Virginia, in June.  
Fort Pillow evacuated, June 4.

1862. Memphis surrendered, June 6.  
 The Seven Days' battle around Richmond, June 25–July 1.  
 Battle of Cedar Mountain, August 9.  
 Second battle of Manassas, August 29 and 30.  
 General Lee invaded Maryland, in September.  
 Bragg invaded Kentucky, in September and October.  
 Battle of South Mountain, September 14.  
 Harpers Ferry captured by General Jackson, September 15.  
 Battle of Sharpsburg, or Antietam, September 17.  
 The battle of Fredericksburg, December 13.  
 The battle of Murfreesboro, Tennessee, December 31, and January 2, 1863.
1863. Emancipation Proclamation, January 1.  
 Fort Sumter attacked, in April.  
 The battle of Chancellorsville, May 2 and 3.  
 The death of General Thomas J. Jackson, May 10.  
 The siege of Vicksburg begun, May 10.  
 West Virginia admitted to the Union, June 20.  
 Morgan's raid through Kentucky and Ohio, June 27–July 26.  
 The battle of Gettysburg, July 1–3.  
 Vicksburg surrendered, July 4.  
 Port Hudson surrendered, July 9.  
 The battles of Chickamauga, September 19 and 20.  
 The battle of Missionary Ridge, November 25.  
 General J. E. Johnston put in command of the Army of Tennessee, in December.
1864. The battle of Olustee, or Ocean Pond, Florida, February 20.  
 General Grant made lieutenant general, March 9.  
 Battle of Mansfield, April 8.  
 Battle of Pleasant Hill, April 9.  
 Battle of the Wilderness, May 5 and 6.  
 Battle of Spottsylvania Courthouse, May 8–10.  
 General Sherman began his march toward Atlanta, May 4.  
 General Beauregard drove back Butler's forces from Petersburg, May 6.  
 The battles of Dalton, Resaca, and New Hope Church, in May.  
 General Sigel routed at Newmarket, Virginia, May 15.  
 Battle of Cold Harbor, June 3.  
 Siege of Petersburg begun, June 15.  
 Battle of Kenesaw Mountain, June 27.  
 Battle between the *Alabama* and the *Kearsarge*, June 19.  
 General Early invades Maryland and Pennsylvania, in July.

1864. Confederate works at Petersburg blown up, July 30.  
 General Johnston retreated to Atlanta, July 4.  
 General Hood placed in command, in July.  
 The battles of Atlanta, July 20-28.  
 The forts at Mobile attacked, in August.  
 Evacuation of Atlanta, September 2.  
 Battle of Winchester, September 19.  
 Battle of Cedar Creek, October 19.  
 Nevada admitted as a state, October 31.  
 Sherman began his march to the sea, November 15.  
 The battle of Franklin, Tennessee, November 30.  
 The battle of Nashville, December 15 and 16.  
 The fall of Savannah, December 21.  
 General Taylor in command of the Army of Tennessee, in December.
1865. Fort Fisher, North Carolina, captured, January 15.  
 General Johnston put in command of troops to meet Sherman in North Carolina, in January.  
 Columbia, South Carolina, captured by Sherman, February 17.  
 Charleston, South Carolina, occupied, February 18.  
 Goldsboro entered, March 23.  
 The battle of Five Forks, April 1.  
 Richmond evacuated, April 2.  
 General Lee surrendered, April 9.  
 President Lincoln shot, April 14.  
 The Sherman-Johnston Convention, April 18.  
 General Johnston surrendered, April 26.  
 President Davis captured, May 10.

#### PARALLEL READING

JEFFERSON DAVIS's *Short History of the Confederate States*. — JOHN ESTEN COOKE : *Hammer and Rapier*; *Mohun, or the Last Days of Lee and his Paladins*. — THOMAS NELSON PAGE : *Among the Camps*; *Two Little Confederates*. — JENNEY THORNWELL CLARKE's *Songs of the South*.



## VI—RECENT HISTORY

### CHAPTER I

#### RECONSTRUCTION

JOHNSON'S <sup>1</sup> ADMINISTRATION — 1865-9

**553. President Johnson's Plan for Reconstruction.** — A few hours after President Lincoln's death, the Vice President, Andrew Johnson, of Tennessee, took the oath of office and entered upon his duties as President of the United States. The first subject that engaged the attention of the government was the conditions upon which the seceded states should return to the Union. The President, believing that the states had never been out of the Union, issued a proclamation, offering pardon to all citizens except certain classes of leaders, who were not allowed to vote or hold office. He appointed provisional governors for the Southern States; conventions were called, new state governments were organized, and representatives to Congress were elected.



ANDREW JOHNSON

<sup>1</sup> **Andrew Johnson** was born in Raleigh, North Carolina, in 1808. His parents were too poor to give him an education, and he was never at school a day in his life. At ten he was apprenticed to a tailor. Later, he removed to Greenville, Tennessee, where he married. By that time he had managed to learn to read, and, with his wife's help, he mastered several other branches of study. He was three times a member of the Tennessee legislature, and for ten successive years a representative in Congress; he was then chosen governor of Tennessee. While a senator in Congress, the Southern States

554. **The Thirteenth Amendment** to the Constitution, which abolished slavery in the United States, was ratified 1865 by the states, December, 1865.

555. **The Fourteenth Amendment.** — When Congress met, the President's plan was rejected, and the newly elected Southern members were not allowed to take their seats. The Fourteenth Amendment to the Constitution was proposed, by which the negroes<sup>1</sup> would be allowed to vote and some of the best and most prominent men of the South would be disfranchised.

1866 Tennessee ratified this amendment, and was readmitted to the Union, 1866. As the other Southern States were unwilling to agree to this, they were divided into five military districts, declared to be under military law, and a military ruler was placed over each.

556. **Desolation in the South.** — The Confederate soldier, "ragged, half-starved, heavy-hearted," came home from the war, to find everything sadly changed. Battles and armies had left destruction behind them, and desolation confronted him on every side. He found "his house in ruins, his farm devastated, his slaves freed, his stock killed, his barn empty, his trade destroyed, and his money worthless." Though crushed by the pain of defeat and poverty, and by sad memories of the loved and lost, these heroes bravely resolved to take up their heavy burdens and build anew the waste places of the South. Many a cavalryman harnessed his war horse to the plow, that he might provide a harvest for the coming winter. Men who till now had known nothing of toil, began to labor wherever work could be found; and women who had

seceded, and he became very unpopular because of his opposition to the secession movement. In 1862, he was appointed military governor of Tennessee, by President Lincoln. After his retirement from the presidency, he was again elected to the United States Senate; but he died in 1875 before the expiration of his term.

<sup>1</sup> Generally, the kindest feeling had existed between the slave and his master. During the four years of war, though in some sections nearly all the white men were away in the army, their families dwelt in safety on the plantations with the negroes. There were no attempts at insurrection. After the war, the latter were hired as servants and laborers by the white people.

lived in elegance and ease, cheerfully gave themselves to the work of the household and the schoolroom.

**557. Memorial Day.** — The beautiful custom of decorating the soldiers' graves began in Columbus, Georgia. Mrs. Mary A. Williams, whose husband, Colonel C. J. Williams, lay buried in the cemetery of that city, with her little daughter made frequent visits to his grave, and kept it covered with flowers. Once the little girl asked permission to leave a portion of her flowers at the graves of other soldiers who lay sleeping near. This suggested to Mrs. Williams the plan of setting apart one day in every year to lay a tribute of love upon each Confederate grave throughout the South.

The Soldiers' Aid Societies were still at work trying to provide for the orphans of Confederate soldiers. Mrs. Williams, president of the society in Columbus, made an appeal through the columns of the *Columbus Times*, in which she said: "We beg the assistance of the press and the ladies throughout the South to aid us in the effort to set apart a certain day to be observed from the Potomac to the Rio Grande, and to be handed down through time as a religious custom of the South, to wreath the graves of our martyred dead with flowers; and we propose the 26th day of April as the day."

The members of the Soldiers' Aid Societies readily responded and reorganized under the name of Memorial Societies. The object of their new work was to make the necessary preparations for the observance of Memorial Day. The work of love which thus had its beginning is now an established custom North and South. For climatic reasons, the day is not the same in all states, but the spirit is the same.

Apr. 26,  
1866

**558. Carpetbaggers.** — The Southern States suffered much under this military rule, and by June, 1868, all except Virginia, Mississippi, and Texas had accepted the conditions of Congress and were restored to their places in the Union; in 1870 these other states were readmitted. The "reconstructed" governments were not suited to the people. No man could

hold office until he had taken the "ironclad" oath, that he had done nothing to aid or encourage secession. This excluded from office nearly all men of character and ability. A crowd of dishonest office seekers from the North swarmed into the South. They were called "carpetbaggers," because when they came all that belonged to them could easily be carried in a small carpetbag. The Southern white people who were on friendly terms with them were called "scalawags." By flattering the ignorant negroes to obtain their votes, these men managed to secure for themselves the best offices, and thus gained control of the state and county governments, which they kept by the aid of the Federal forces stationed throughout the South.

The negroes, who all through the war had been faithful to their masters' families, became so interested in politics, and so elated over the promise made them by the carpetbaggers, of "forty acres of land and a mule" for each man, that they were very unreliable and inefficient as workers. The plan of sharing the crops with the farm laborers was adopted; but even then it was so difficult to hire a sufficient number to cultivate the plantations, that many people rented their land to tenants, white or colored, and moved into the towns. This arrangement proved most unsatisfactory, and in many districts the farming interests were for a time badly neglected.

**559. The Kuklux Klan.** — For the purpose of holding in check these unprincipled men, and of frightening the idle and superstitious negroes, so that they would not interfere with the white people, secret societies, called "Kuklux Klans," were organized. Some acts of severity were committed, which the majority of the members disapproved; and the crimes committed by a few under the cloak of this society were condemned and deeply regretted by all good people. As peace returned and good government was restored, these societies disappeared.

**560. The Atlantic Cable.** — Professor Morse had been convinced, by experiments, that telegraphic messages could be

sent under water, and he had predicted that a line would some day cross the ocean. Cyrus W. Field, a wealthy merchant of New York, bent all his energies toward the realization of this wonderful prophecy. Soundings in the Atlantic between Newfoundland and the British Isles showed the existence of the Deep Sea Plateau, where the water is not more than two and a half miles deep and the bottom of the ocean is level. This was selected as the place for laying the submarine cable. A company of Englishmen and Americans was formed, and Mr. Field contributed one fourth of the capital needed. After much labor and several failures, the cable was finally landed at Hearts Content, Newfoundland, in 1858, and messages were sent between Ireland and America. In 1858 a short time, however, the wire ceased to work, and not a word could be sent or received.

But this disappointment did not discourage the leader of the enterprise. He felt sure that the difficulty could be remedied, and he continued his efforts. The civil war, however, absorbed the attention of the people of the United States for several years. At last, in 1865, another cable was made in England; the *Great Eastern*, the largest steamer on the sea, began laying it. In mid-ocean it parted, and the steamer returned to England. The next year, another attempt was made. The *Great Eastern* succeeded this time in landing the cable, and Mr. Field, who had crossed the ocean fifty times in the interests of the undertaking, had the satis-



LAYING THE FIRST ATLANTIC CABLE



faction of seeing the new cable work successfully.<sup>1</sup> Congress voted him a gold medal in honor of the wonderful achievement.

Other lines are now in operation between the Old World and the New; and competition has so greatly reduced the expense of the message, that the newspapers daily print the news of the world, and quote the market prices of all countries.

**561. Alaska and Nebraska.** — The new territory of Alaska, embracing five hundred thousand square miles, in 1867 was purchased by the United States from Russia for \$7,200,000.

In the same year Nebraska was admitted as the thirty-seventh state.

**562. Impeachment.** — The President could not approve many of the acts of Congress, and after he had vetoed several of them, a quarrel arose between him and Congress. The Tenure of Office Bill, just then passed, prohibited the President from removing any officials for whose appointment the consent of the Senate was necessary. Believing this bill to be unconstitutional, the President removed Edwin M. Stanton, Secretary of War, from his Cabinet. Congress then charged the President with a violation of law, and he was tried before the Senate. He was acquitted, but the vote against him lacked only one of making the two thirds vote necessary for conviction.

**563. Presidential Election.** — When Johnson's term was drawing to a close, the Republicans nominated for President General Ulysses S. Grant, of Illinois, a great favorite with the Northern people because he had succeeded in bringing the war to a close; Schuyler Colfax, of Indiana, was nominated for Vice President.

The Republicans approved the reconstruction acts of Congress. The Democrats opposed these acts as unconstitutional

<sup>1</sup> The *Great Eastern*, after landing the cable, returned to the spot where the former one had snapped. After grappling for a month in water two miles deep, the end was found and joined to the remainder of the cable, which was successfully laid.

and revolutionary, and insisted that all the states should be immediately restored to their former position under the Constitution. Their candidate was Horatio Seymour, of New York. Grant was elected by a large majority.

GRANT'S<sup>1</sup> ADMINISTRATION —  
1869-77

**564. The Fifteenth Amendment.** — It was not until the first year of President Grant's term Jan., 1870 that Virginia, Mississippi, and Texas were allowed to seat their representatives in Congress, and the "reconstruction of the Union" was com-



ULYSSES S. GRANT

<sup>1</sup> Ulysses S. Grant was born in Ohio in 1822. At seventeen, he entered the Military Academy at West Point. After graduation, he served in the Mexican War under General Taylor. The official reports of military movements and battles during that war contain honorable mention of his gallantry on several occasions. In the early part of the civil war, he commanded a regiment from Illinois. He rose gradually from rank to rank, until, after the battle of Shiloh, he succeeded General Halleck in the command of all the Western land forces. His genius in the management of large numbers of men showed itself in his campaigns in Virginia. His success there won for him many honors as a great soldier.

His two terms as President of the United States, just after the days of reconstruction, were full of important and difficult work for the country. After his retirement from office, he made a tour around the world, which occupied a little more than two years. Magnificent receptions were prepared for him in the principal cities of Europe through which he passed, and in India, China, and Japan he met with many evidences of kind feeling and respect for the country which he represented. After the failures on Wall Street in 1884, in which ex-President Grant lost heavily, Congress voted to place him upon the army retired list, "with the rank and full pay of a general in the army." His health had failed; month after month he suffered from a painful disease of the throat, which, in spite of the best medical skill, ended his life. His death occurred in 1885 at Mount McGregor, New York, whither he had been removed in the hope that his life might be prolonged.

pleted.<sup>1</sup> These states adopted the Constitution with its Fifteenth Amendment, which gave the right of voting to all the citizens of the United States without regard to "race, color, or previous condition of servitude."

**565. Death of General Lee.** — After the close of the war, General Lee accepted the office of president of Washington

College, at Lexington, and there his last years were  
 Oct. 12, spent. His noble and eventful life ended October  
 1870 12, 1870, in his sixty-fourth year. The news of

General Lee's death brought sorrow everywhere. In the cities and towns, "the tolling of bells, flags at half mast, and public meetings of citizens wearing mourning, marked in every portion of the South a great public calamity." Those who knew him best loved him best, and the chief mourners were the soldiers who had followed him through many campaigns, and who had cheered "Uncle Robert" (their familiar name for him) as, in his gray uniform, he rode down the lines on his old war horse "Traveler." He left them a noble example. His life was a grand illustration of fidelity to duty. His fame as a military commander has gone out to the world, and he is honored in Europe and America, at the North as well as at the South, as "the great general, the true Christian, and the valiant soldier."<sup>2</sup>

**566. The Weather Bureau.** — Congress in 1870 provided for the establishment of a Weather Bureau, which was at first under the direction of the Signal Service of the army, but

<sup>1</sup> The Georgia delegates were seated in Congress in 1868, but because of some misunderstanding they were sent back, and were not reseated until 1871.

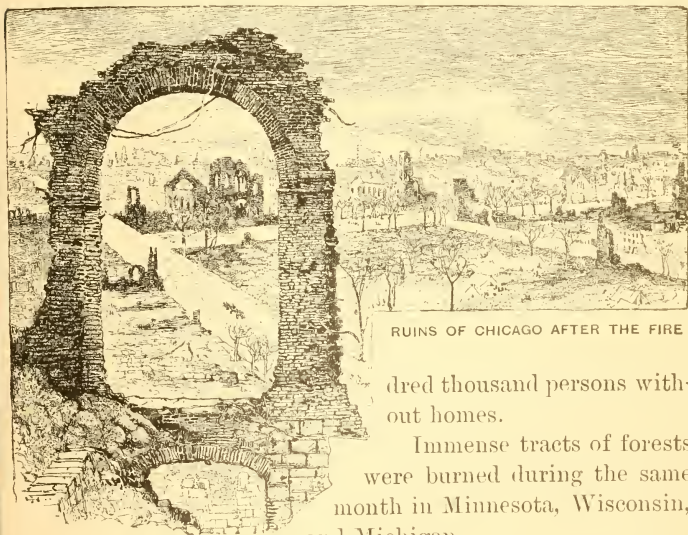
<sup>2</sup> In a letter to his son at school, General Lee wrote: "Never do a wrong thing to make a friend or keep one; the man who requires you to do so is dearly purchased at a sacrifice. Deal kindly, but firmly, with all your classmates; you will find it the policy which wears best. Above all, do not appear to others what you are not. If you have any fault to find with any one, tell him, not others, of what you complain; there is no more dangerous experiment than that of undertaking to be one thing before a man's face and another behind his back. We should live, act, and say nothing to the injury of any one. . . . Duty, then, is the sublimest word in our language. Do your duty in all things. . . . You cannot do more; you should never wish to do less."

afterwards under that of the Department of Agriculture. Its duty is to make careful observations of the weather in different parts of the United States, and to publish a report of the conditions and changes. The telegraph is of great service in announcing the approach of storms, rains, cold waves, or fair weather. The predictions made have been of great value to farmers and land travelers, but more especially to seamen, and millions of dollars' worth of property has been saved. Every sea captain now consults the reports of the Weather Bureau before leaving port. The daily forecasts of weather in the newspapers are taken from these reports.

1870

**567. Fires at the North.** — In October, 1871, a terrible fire swept over the city of Chicago. It destroyed about eighteen thousand houses, and left nearly one hun-

1871



RUINS OF CHICAGO AFTER THE FIRE

dred thousand persons without homes.

Immense tracts of forests were burned during the same month in Minnesota, Wisconsin, and Michigan.

The next year the city of Boston was visited by fire, and an area of sixty-five acres was left in ashes. The loss was estimated at seventy-five million dollars.

**568. Treaty of Washington.** — The United States claimed that the damage done to her commerce during the war by the *Alabama* and other Confederate vessels fitted out in British ports, ought to be paid by Great Britain. After some

1871 correspondence between the two countries, it was decided that the trouble should be settled by arbitration. Commissioners from England and the United States met in Washington, and formed a treaty to settle "all causes of difference between the two countries," including the Alabama claims, the Canadian fisheries, and the Northwest boundary.

**569. The Alabama claims** were referred to five commissioners chosen by the United States, Great Britain, Switzerland,

1872 Italy, and Brazil, who met at Geneva, Switzerland, in 1872, and decided that England should pay \$15,500,000 to the United States for the injuries done.

**570. Northwest Boundary.** — The treaty left the Emperor of Germany to decide the boundary between the United

1872 States and British Columbia, a matter disputed since 1846. That two great nations should be willing to settle disputes in this manner showed a great advancement in civilization.

**571. Fisheries.** — By the terms of the treaty of Washington, the fishermen of both nations were allowed to fish in the waters near the eastern coast of Canada and the United States. But fish were more abundant in the Canadian waters,

1877 and they were preferred by the fishermen. In 1877, the first year of Hayes's administration, commissioners decided that the United States should pay Great Britain \$5,500,000 for the fishing done in English waters during the previous twelve years.

1872 **572. Grant Reëlected.** — General Grant was re-elected at the close of his first term.

**573. Indian Wars.** — The Modoc Indians in Oregon refused to confine themselves to the lands set apart for them according to their treaty, and the government made an attempt to force them into obedience. This caused fighting,

1872-3



which continued about a year. By that time all their warriors had been killed or captured.

After it was reported that gold had been found in the Black Hills, the white men flocked there without any regard for the rights of the Indians. The Sioux sought revenge by attacking the settlers in Montana and the Dakotas. In 1876 General Custer was sent with a regiment against them. At Little Big



GENERAL CUSTER

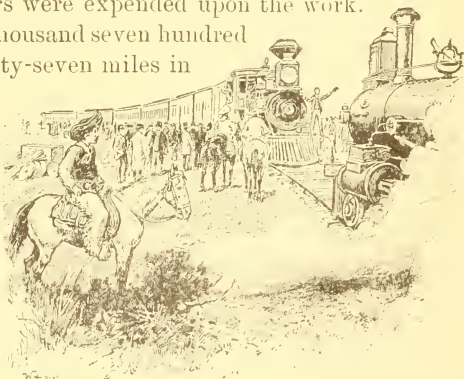
Horn River, with a portion of his troops, he attacked the Indian camp; there he and every man with him were killed. Other Federal forces afterwards succeeded in defeating these Indians, and they surrendered. Their chiefs, Sitting Bull and Crazy Horse, with a few companions, fled to British America.

**574. Union Pacific Railroad.**—During the first year of Grant's administration, the first Pacific Railroad was completed. Three years were expended upon the work.

It is one thousand seven hundred and seventy-seven miles in

length, and, connecting with other railroads, brings the Atlantic and Pacific oceans into communication. It cost about \$75,000,000. Congress began the building of this railroad, but later a company called

the Credit Mobilier was formed to complete it. The railroad was a great success and paid large interest on the money invested. A few years later, suspicion was aroused that



THE FIRST TRAINS MEETING ON THE UNION PACIFIC

some of the members of Congress had been influenced by gifts of railroad stock to vote for measures in favor of the road. After investigation two members of the House of Representatives were censured.

**575. Panic of 1873.** — The paper currency issued during the war had depreciated in value, and although there had been some increase in its value after the close of the war, yet in

1873 1873 the paper dollar was still not worth as much as a gold dollar. This state of the currency, together with wild railroad speculation, the enormous destruction of wealth by fire, and general conditions following the war, finally ended in 1873 in a widespread financial panic. Many failures in business followed, and its effects were felt throughout the country for several years.

**576. Silver Demonetized.** — The silver dollar had not been in general circulation for a number of years, and its value had increased until it was worth more than a gold dollar.

1873 Congress decided to discontinue its coinage, and to make it no longer a legal tender — that is, it could not be used for the payment of taxes and revenue duties. This was called “demonetizing” silver.

**577. Centennial Exposition.** — During this administration the hundredth anniversary of the Declaration of Independence

1876 was celebrated by a great International Exhibition, or World’s Fair, held in Fairmount Park, Philadelphia. Large buildings were erected for the use of the exhibitors. The six principal houses covered about sixty acres. Products, manufactures, and works of art were sent from all parts of the world. Nearly ten million visitors attended the exhibition, which was open from May to November.

In the public square, near Independence Hall in Philadelphia, platforms were erected for those who were to take part in the 4th of July ceremonies. Among the guests was Richard Henry Lee, the grandson of the mover of the Declaration of Independence. When he came forward, holding in his hand the original document, yellow with age, he was greeted

with a loud shout from the multitude. His reading of the Declaration was followed by other interesting exercises.



HORTICULTURAL HALL, FAIRMOUNT PARK

**578. The Telephone.** — One of the most interesting instruments exhibited at the Centennial was the telephone, invented by Alexander Graham Bell, of the Boston University. Since then a network of telephone wires has been strung above every city and town, or carried in underground channels, and it has become so completely a part of every community that any interruption of the telephone would cause serious inconvenience to all kinds of business. Improvements invented by Thomas Edison made it possible to use the telephone at long distances. New York has been placed in communication with Boston, Chicago, and other cities. In January, 1897, there were 805,711 miles of telephone wire in use.

1876

**579. Colorado** came into the Union as the thirty-eighth state in 1876. It has been called the "centennial state."

1876

**580. Presidential Election.** — Another presidential election occurred this year. The Republican candidates were Rutherford B. Hayes, of Ohio, for President, and William A. Wheeler, of New York, for Vice President. The Democrats voted for Samuel J. Tilden, of New York, and Thomas A. Hendricks, of Indiana. During the years of reconstruction, committees had been appointed in each of the

1876



SAMUEL J. TILDEN

Southern States to receive and count the returns of the elections. They were called "returning boards," and had great power. When the returns for the presidential electors were first received in South Carolina, Florida, and Louisiana, they gave a majority of votes to the Democrats; but the returning boards cast out a great many votes, declaring that the Republican voters had been threatened and prevented from voting. The Democratic electors claimed that they had been fairly elected, and accused the Republicans of fraud. The electors of both parties, therefore, sent their votes to Congress. Double returns were also sent from Oregon. The matter was finally settled by a commission of five senators, five representatives, and five judges of the Supreme Court. According to their decision, Hayes and Wheeler had received one electoral vote more than the other candidates. The Democrats thought this unjust, but made no further opposition.

### QUESTIONS FOR STUDY

What was the condition of the South when the war closed? What did the behavior of the negroes during the war show? What were the troubles endured by the Southern people during the years of reconstruction? What was the President's plan for readmitting the seceded states? What plan did Congress favor? What classes of men do you think should be allowed to vote? Give your reasons. What questions were settled by the treaty of Washington? Would these questions have been settled in the same way one hundred years before? What is meant by demone-

## CHAPTER II

## PROGRESS

HAYES'S<sup>1</sup> ADMINISTRATION — 1877-81

**581. Removal of the Federal Troops.** — One of the first events of President Hayes's administration was the removal of the Fed-

1877 eral troops from the Southern States. The Southern

Democrats then resumed control of the state governments, and the South began to recover rapidly from the effects of the war.

**582. Railroad Strikes.** — The depressed condition of business result-

1877 ing from the panic of 1873 made it necessary to reduce

the wages of workmen on the railroads. The men were so enraged at this, that they stopped work on different roads and threatened the lives

of men employed in their places. The number of the strikers increased rapidly. They gathered together in mobs, tearing up the railroad tracks and stopping the trains and the mails. The trouble began on the principal lines of railroad in Maryland, Pennsylvania, and West Virginia; it soon spread through other states, and became so unmanageable that the militia could not control it. A request was then sent to the President for help. The miners joined in the strike and the riots. At Pitts-



RUTHERFORD B. HAYES

<sup>1</sup> **Rutherford Birchard Hayes** was born in Delaware, Ohio, in 1822. He graduated at Kenyon College, Ohio, and afterwards completed a course at the Harvard Law School. At Fremont, Ohio, he began the practice of his profession, but he soon removed to Cincinnati, where he became a successful member of the bar. He entered the army in 1861 as major in an Ohio regiment; he served through the war, and had reached the rank of brevet major general at its close. His name was enrolled among the members of Congress in 1865. After a reelection he resigned his seat to become governor of his state. This honor he received three times from the people of Ohio. He died in 1893.



burg, the state troops attempted to arrest the leading rioters,



RIOT AT PITTSBURG

but the crowd threw stones and bricks, and many persons were killed. Freight cars were robbed, depots and machine shops burned, and cars and engines destroyed, the damage amounting to \$3,000,000. Riots also occurred at St. Louis, Chicago, and other cities. United States forces were sent to quell these disturbances, but it was three weeks before peace was

restored, and the railroads were again in working order.

### 583. The Electric Light.

—The next step in prog-

ress was the  
1878 production  
of light by electricity. The arc lamp, when introduced, was too expensive for general use, but repeated improvements were made until it became practicable to use it for lighting city streets. The lighting of the interior of houses by electricity began in 1879, and it is to the untiring



THOMAS A. EDISON

labor of Thomas Alva Edison, who spent weeks and months making experiments and searching for the secret, that we are indebted for the beautiful incandescent lights which rival gas in our homes. 1879

**584. The Bland Silver Bill.** — Not long after the passage of the bill which demonetized silver, rich silver mines were discovered in Nevada and other places; and so much of it was produced that its value, as compared with that of gold, was soon greatly decreased. Many wished to see the silver dollar restored to its place in the currency, and Congress passed the Bland Silver Bill. It provided for the coinage of a silver dollar of  $412\frac{1}{2}$  grains, making it a legal tender; and it instructed the Treasury Department to coin not less than \$2,000,000 and not more than \$4,000,000 each month. President Hayes vetoed the bill; but it was passed by a two thirds vote. 1878

**585. Yellow Fever.** — A fearful epidemic of yellow fever desolated the Mississippi valley from New Orleans to Memphis, and the country along the Gulf coast. People fled from their homes, and whole cities were almost deserted; but there were everywhere persons who nobly remained with the sick and the dying. Liberal contributions were sent to the fever-stricken districts from people North and South. The disease increased and spread, and was stopped only with the frost. About seven thousand deaths were reported. It is now known that such scourges can be prevented by sanitary and quarantine regulations. 1878

**586. Resumption of Specie Payments.** — Up to this time, paper money, that is, United States notes, had been in general use. These notes were called "greenbacks" from the color of the design printed upon the back. The Secretary of the Treasury announced that he would be ready to pay gold for United States notes on the 1st of January, 1879. Greenbacks rose at once to a level with gold and silver, and coin began to circulate freely. 1879

**587. Prosperity.** — This administration was marked by great

prosperity throughout the country. The crops of wheat and cotton were unusually large, and brought great wealth. Railroads were built through the South and West, thus opening to the world rich belts of country. Every branch of trade and industry became active and profitable. Hundreds and thousands of emigrants from Europe came to our ports.



JAMES A. GARFIELD

**588. Presidential Election.**—The Republicans were successful in the election of 1880. Their candidates were General 1880 James A. Garfield, of Ohio, and Chester A. Arthur, of New York. The Democratic candidates were Winfield S. Hancock, of Pennsylvania, and William H. English, of Indiana.

#### ADMINISTRATIONS OF GARFIELD<sup>1</sup> AND ARTHUR—1881-5

**589. Death of President Garfield.**—Early in July, President Garfield, on his way to New England, was shot at the Baltimore and Potomac depot in Washington, by a dis- 1881 appointed office seeker. The wounded President, accompanied by physicians, was taken back to the White

<sup>1</sup> James A. Garfield was born in Cayuga County, Ohio, in 1831. When only two years old, his mother was left a widow with four small children. They were living too far west to be within reach of good schools. James reached the age of fourteen with almost no education, and his help was necessary for the support of the family. He worked as a carpenter, a bookkeeper, and then as a boatman on a canal. He became ambitious to learn, and he worked early and late to pay for his tuition. He accepted the place of janitor in Hiram College in order to become a student there. In spite of the difficulties which he had to meet, he graduated with honor at Williams College, and afterwards became president of the institution in which he began as janitor. He also studied law and was admitted to the bar. When he joined the army he was colonel of an Ohio regiment. He had reached the rank of brevet major general, when he resigned his commission to take his seat as a representative in Congress, which position he filled until his election to the Senate in 1879.

House. After weeks of intense suffering he was removed to Elberon, on the coast of New Jersey. His friends hoped that he would be benefited by the change, but he continued to grow weaker, and died September 19, 1881.

**590. President Arthur inaugurated.** — After the death of General Garfield, the oath of office was administered to the Vice President, Chester A. Arthur,<sup>1</sup> and he became the twenty-first President. David Davis, of Illinois, was elected president of the Senate, *pro tempore*, and became the acting Vice President.



CHESTER A. ARTHUR

**591. Arctic Explorations.** — The steamer *Jeannette*, commanded by De Long, and owned by James Gordon Bennett of New York, on July 8, 1879, sailed from San Francisco to the Arctic Ocean, north of Bering Strait. Months and years went by, and nothing was heard of her. Another ship was sent to search for the missing steamer, and it was found that the crew had been compelled to leave the vessel, and had perished near the mouth of the Lena River, off the bleak coast of northern Siberia. In 1883 the only survivors, four in number, reached New York.

**592. Civil Service Reform Bill.** — The custom which President Jackson had inaugurated, of rewarding his political friends by appointing them to public offices, had been continued by the Presidents who succeeded him; and clerks often received their appointment through the political influence of congressmen. But people were beginning to believe that men in the government service should be chosen for their fitness, and not merely because they might be

<sup>1</sup> Chester Alan Arthur was born in Vermont in 1830. After leaving college he taught school and studied law. During Grant's administration he held the office of collector of the port of New York. His death occurred in New York in 1886, the year after the close of his presidential term.

Democrats or Republicans. The Pendleton Civil Service Reform Bill was introduced in the Senate. It aimed to correct the evils in the civil service and to fill the offices with those who would perform their duties with "fidelity, capacity, and honesty." It authorized the President to appoint a commission to examine applicants for positions in the government offices in Washington, and in all post offices and custom-

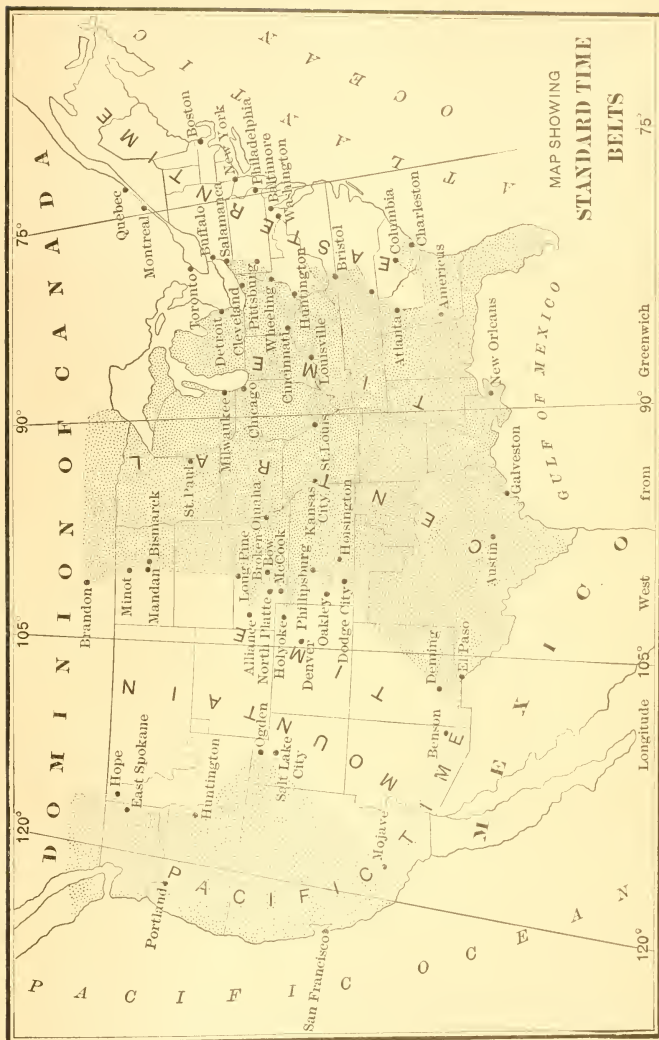


AN ARCTIC SCENE

houses throughout the country employing more than fifty persons, and to recommend those found to be qualified for the duties of the offices. After much discussion, this bill was passed.

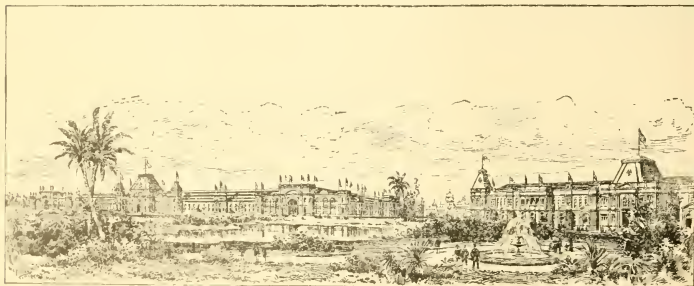
**593. Reduction of Postage.** — The rate of postage for an ordinary letter was reduced the same year from three cents to two cents.





**594. New Standard of Time.** — Much annoyance and confusion had been caused by the various standards of time in different parts of the country, and in 1883, a Railway Time Convention in Chicago adopted an improved system. The United States was divided into four sections, each of which embraced about fifteen degrees of longitude. In each section the local time of the central meridian was to be observed as the standard, though this rule is not strictly adhered to. The first section, reaching seven and one half degrees on each side of the 75th meridian west from Greenwich, has "eastern time." The standard time of the second section is the local time of the 90th meridian, one hour later than eastern time, and is known as "central time." The third division has the local time of the 105th meridian; it is called "mountain time," and is two hours slower than eastern time. The 120th meridian passes through the central part of the fourth division, which reaches the Pacific Ocean. The standard time for this is three hours behind that of the first section, and is called "Pacific time." On November 18, 1883, clocks and watches were set by this new standard of time.

**595. International Cotton Exposition.** — The first cotton exported from the United States was shipped in 1784. The amount was eight bags, which held about as much as one bale. The export in 1884 was 3,884,233 bales, and about 2,000,000 of these were shipped from New



INTERNATIONAL COTTON EXPOSITION BUILDINGS, NEW ORLEANS

Orleans, which, as the greatest cotton port of the United States, was selected as the place for holding an exposition in honor of the hundredth anniversary of the first shipment and to show the immense growth of the cotton industry. For this purpose Congress appropriated a loan of \$1,000,000, and \$500,000 more were raised by subscription. There was a magnificent display of products and manufactures, showing the progress of the South. The cotton crop this year reached 8,000,000 bales, and large quantities of corn and wheat were raised. Factories and mills had been built in many places. Large numbers of visitors from all parts of the country were in attendance. President Arthur, far away in Washington, touched an electric button and set the machinery in motion.

**596. The Electric Car.** — For the electric car, the country is under obligations to Edison. His experiments were with a railroad two miles long at Menlo Park, New Jersey. Electric cars were first used for passengers in 1884. The "trolley" soon began everywhere to take the place of horse cars. Their rapid movement put the workingman within easy reach of the pure air of the country, and the cities expanded in all directions. More than two billion passengers are now carried over the electric railroads of the country every year.

**597. Presidential Election.** — A great deal of revenue for carrying on the war had been obtained by raising the duty on imported goods, and as this high tariff had been continued since the war, much of the war debt had been paid, and a surplus was accumulating in the treasury. Hence, the people desired to be relieved of this heavy tax, and the question of reducing the tariff became a leading point in the presidential campaign of 1884.

The Republicans nominated James G. Blaine, of Maine. A number of independent Republicans were displeased with this nomination, and determined to vote with the Democrats. They were called "mugwumps," an old Indian word meaning "chiefs." The Democrats nominated Grover Cleve-

land, of New York, and Thomas A. Hendricks, of Indiana. This party pledged itself to "revise the tariff in a spirit of fairness to all interests," and to "limit all taxation to the requirement of economical government." A new party, called Prohibitionists, had been organized by the temperance reformers, who were using every effort to banish from the country the use of intoxicating liquors. They nominated John P. St. John, of Kansas. Benjamin F. Butler, of Massachusetts, represented the Independent Republicans, who were unwilling to vote for Mr. Blaine.

The vote of the people turned in favor of the Democrats, and after ruling during a term of nearly twenty-five years the Republican party retired from office.

### QUESTIONS FOR STUDY

What was the result of removing the Federal troops from the South? What caused the railroad strikes of 1877? What was the effect of the Bland Silver Bill? Of the resumption of specie payments? Is it probable that we will ever have another scourge of yellow fever? Why not? What are the objects of civil service reform? What did the Exposition at New Orleans celebrate? What are the advantages of the trolley car? What do you know of Thomas A. Edison?

## CHAPTER III

### LABOR TROUBLES AND THE TARIFF

#### CLEVELAND'S<sup>1</sup> FIRST ADMINISTRATION — 1885-9

**598. Civil Service Reform inaugurated.** — When President Cleveland entered upon the duties of his office, he retained the majority of the employés who had received their appoint-

<sup>1</sup> Grover Cleveland, the son of a Presbyterian minister, was born in the little town of Caldwell, New Jersey, in 1837. He was only three years old when his father removed to Fayetteville, New York. His time was spent in school until he reached the age of fourteen. He then began work as a clerk in one of the stores of the town. There his industry and faithful attention to his duties soon won for him the confidence and respect of his employers. After his father's death, he went to try his fortune in the city of Buffalo. There he had some hard struggles with poverty. At length he decided to

ments under the former administration. The "spoils system" seemed to have come to an end, and the requirements of the Civil Service Bill were generally observed.

#### 599. Death of Noted Men. —

A number of prominent men died during this administration. Among them were Generals Grant, McClellan, and Hancock, Vice President Hendricks, Mr. Tilden, and ex-President Arthur. The death of General Grant in 1886 caused universal sorrow. Flags were hoisted at half-mast, the White House was draped in



GROVER CLEVELAND

mourning. By a proclamation of the President, all places of business in the capital city were ordered to be closed on the day of his funeral, and an immense procession in New York marched with his remains to the tomb. The sudden death of Vice President Hendricks, at his home in Indianapolis, occurred the same year. Congress at its next meeting elected John Sherman, of Ohio, president of the Senate *pro tempore*, and he became the acting Vice President.

**600. Law of Presidential Succession.** — The death of President Garfield and of Vice President Hendricks caused the people to feel the necessity for a law which should define more exactly upon whom the duties of the chief office of the government should devolve, in case of the death

1886

begin the study of law. He took the position of office boy for a prominent law firm in Buffalo, and obtained the privilege of using the library belonging to the firm. By industry and study, he finally gained the preparation necessary for admission to the bar, to which his ambition had all along pointed. His advent into public life was as assistant district attorney; later he became a sheriff. Afterwards, at a time when his services were greatly needed, he was elected mayor of the city of Buffalo. The next step was to the governor's office in the capital of New York. While he filled that position he was nominated by the Democratic convention as a candidate for the presidency.

Mr. Cleveland and Miss Frances Folsom, of Buffalo, New York, were married in the Blue Room of the White House on the evening of June 2, 1886.



of both President and Vice President. Accordingly a bill was passed by Congress, providing that, if both of these offices should from any cause become vacant, a member of the Cabinet should be made President, the order of succession being as follows: the Secretaries of State, Treasury, War, the Attorney-General, the Postmaster-General, and the Secretaries of the Navy and the Interior. There was not at that time a separate department of Agriculture; it was not established until 1889.

**601. Counting Electoral Votes.** — To prevent a repetition of the trouble which occurred in some of the states at the time of the presidential election of 1876, Congress in 1886 passed an act revising the method of counting electoral votes, and making each state responsible for the settlement of any dispute arising in regard to its own vote.

**602. Interstate Commerce Act.** — Congress also passed a law for regulating the rates charged by railroads for passengers and freight between the states.

**603. Knights of Labor.** — For several years a feeling of enmity had been growing up between the workingmen and their employers—the manufacturers and the capitalists of the country. When the laboring men saw the immense wealth of the men who owned the mines, the mills, and the railroads, it seemed to the former that they were not getting a just share of the profits of their labor. They felt that the hours of labor were too long, and they began to urge upon their employers the justice of paying them their usual wages for eight hours a day. All over the country societies called “Knights of Labor” were formed. At their meetings this question was freely discussed. At length they determined to take the law into their own hands. Strikes were held in many places. In Chicago alone thirty thousand idle men walked the streets. Railroad business was seriously interrupted; switches were left out of place, trains thrown from the track, and much valuable property destroyed.

**604. Haymarket Riot.** — The leading anarchists of Chicago

took advantage of this labor disturbance to form a conspiracy for what they called a "social revolution," in which they hoped by murder and bloodshed to destroy the right of citizens to own private property, and to substitute a custom of holding all things in common. One night in Haymarket Square the anarchists were urging a mob of rioters "to throttle and kill the law," when seven companies of police marched toward the square, and the captain ordered the mob to disperse. In reply, a bomb was thrown into the ranks of the police. The explosion was followed by volley after volley from the advancing companies. To this frightful tumult were added the groans of the wounded and dying. Seven policemen were killed and sixty wounded. Eight anarchists were arrested as leaders in the riot; and after a trial, which lasted two months and attracted the attention of the civilized world, they were convicted and condemned. Four were hanged; one committed suicide in prison; two who were condemned to long imprisonment were, in 1893, pardoned by the governor of Illinois.

May 4,  
1886

**605. Charleston Earthquake.** — Late in the summer of 1886 a frightful earthquake visited the city of Charleston, South Carolina, and the neighboring sections of country. Sad scenes of desolation were left in its track. Houses had crumbled and fallen. The people had

Aug. 31,  
1886



IN CHARLESTON AFTER THE EARTHQUAKE

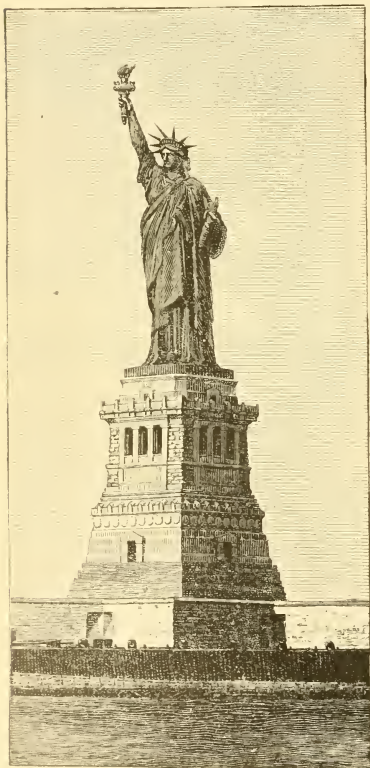
fled in terror from their ruined homes, and were huddled together in frightened groups in the parks and other places of comparative safety. Old landmarks were swept away, and historic buildings that had stood for more than a century were shaken from their foundations. Outside the city the terror

was even worse. Families were gathered about camp fires in the woods. Many of the negroes thought that the earth was about to be destroyed. The shocks were repeated at intervals for many weeks, and they were felt in Augusta, Savannah, and far into the mountain region of Georgia and the Carolinas.

Sympathy was everywhere aroused for the stricken community. Liberal contributions were sent from Northern and Southern cities. The enterprise and courage of the people of Charleston have rebuilt their shattered dwellings, and time has almost covered the scars left by the great calamity.

#### 606. Statue of Liberty. —

This year was marked by another noted event. The people of France, as a token



THE STATUE OF LIBERTY

1886

of the friendship between the two countries, and to commemorate the one hundredth anniversary of the Declaration of Independence, presented the people of the United

States with an immense statue representing the Goddess of Liberty. It was designed by the famous French sculptor, Bartholdi. To show our appreciation of the gift, it was placed upon a conspicuous point in the harbor of New York, where it now greets the ships of every nation as they approach our great commercial city. It was unveiled in October, 1886.

**607. Chinese Immigration.** — The immense number of immigrants from China continually flocking to the Pacific States became a subject for serious thought. The working-men began to complain, because the Chinaman was 1888 willing to work for unreasonably low wages. In 1880 the question had come before Congress, and arrangements were at once begun for a treaty with the Chinese government which would give to the United States the entire management of immigration from China. It was claimed that the introduction among us of one hundred thousand laborers, working at low rates of wages, would be a restraint upon inventions, as they would do away with the need for labor-saving machines. In 1888 a bill was passed to suspend Chinese immigration for ten years. President Arthur and others opposed this bill as a violation of the treaty with China. The law has been very difficult to enforce, because many Chinamen are landed on the Pacific coast of Canada, from which country they can easily enter the United States.

**608. The Tariff in the Presidential Election.** — The question of reducing the tariff, which had been a part of the Democratic platform in 1884, was again dividing the people as 1888 it had the Federalists and Democratic republicans long ago. In his message to Congress, President Cleveland endeavored to show that the surplus was an unnecessary burden of taxation upon the people, and that the industries of the country, having outgrown their infancy, no longer needed a protective tariff. But the friends of a high protective tariff were more numerous than they had been when it first divided the political parties. The manufacturers throughout the country, the men of Pennsylvania who dealt in

iron, and those of Michigan who were interested in lumber, the sugar planters in Louisiana, and the woolgrowers in Texas, were all prospering and getting rich under the high tariff, and were opposed to a reduction.

In 1888 the Democrats renominated Grover Cleveland. Benjamin Harrison, of Indiana, and Levi P. Morton, of New York, represented the Republicans, who favored the protective features of the tariff. The Prohibitionists put forward Clinton B. Fisk, of New Jersey. Five other parties also placed candidates before the people, but the vote was cast in favor of the Republicans.

#### HARRISON'S <sup>1</sup> ADMINISTRATION — 1889-93

**609. New States.** — Just before the close of President Cleveland's term of office, Congress passed a bill to admit North

Dakota, South Dakota, Montana, and Washing- 1889-90

ton as states. These four states contain a larger area than that of the original thirteen colonies. After the adoption of satisfactory constitutions, they were formally admitted. The next year Wyoming and Idaho were admitted to the Union, which increased the number of states to forty-four.



BENJAMIN HARRISON

**610. Oklahoma.** — The United States government purchased from

the Creek and Seminole Indians the western portion of the old Indian Territory. It was named Oklahoma, which

<sup>1</sup> Benjamin Harrison, a grandson of General William H. Harrison, the ninth President and the hero of the battle of Tippecanoe, was born in 1833, at North Bend, Ohio. His great-grandfather, Benjamin Harrison, was one of the signers of the Declaration of Independence. After his graduation at Miami University in 1852, he studied law, and established himself as a member of the bar in Indianapolis. He received the rank of brigadier general during his service as a soldier in the Union army, where he was known as "Little Ben." As a United States senator he won prominence and popularity.



means "beautiful land." By proclamation of the President, it was opened for the entrance of white settlers. A mighty rush was made to secure homesteads. On the night preceding the opening day, thousands were encamped along the Kansas boundary. Precisely at noon, the hour

1889



OKLAHOMA IN 1889

appointed for opening the land, an officer gave the signal with his bugle. Then began the race for homes—a race beyond the power of pen to describe. The claims thus hurriedly acquired were marked off by stakes, tents were spread, and towns were rapidly built.

**611. Washington's Inauguration Centennial.**—The one hundredth anniversary of Washington's inauguration was celebrated in New York city in 1889 with imposing ceremonies; it attracted many visitors from every part of the country.

Apr. 30,  
1889

**612. Johnstown Flood.**—This year brought disaster and ruin to the beautiful Conemaugh valley in Pennsylvania. Johnstown was the principal scene of destruction. Far away up in the mountains, and hundreds of feet above the level

of the town, had been built an artificial lake. The waters of the lake, increased by heavy rains, broke away the dam, and a torrent, fifty feet high and half a mile wide, swept down the valley at a fearful speed of more than two miles a minute. Houses were caught up and dashed to pieces, or whirled onward with the bodies of the drowned. Several thousand human beings perished, and property to the amount of millions of dollars was destroyed. The destitution was so great that aid was generously sent to the sufferers from all over the country.

**613. The Pan-American Congress,**<sup>1</sup> composed of sixty-six delegates from eighteen independent nations of America, representing more than one hundred million people, met in Washington, November 17, 1889, and remained here until the next April. They were entertained as guests of the United States, and during their stay they visited the principal cities of the Union. One of the most important results of the conference was a recommendation that all disputes and differences between these nations should be settled by arbitration instead of by war—a step indicating a great advance in civilization.

**614. McKinley Bill.** — Congress, after a long debate, passed a new tariff, known as the McKinley Bill, from the name of the chairman of the committee which prepared it. Its object was to furnish revenue and to protect American industries. While it reduced the duty on a number of articles and added some to the free list, it raised the duty on a large number of others to protect their production or manufacture in America. This law also provided for a tax on articles on the free list, if the countries from which they came levied duties upon products from our country. This was called the “reciprocity policy,” and originated with the Pan-American Congress.

**615. Sherman Silver Bill.** — Congress also passed the Sherman Act, which required the government to purchase, at the

<sup>1</sup> *Pan* is a Greek word meaning “all.”

market price, four and a half million ounces of silver monthly, and to issue silver certificates or notes to be redeemed in gold or silver. 1890

**616. The "Force" Bill.** — A part of the time of this Congress was spent in discussing a bill which provided that elections should be under Federal control, and that armed forces should be sent to the polls when it should be deemed necessary. This aroused intense indignation, especially throughout the South. There the people determined to stop all trade with those sections where the bill was advocated. The opposition became so serious, that the Northern merchants sent petitions to Congress, begging that the bill should not be passed. 1890

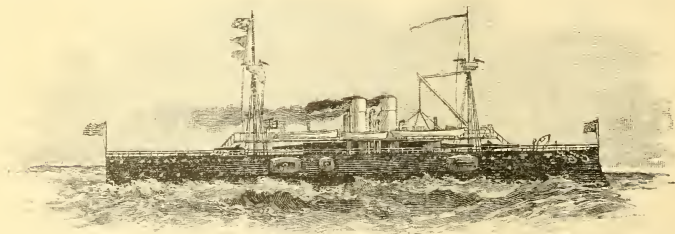
**617. The Mafia.** — On the night of October 15, 1890, the chief of police in New Orleans was murdered by men believed to be members of the "Mafia," a secret society of Italians banded to protect each other in the commission of horrible crimes. A number of these men were arrested, but the courts failed to convict. The citizens, believing that the jury had been intimidated, became so thoroughly aroused that an excited mob rushed to the prison, and killed eleven of the Italian prisoners. Italy demanded reparation for the murder of her citizens, and for a time trouble between Italy and the United States was feared. But it was proved that several of the eleven were not Italian citizens, and that the others belonged to the criminal class in Italy who, in accordance with our immigration laws, had no right to land upon our shores. At last our government, out of good will, paid twenty-five thousand dollars to the families of the prisoners, and relations of friendship between the two countries were renewed. 1890

**618. The International Copyright Law,** the need of which had long been felt, was passed by Congress in 1891. It secures protection to authors in such foreign countries as grant the same privilege to citizens of the United States, and in 1892 France, Belgium, Great Britain, Switzerland, 1891

Germany, and Italy availed themselves of the advantage of this law.<sup>1</sup>

**619. Trouble with Chile.** — A party of sailors from the United States war ship *Baltimore*, on landing at Valparaiso, Chile, was  
 1891. attacked by a mob of citizens who were displeased with the attitude of the United States toward their government. Two of the sailors were killed and others were wounded. Our government demanded an apology from Chile, and also payment for the damage done. This was refused, and it seemed as if war could not be avoided. But at last Chile complied with the demands of the United States.

**620. United States Navy.** — The construction of the new navy was begun in 1882, during President Arthur's adminis-



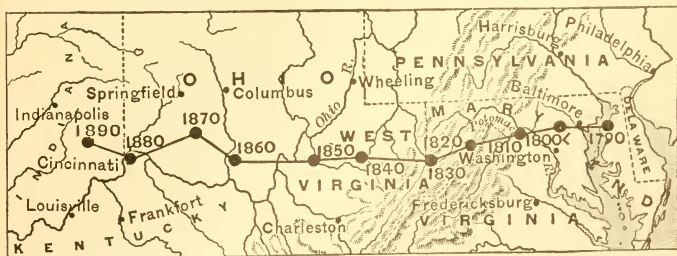
THE NEW BATTLE SHIP TEXAS

tration. Steel cruisers were built to take the place of the old wooden ships. In but little more than ten years the new navy had grown to forty-two vessels, consisting of steel cruisers, battle ships, gunboats, and torpedo boats, all equipped with the latest improvements in guns and machinery. In the Washington Navy Yard the government has established a factory in which it makes its own guns, equal in size and  
 1890-1 efficiency to those made in other countries. In 1890 and 1891 Congress made appropriations for increasing still more the strength of the navy by building war

<sup>1</sup> The Congress of 1891, having a large Democratic majority in the House, elected Charles F. Crisp, of Georgia, for speaker.

vessels of greater weight, power, and speed, and arming them with most efficient batteries and rifles. There were to be built also additional steel-clad gunboats and torpedo boats.

**621. The People's Party.**—The farmers throughout the country felt that they had been dealt with unfairly by capitalists and speculators in the large cities, who, they claimed, so fixed the prices of farm products that little profit was left for them. In 1868 a union called "The Grange" had been formed for the protection of the farmers. This failed to accomplish its purpose, and in 1877 the "Farmers' Alliance" was organized in Texas. Other societies in the South and West combined with it until its membership grew to be very large. The Knights of Labor joined with the Alliance men, and these together formed a powerful new political party called the People's, or the Populist, party. This party was in favor of the "free and unlimited coinage of silver and gold, at the present legal ratio of sixteen to one."<sup>1</sup> It believed that the government should own all the railroads, telegraphs, and telephones; that it should loan money to its citizens at two per cent interest; that labor should be protected against capital; and that foreigners should not be allowed to own land here.



MAP SHOWING WESTWARD MOVEMENT OF CENTER OF POPULATION IN UNITED STATES, 1790-1890

**622. Eleventh Census Report.**—The census of 1890 showed the population of the United States to be 62,622,250, which

<sup>1</sup> *I.e.*, sixteen ounces of silver is worth one of gold.



was a large increase over that of 1880. When the census had been taken a hundred years before, it had only  
1890 counted the people. The census report of 1890 has collected statistics of various kinds, and, when completed, will fill twenty-five volumes, having cost \$11,000,000.

**623. Ballot Reform.** — In order to remove occasions for fraud and to prevent buying and selling votes in elections, by 1892 a number of states had adopted the Australian ballot system with some modifications. By this, provision is made for each voter to receive a ballot printed at public cost, and to have the opportunity of preparing privately an independent vote.

**624. Presidential Election.** — The Republicans, advocating protection and the McKinley Tariff Bill, nominated Benjamin Harrison as President for a second term, with White-  
1892 law Reid, of New York, for Vice President. The Democrats continued to favor a tariff for revenue only, and again nominated Grover Cleveland. Adlai E. Stevenson, of Illinois, was their candidate for Vice President. The People's party nominated James B. Weaver of Iowa. The Prohibition candidate was John Bidwell, of California. The vote resulted in the election of the Democratic candidates.

### QUESTIONS FOR STUDY

What President was elected by the Democrats before Cleveland? In case of the death of both President and Vice President, who would fill the presidential chair? Who are the Knights of Labor? What are the objections to Chinese immigration to the United States? How was trouble with foreign nations avoided in 1890 and 1891?

## CHAPTER IV

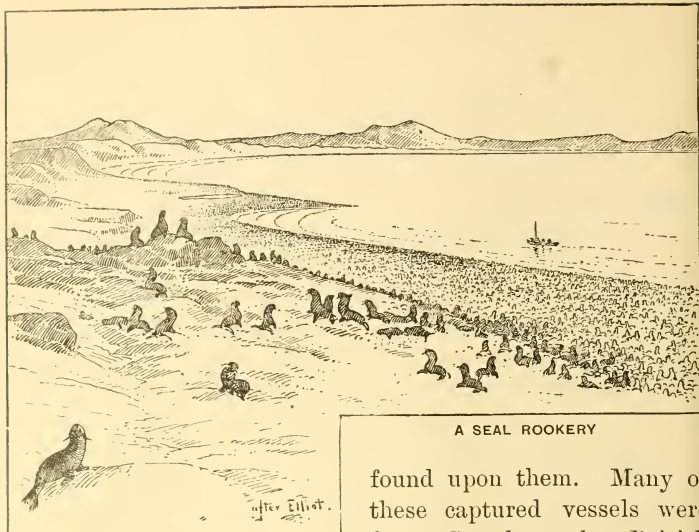
## THE SILVER QUESTION AND THE TARIFF

## CLEVELAND'S SECOND ADMINISTRATION — 1893-7

**625. Repeal of the Silver Bill.** — The country suffered in 1893 from serious financial trouble, thought to have been produced by the clause in the Sherman Bill which required the government to purchase four and a half million ounces of silver a month, and to issue certificates redeemable in gold or silver. Uncertainty as to what would be done with the tariff added to these troubles. In August President Cleveland called a special session, and recommended the repeal of this clause of the Sherman Bill. These certificates in large quantities were presented at the treasury to be redeemed in gold, and it was plain that the gold would soon be drawn out, and the parity, or equality, between gold and silver destroyed. Those who favored the gold standard, that is, making the gold dollar a measurement for all other kinds of money, were called "sound money men" or "gold bugs." Their view was opposed by a number of leading men. After much discussion and long delay in the Senate, the purchase clause was repealed, and the pressure was greatly relieved. 1893

**626. The Tariff revised.** — When Congress met in December, Mr. Wilson, of West Virginia, introduced a bill for the general reduction of the tariff, especially upon raw materials used in manufactures. This bill, known as the "Wilson Bill" from the name of its author, passed the House, and though amendments made by the Senate so changed the bill that the House at first refused to accept it, it was finally passed in its new shape. 1894

**627. Seal Fisheries.** — The United States claimed the right to control Bering Sea, and, wishing to prevent the rapid destruction of the seals, our seamen began to seize the sealing vessels and to take possession of the skins 1893



A SEAL ROOKERY

found upon them. Many of these captured vessels were from Canada; the British government complained that the United States was exercising more power than her rights as owner of the land entitled her to, and insisted that her jurisdiction extended only three miles from the shore. After a long correspondence, the matter was referred to seven commissioners who met in Paris in 1893. They decided against the claim of the United States, but they made such strict regulations for the protection of the seals that, though these new laws have proved in some respects insufficient, the United States really gained much of that for which she had contended. Thus another difficulty between these two great nations was settled by arbitration.

**628. The World's Fair.** — The Americans decided to celebrate the four hundredth anniversary of the discovery of America by holding a World's Fair, to be called "The World's Columbian Exposition." The people of all foreign countries were invited to attend and to send exhibits. Congress appropriated \$10,000,000 toward this great undertaking, and many states made contributions for the display

of their own resources. The city of Chicago was selected as the place for the Exposition. Magnificent buildings of mammoth size and most beautiful design were erected and filled with the choicest products and manufactures of the world. The collection presented a wonderful exhibition of the wealth and progress of the United States. The group of beautiful white buildings extended over so great a space that



WORLD'S FAIR BUILDINGS, CHICAGO

it was called the "White City." The buildings were dedicated October 21, 1892, the date of the anniversary, but the preparations were on so vast a scale that the work could not be completed until the year following. The exposition was open from the first of May, 1893, to the last of October. The gate receipts showed an attendance of more than twenty millions.

**629. Columbian Naval Review.** — War ships from Great Britain, France, Germany, Russia, Spain, Italy, Holland, Brazil, and Argentine Republic took part in a grand naval review in honor of this anniversary. With those from the United States they steamed up the

April 27,  
1893

Hudson River in two long lines, extending about three miles. The *Dolphin*, with the President and his Cabinet on board, moved slowly up the river, and fired a salute in front of each mighty war ship, which cordially returned it. Thousands upon thousands of spectators watched the spectacle from the banks of the river and the roofs of the houses.

Three small Spanish caravels, built in exact imitation of the *Santa Maria*, the *Pinta*, and the *Niña*, the squadron with which Columbus had made his memorable voyage in 1492, were also anchored in line to participate in the review. They were a present to the United States from Spain, and the *Santa Maria* was furnished with copies of the very articles which the great discoverer had used. They afterwards were placed on exhibition at Chicago, where they attracted much attention.

**630. Strike in Chicago.** — During the summer following the exposition, a railroad strike began in Chicago in opposition to the Pullman Car Company, and extended  
1894 throughout the Western and Pacific States, resulting in great destruction of property. The strikers felt that they had serious cause for complaint, and the majority of the people sympathized with them, but disapproved of the means they used to secure justice. In taking the law into their own hands they lost more than they gained. Many of the labor organizations encouraged them. Trains were stopped; all travel, and transportation of freight, and even of the mails, ceased in that part of the country. So great was the destruction of property, that the President issued a proclamation ordering the rioters to return at once peaceably to their homes; and he sent United States troops to secure obedience to the laws and to prevent obstruction of the mails. There was some fighting before quiet was restored.

**631. Atlanta Exposition.** — The Cotton States and International Exposition, whose purpose was to show  
1895 the world what the South had done and is doing, opened its gates at Atlanta in September, 1895, and closed



them December 31. A large number of American and foreign exhibits had been collected, and the exposition was a great and instructive object lesson to the crowds that visited it. The grounds were tastefully improved, and the buildings were beautiful in design and arrangement. Atlanta is the only city of but one hundred thousand inhabitants that has undertaken an exposition on so large a scale. It surpassed in



ELECTRICITY BUILDING AT ATLANTA EXPOSITION

size the Centennial Exposition at Philadelphia. Its success was largely due to the energy and public spirit of its managers, who gave themselves enthusiastically to the enterprise.

**632. Utah** entered the Union in 1896, and the forty-fifth star was added to our flag. A convention of her people had adopted a constitution providing for common schools, entirely excluding polygamy, and rendering it impos-  
1896  
 sible for the Mormon church to obtain control of the state.

**633. Venezuela and the Monroe Doctrine.** — Soon after Great

Britain acquired British Guiana from Holland in 1821, a dispute arose with Venezuela about the boundary, which had not been defined in the treaty with Holland. In 1895  
 1895 6 Great Britain demanded reparation from the President of Venezuela for the arrest of British officers in the disputed territory. In accordance with the Monroe doctrine, the United States demanded that Great Britain allow this dispute to be settled by arbitration. This was at first refused, and war between England and this country seemed possible; but a commission was appointed, and Great Britain and Venezuela collected and forwarded to Washington the evidence of their claims. The question was afterwards referred by treaty to a tribunal of arbitration consisting of five members, two chosen by each country, the fifth selected by these and appointed by the king of Norway. This tribunal, after many conferences, finished its labors and submitted its report to the nations interested.

**634. Confederate Disabilities removed.** — While the country was excited over the prospect of war with England, a bill was passed in Congress, repealing the “Confederate  
 March 24,  
 1896 Disability Law” which had prevented ex-Confederate officers from holding commissions in the army or navy of the United States. Many who were affected by this law have died or have become too old for military service, and few remain to be benefited by its repeal.

**635. Strengthening the Coast Defenses.** — The possibility of war induced Congress to make appropriations for strengthening the coast defenses. Orders were given to erect  
 1896 and equip fortifications for the seaboard cities, and to build three new battle ships, to be furnished with the heaviest steel armor and the most powerful guns, and made to run at the highest possible speed.

**636. A Message sent around the World.** — While the electrical exposition was held in New York city, in May, 1896,  
 May,  
 1896 a telegram was sent around the world. It started at 8.35 P.M. from New York, traveled to San Fran-

cisco, and back through Canada to Canso, Nova Scotia; then it was cabled to London, from which place it was sent to Lisbon, Suez, Aden, Bombay, Madras, Singapore, Hong Kong, Shanghai, Nagasaki, and Tokio. Returning over the same lines, it reached New York again at 9.25 P.M. It had made its long journey in exactly fifty minutes, having traveled a distance of twenty-seven thousand five hundred miles. It was greeted by the booming of cannons and by the applause of thousands.

**637. Presidential Election.** — A number of political parties divided the people in 1896, but the main issue of the presidential campaign was the money question. The Democrats, the Silver party, the Populists, and one division of the Prohibitionists demanded "the free and unlimited coinage of both silver and gold at the legal ratio of sixteen to one," and denounced the issue of interest-bearing bonds in times of peace. The Republicans and the "gold" Democrats, or sound money men, advocated the gold standard, and opposed the free coinage of silver, except by agreement with the leading nations of the world. 1896

The Democrats and the Silver party nominated William J. Bryan, of Nebraska, and Arthur J. Sewall, of Maine. Mr. Bryan was also nominated by the Populists, with Thomas Watson, of Georgia, for Vice President. The gold Democrats named John McAuley Palmer, of Illinois, for President, and Simon B. Buckner, of Kentucky, for Vice President. The Prohibition party placed in nomination Joshua Levering, of Maryland, and Hale Johnson, of Illinois. The Republicans nominated William McKinley, of Ohio, for President, and Garret A. Hobart, of New Jersey, for Vice President. A large majority of the electoral votes was given to the Republican ticket, and McKinley and Hobart were elected.

#### McKINLEY'S ADMINISTRATION — 1897—

**638. The Dingley Tariff Bill.** — As soon as the new President had been inaugurated, he called an extra session of Congress for the consideration of new tariff meas- 1897

ures. In July, this Congress passed the Dingley Tariff Bill, designed to afford larger revenues and protect industries.

**639. Greater New York.** — In the same year a bill was passed in New York state uniting from January 1, 1898, under one charter with the city of New York, several cities and districts lying near it. This "Greater New York," with its 3,000,000 people, is second in population only to the city of London.

[Section numbers 640-699 are omitted, to be used in numbering paragraphs on future events.]

### QUESTIONS FOR STUDY

What do you understand by the "free coinage of silver"? What did the World's Fair teach the nations about the United States? How has the Monroe doctrine been recently affirmed? What changes would Jefferson have observed in our capital city, and in the inaugural ceremonies, if he could have been present at President McKinley's inauguration? Name the political parties of the present day and tell what they believe. Which is most like the old Federalist party? Explain the differences between the Republicans of Washington's time and those who elected McKinley.

### TOPICS FOR REVIEW

1. How was slavery abolished?
2. Name the principal events of Grant's administration.
3. What was the Fifteenth Amendment?
4. Give the history of the Modoc War.
5. Explain the evils of the "Credit Mobilier."
6. Give an account of the Centennial Exposition.
7. Give an account of the railroad strikes.
8. How was the question of fisheries settled?
9. Tell about the bills passed concerning the coinage of silver.
10. Give the history of the Chinese Immigration Bill.
11. Name the principal event of Cleveland's first administration.
12. Explain the law of presidential succession.
13. Give an account of the Charleston earthquake.
14. What is the statue of Liberty?
15. Tell what you know of the labor strikes and of the Haymarket riot.
16. What was the great question which divided the political parties in 1888?

17. Give the history of Oklahoma Territory.
18. Give an account of the Johnstown flood.
19. Give the history of the Atlantic cable ; of the weather bureau ; of the telephone.
20. Explain the new standard of time.
21. What did the Eleventh Census Report show ?
22. In what way did cotton become a great staple ? Trace the changes which its cultivation produced. Tell how it became profitable.
23. Describe the World's Fair at Chicago.
24. State the questions at issue in the presidential elections since Washington's day.
25. How do people feel now about the tariff ? about the money question ? about the temperance question ?
26. Name the Vice Presidents who became Presidents.
27. Complete the various tables directed to be made on p. 300.

### CHRONOLOGICAL TABLE OF IMPORTANT EVENTS (1865-97)

#### *President*

#### ANDREW JOHNSON (1865-9)

1865. Slavery abolished in the United States.  
The Thirteenth Amendment added to the Constitution.
1866. Memorial Day instituted.  
The Atlantic cable successfully laid.
1867. Alaska purchased by the United States.  
Nebraska admitted.
1868. President Johnson tried before the Senate.

#### ULYSSES S. GRANT (1869-77)

1869. The Pacific Railroad completed.
1870. The Fifteenth Amendment added to the Constitution.  
Death of General Robert E. Lee.  
The Weather Bureau established.
1871. The treaty of Washington ratified.  
Destructive fires in Chicago and Boston.
1872. The "*Alabama* claims" award of \$15,500,000.
1873. The Modoc War begun.  
A financial panic begun.  
Silver demonetized.
1876. Colorado admitted.  
The Centennial Exposition held in Philadelphia.



1876. The telephone invented.  
Sioux War begun.

RUTHERFORD B. HAYES (1877-81)

1877. Removal of Federal troops from the South.  
Railroad strikes in the North and West.  
The question of fisheries settled.
1878. Silver Bill passed.  
The yellow fever epidemic.
1879. Specie payments resumed.
1880. A new treaty made with China.

JAMES A. GARFIELD (1881)

1881. The death of President Garfield.

CHESTER A. ARTHUR (1881-5)

1882. The Chinese Immigration Bill passed.
1883. The Civil Service Reform Bill passed.  
Rate of postage reduced on domestic letters.  
A new standard of time established.
1884. The Cotton Centennial Exposition held.  
The electric car invented.

GROVER CLEVELAND (1885-9)

1885. Death of General U. S. Grant.  
Death of Vice President Hendricks.
1886. The law of the Presidential succession passed.  
New law of electoral count passed.  
Interstate Commerce Act passed.  
The Charleston earthquake occurred.  
The statue of Liberty erected.
1887. The Haymarket Riot occurred.
1888. Chinese immigration restricted.  
Ballot reform begun.

BENJAMIN HARRISON (1889-93)

1889. Oklahoma Territory opened.  
Centennial of Washington's inauguration celebrated.  
A flood ruined the Conemaugh valley.  
The Pan-American Congress met.  
North Dakota, South Dakota, Montana, and Washington admitted.

1890. Idaho and Wyoming admitted.  
McKinley Bill passed.  
Sherman Bill passed.  
Mafia trouble in New Orleans.  
Eleventh census taken.
1891. War with Chile threatened.  
The International Copyright Law passed.
1893. The Silver Bill repealed.  
Wilson Bill passed.  
New regulations made about the seal fisheries.  
United States navy increased.

GROVER CLEVELAND (1893-7)

1893. World's Columbian Exposition held.  
Columbian Naval Review held.
1894. Railroad strikes begun in Chicago.
1895. Atlanta Exposition held.
- 1895-7. The Venezuela boundary dispute.
1896. Utah admitted.  
Confederate disabilities removed.

WILLIAM McKINLEY (1897)

1897. Dingley Tariff Bill passed.  
New York becomes the second city of the world.





## CHAPTER V

## DEVELOPMENT — LITERATURE — ART

**700. Territorial Growth.** — The first century of our existence as an independent government showed wonderful growth and progress. The Louisiana Territory purchased from France changed the western boundary of the United States to the Rocky Mountains, and made its southern limits reach to the Gulf of Mexico. The southern borders were extended by the purchase of Florida from Spain, and the acquirement of Oregon extended the breadth of the Union from ocean to ocean. The annexation of Texas and the Mexican cession enlarged our country on the west, and made it reach still farther south. Alaska extended our possessions into the frigid zone.

**701. Population.** — These wide tracts of territory have not lain idle. Immigrants from Europe have crowded to our ports, until we now number nearly seventy million inhabitants, and every year adds thousands to those already here.

**702. The South.** — The census of 1890 showed wonderful progress in the South. In 1870 the value of all the property in the Southern States was not as great as that of New York and Pennsylvania. In 1880 the South was burdened with debt her railroads were in a bad condition, she could boast of but few factories, and there was not enough business to give employment to all of her people. She had few banks, little credit, and only a small amount of capital for developing her resources. But within the next ten years there was a wonderful change. The value of property in the South increased to \$3,800,000,000. The profits from her crops were twice as great as from those of any other section. The yield of cotton in 1890 was more than three times what it was in 1865, and the value of her grain even exceeded that of her cotton.

The cultivation of tropical fruits, especially the orange, in Florida, and the raising of early vegetables for the Northern



markets, in that and other states, have become extensive and profitable branches of industry. In Texas and the blue-grass country, horses, cattle, and sheep of the best breeds are successfully raised.

In 1890 the amount of manufactured products had doubled. Cotton mills have multiplied, and every year less and less of the cotton is sent away to be manufactured. Cotton seed, formerly wasted, has been made to yield a valuable oil, the remaining part of the seed being used either for feeding cattle or for fertilizing land. Several hundred mills are kept busy supplying the demand for these articles.

From her vast mineral resources the South produces yearly more than a million tons of pig iron, a great part of which is manufactured by her furnaces, rolling mills, and shops. From her coal mines in 1890 was taken one sixth of the coal mined in the entire country, and her coal fields in and adjoining northern Alabama are estimated to contain enough coal to supply the world for one hundred and fifty years. Immense stores of phosphates, used for fertilizing, have been discovered in Florida and the Carolinas. In 1890 more than half of the standing timber was in the South, her forests of yellow pine furnishing a vast source of wealth.

Nor, amidst her industrial activity, has she neglected more important interests. Churches and schoolhouses have been built throughout the country. Liberal appropriations have been made by state and city governments for the support of schools for the children of both races. Private schools of an excellent character, high schools, and colleges have been established. This wonderful success is due to the energy and devotion of the men of the South, who have labored and struggled amidst such difficulties as have beset no other section.

**703. The West.** — The discovery of vast deposits of iron and coal in the West led to great development of the iron industry. The many improvements in iron and steel manufacture made it possible for the railroads to span our great rivers with mag-

nificent iron bridges instead of the old wooden structures. Better roadbeds and rails, and better engines, increased the speed of travel and reduced the rates for freight and passengers, and as the fertility of the far West became known, people by thousands seized the opportunity offered by cheaper transportation to seek new homes there. The same easy means of transportation placed the emigrant within reach of the Eastern markets, and the states of the upper valley of the Mississippi often supply a large part of Europe with wheat and flour.

The vast and seemingly inexhaustible mineral resources beyond the Mississippi have attracted many settlers. Manufacturing interests attracted population about the railroad centers, and from these the great cities of the West have sprung into existence, many of them growing with marvelous rapidity. Chicago has risen from the ashes of her great fire of 1871 to be the second city of the Union. In 1859 a few mud-roofed, one-story houses, with scarcely a glass window to be seen, marked the site of Denver. Thirty years passed, and the little village had become a city of one hundred and twenty-five thousand inhabitants, and was adorned with costly residences and business houses. In most of the Western States the sale of the public school lands has supported a system of public schools; and churches of every denomination have erected buildings and gathered congregations.

**704. The Plains.** — Immense herds of cattle and sheep are kept upon the Western plains. As the grass is not plentiful, they are constantly changed from one place to another. The men who own these herds are called "cattle kings" or ranchmen, and the men who tend the cattle are named "cowboys." They do their work on horseback and become expert riders. The cattle from these plains have not only supplied our Eastern cities with beef, but have been sold even in the markets of London.

**705. Irrigation.** — Because of the dry climate in some portions of the West, for a long time the land was not considered

valuable. But after the Mormons in Utah showed that water was the only thing needed to make it productive, large tracts of rich country were brought into cultivation by means of irrigation, the water from the mountains being carried in ditches and canals to the valleys and plains.

**706. The Pacific Slope**, which covers nearly one fourth of the territory of the United States, has kept pace with the states of the middle West. The products of the farms, orchards, vine-



SALT LAKE CITY

yards, and factories of California long ago surpassed in value the yield of her gold mines. Her wheat farms are among the largest in the world; her orchards and vineyards cover three hundred thousand acres, and their profits average one hundred dollars an acre. People from the East, attracted by her health-giving climate, have carried with them the refinements of the older communities, and have done much to elevate the character of society. The northern states of this slope have also developed rapidly, and Pacific commerce has built up several important seaports.

**707. Railroads** have been built from ocean to ocean, and from north to south, in every direction. In 1890 the railroads

of the United States measured 168,000 miles — a length sufficient to reach six times around the earth. The sleeping car enables the traveler to go long distances without fatigue. Wherever the railroad has pushed its way, forests and prairies have been brought under the influence of civilization. Farms have been planted, villages have sprung up, and churches and schoolhouses have followed. The principal railroad centers have grown into large cities.

**708. Inventions.** — Water power was a valuable agent in manufacturing, until a mightier helper was taught to do the labor. Steam now turns the wheels where human strength was once needed. It manufactures for us every article we use, prints our books and papers, warms our houses, does the heaviest work of the laundry, and carries us over the continents and oceans. The old cotton cards and spinning wheels have been put aside, and steam is doing their work in the mills. The printing press has grown from the clumsy beginnings which were worked by hand to the steam-power press, which issues thousands of sheets every hour.

The Western plains afforded great opportunities for grain raising; but while the work of agriculture — plowing, sowing, reaping, and threshing — had to be done by hand, or with simple machines, it was impossible to bring this vast region under very extensive cultivation. These opportunities stimulated the invention of machines, moved by horse power or steam, for doing almost all the work of agriculture, so that one man can now accomplish as much as twenty men a generation ago. The wealth of the country from this cause alone has been greatly increased.

Electricity has also been made a laborer, promising in many ways to take the place of steam. The telegraph, the electric light, the telephone, the trolley car, the phonograph, and the kinetoscope are the most important electrical inventions.

The streets of cities, once dimly lighted by the whale-oil lamp, but now bright with gas or electric lights, have almost forgotten the darkness of night.

The sewing machine has its place in every home, and does its part to lighten the burdens of household work. The typewriter can do the work of several amanuenses, while the bicycle flies with its rider as if on wings from place to place.

**709. Education.** — Nowhere has the advancement of the age been so much felt as in the schoolroom. Large sums of the public money have been devoted to the support of common schools, placing education within the reach of all. Teachers now spend years of study in preparation for their work; and neither time nor money is spared in making the best textbooks, maps, charts, furniture, and all things helpful in the training of the young.

**710. Literature — Early Writers.** — The long struggle for independence was ended, and our government firmly established, before American literature had its real beginning. Washington Irving, often called the “father of American literature,” was the first to win a reputation by his pen. His first book, “The Knickerbocker History of New York,” was a humorous account of the customs of the early Dutch settlers; it amused and pleased a host of readers. He wrote a “Life of Columbus,” a “Life of Washington,” and a number of other volumes.

James Fenimore Cooper was a popular novelist, whose stories are full of adventure. His “Leatherstocking Tales” are mostly of Indian life; his sea stories are attractive and entertaining.

Nathaniel Hawthorne next came into prominence, as a writer of romances of the early New England days. He was introduced to the public through his “Twice-told Tales.” His

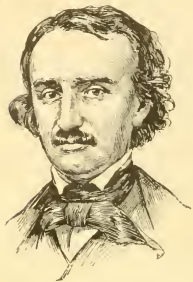


WASHINGTON IRVING



works are all masterpieces of English composition, and have gained for him a world-wide reputation.

**711. Early Poets.**—William Cullen Bryant was the first great American poet. "Thanatopsis," his first poem, made him famous. It was published a few years after Irving's first book.



EDGAR A. POE

Edgar Allan Poe, though born much later than Irving or Bryant, wrote while they were both living. He is best known by his poems, "The Raven" and "The Bells." He also wrote a number of short stories.

**The Cambridge Poets.**—The fame of the next group of writers soon spread beyond the sea. They all lived in New England and were personal friends. Though the early part of Hawthorne's work preceded theirs, he was one of them.

Ralph Waldo Emerson was a noted philosopher, essayist, and poet. Oliver Wendell Holmes was a poet and humorist of the highest rank. His poems, "The Last Leaf" and "The One-Hoss Shay," and his "Autocrat of the Breakfast Table," are the most familiar of his productions. Henry Wadsworth Longfellow, the author of "Evangeline," "The Courtship of Miles Standish," and "Hiawatha," was the sweetest singer and the most celebrated of American poets. John Greenleaf Whittier, being an abolitionist, embodied in some of his writings his feelings against slavery; he also wrote the popular poems "Snow Bound," "The Tent on the Beach," and "Among the Hills."



RALPH WALDO EMERSON

**712. Historians.** — George Bancroft's "History of the United States" follows the early settlements through their colonial life, their struggles with the French, the Spanish, and the Indians, and finishes with an account of the Revolution.

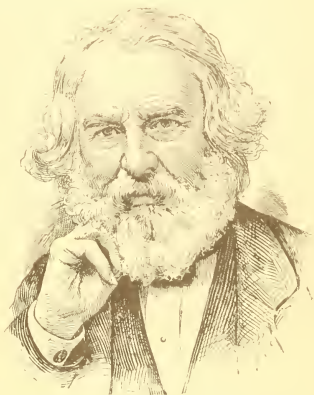
John Bach McMaster, in his "History of the People of the United States," began where Bancroft ended his work, tracing the growth of the young republic, and telling the habits and customs of the people.

Horace Greeley, in "The Great American Conflict," tells of the civil war as it appeared to those who were opposed to slavery and secession. Alexander H. Stephens's "War between the States" and Jefferson Davis's "Rise and Fall of the Confederate Government" show the opinions of those who advocated state rights.

William H. Prescott wrote "The Conquest of Mexico" and other books; John Lothrop Motley, "The Rise of the Dutch Republic"; Francis Parkman in a number of volumes described the growth of the French power in America. These writers were all men of ability, and they made valuable additions to the literature of our country.

**713. Later Writers.** — These have been followed by scores of other writers, many of whom rank high in the literary world. Bayard Taylor, the traveler, has given us some fine descriptions of foreign lands. He and Thomas Bailey Aldrich have also made excellent contributions to American poetry. The leading writers of fiction in this period are Henry James, William D. Howells, Julian Hawthorne, and Frank R. Stockton.

The poems of Joaquin Miller and the stories of Bret Harte



HENRY WADSWORTH LONGFELLOW

give us bright glimpses of life in the West, and we laugh with Mark Twain in his humorous sketches of scenes in the mining districts. Edward Eggleston paints vividly the life of the early settlers of Indiana and Illinois, while Eugene Field and James Whitcomb Riley sing to us sweet and tender songs of childhood.

**714. Southern Writers.** — William Gilmore Simms was the author of a number of histories, biographies, and novels similar to those of Cooper, "The Yemassee" and "The Partizan" being among his best. John Esten Cooke wrote stories of Virginia, which have been read with interest and pleasure. Among the Southern poets were Henry Timrod, Father Ryan, Paul Hamilton Hayne, and Sidney Lanier, whose name is honored wherever his works are known. George W. Cable, Miss Murfree, and Joel Chandler Harris are our later writers of fiction. Henry W. Grady, famous as an orator and journalist, devoted his energies to the advancement of the South, for whose interests he consecrated his silver tongue and brilliant pen.

**715. Scientists.** — There are also Americans whose valuable contributions to scientific knowledge have made them known throughout the civilized world. John J. Audubon, in his large illustrated folio volumes entitled "Birds of America," gives descriptions of several thousand varieties of birds and their habits. Asa Gray, the great botanist, examined and classified a large number of American plants. Nathaniel Bowditch, the mathematician, and Benjamin Silliman, the chemist, are widely known as learned Americans.

**716. Artists.** — Benjamin West, a Quaker boy in Pennsylvania, began to show his talent for art when he was only seven years old. On his return from his studies in Italy, he stopped in London and was persuaded to remain in that city. King George III was so much pleased with his work that he employed him to make a number of historical pictures. These made him famous. For his great painting, "Christ healing the Sick," he received three thousand pounds.

The next great artist was John Singleton Copley, who made his reputation by painting the portraits of heroes of the Revolution. After him came Gilbert Stuart, best known by his portrait of Washington. Then came Washington Allston, of South Carolina, a painter of subjects from sacred history; and John Trumbull, who made likenesses of Washington and other Revolutionary officers, and placed upon his canvas scenes from the battles in which they had taken part. In this group were Peale, Malbone, and John Vanderlyn, and the landscape painters, Cole, Durand, Kensett, and Inness. Many of the artists of the present day are devoting their skill to the illustration of books and magazines, which they have brought to a wonderful degree of beauty and excellence.

**717. Sculptors.** — Among those who have gained a wide reputation in sculpture are Hiram Powers, whose chisel has given the world that beautiful figure, "The Greek Slave"; Thomas Crawford, whose workmanship in the Statue of Liberty adorns the dome of the capitol in Washington; William W. Story, and Randolph Rogers.

#### TOPICS FOR REVIEW

1. Trace briefly the history of the territorial acquisitions of the United States.
2. What have railroads, steam, and electricity done for us?
3. Tell about the principal inventions.
4. Give an account of the development of the South and West as shown by the Census Report of 1890.
5. How have literature and art developed?
6. How has education advanced since the days of the old field school?

#### BOOKS OF REFERENCE FOR TEACHERS

GEORGE BANCROFT'S *History of the United States*. — WINSOR'S *Narrative and Critical History of America*. — ALEXANDER H. STEPHENS'S *Larger History of the United States*. — IRVING'S *Life of Columbus*. — PARKMAN'S *France and England in North America*. — PALFREY'S *History of New England*. — COMMONWEALTH SERIES: *New York*. — H. C. LODGE'S *Short History of the English Colonies*. — JAMES BOWDEN'S *History of the Society of Friends in America*. — J. R. LOWELL'S *Among My*

*Books; New England Two Centuries Ago.* — SCHUYLER's *Colonial New York.* — THE MAKERS OF AMERICA SERIES: BROWN's *George and Cecilius Calvert*; TUCKERMAN's *Peter Stuyvesant*; BRUCE's *Oglethorpe.* — C. C. JONES's *History of Georgia.* — BYNNER's *Agnes Surriage.* — KENNEDY's *Swallow Barn.* — GREEN's *Historical View of the American Revolution.* — IRVING's *Life of Washington.* — GEORGE W. GRAHAM's *Address before the Mecklenburg Historical Society, Charlotte, North Carolina.* — AMERICAN STATESMEN SERIES: TYLER's *Patrick Henry*; HOSMER's *Samuel Adams*; MORSE's *Benjamin Franklin*; LODGE's *George Washington.* — KENNEDY's *Horseshoe Robinson.* — COOPER's *History of the American Navy.* — MISS HOPPUS's *A Great Treason.* — FISKE's *Critical Period of American History.* — A. B. HART's *Formation of the Union.* — BRYCE's *American Commonwealth.* — HENRY ADAMS's *History of the United States, 1801-1817.* — A. JOHNSTON's *American Politics.* — I. W. ANDREWS's *Manual of the Constitution.* — AMERICAN STATESMEN SERIES: ROOSEVELT's *Gouverneur Morris*; MORSE's *John Adams*; GAY's *James Madison*; STEVENS's *Albert Gallatin*; GILMAN's *James Monroe*; ADAMS's *John Randolph*; MAGRUDER's *John Marshall*; MORSE's *Alexander Hamilton and John Quincy Adams*; VON HOLST's *Calhoun*; SCHOULER's *Thomas Jefferson*; SCHURZ's *Henry Clay*; LODGE's *Webster*; SHEPARD's *Van Buren*; PARTON's *Thomas Jefferson and Andrew Jackson.* — LOSSING's *Handbook of the War of 1812.* — CURRY's *The South in Relation to the Constitution and Union.* — WOODROW WILSON's *Division and Reunion.* — JEFFERSON DAVIS's *Rise and Fall of the Confederate Government.* — ALEXANDER H. STEPHENS's *View of the War between the States.* — GREELEY's *American Conflict.* — F. H. BENTON's *Thirty Years' View.* — BLAINE's *Thirty Years in Congress.* — COOKE's *Life of General Robert E. Lee, and "Stonewall" Jackson.* — TAYLOR's *Four Years with Lee.* — JOSEPH E. JOHNSTON's *Narrative.* — HOOD's *Advance and Retreat.* — RICHARD TAYLOR's *Destruction and Reconstruction.* — EARLY's *Last Year of the War.* — SEMMES's *Service Afloat.* — JORDAN AND PRYOR's *Campaigns of General Forrest.* — STODDARD's *Life of Abraham Lincoln.* — HULBERT's *General McClellan.* — ALFRIEND's *Life of Jefferson Davis.* — CRAVEN's *Prison Life of Jefferson Davis.* — JOHNSTON AND BROWN's *Life of Alexander H. Stephens.* — WILLIAM P. JOHNSTON's *Life of Albert Sidney Johnston.* — *Life and Letters of General Thomas J. Jackson*, by his wife. — *Life of Jefferson Davis*, by his wife. — THOMAS NELSON PAGE's *The Old South; Writings and Speeches of Henry W. Grady.* — HENRY M. FIELD's *Story of the Atlantic Cable.* — *New Orleans Cotton Exposition* (in *Century Magazine*, Vol. XXX., 3, 185). — *Thomas A. Edison and Electricity* (in *Review of Reviews*, Vol. 8, 35). — ANDREWS's *Last Quarter of a Century.* — SHALER's *United States.*



# THE DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE—1776

---

IN CONGRESS, JULY 4, 1776.

## THE UNANIMOUS DECLARATION OF THE THIRTEEN UNITED STATES OF AMERICA

WHEN, in the course of human events, it becomes necessary for one people to dissolve the political bands which have connected them with another, and to assume, among the powers of the earth, the separate and equal station to which the laws of nature and of nature's God entitle them, a decent respect to the opinions of mankind requires that they should declare the causes which impel them to the separation.

We hold these truths to be self-evident: that all men are created equal; that they are endowed by their Creator with certain unalienable rights; that among these are life, liberty, and the pursuit of happiness. That, to secure these rights, governments are instituted among men, deriving their just powers from the consent of the governed; that, whenever any form of government becomes destructive of these ends, it is the right of the people to alter or to abolish it, and to institute new government, laying its foundation on such principles, and organizing its powers in such form, as to them shall seem most likely to effect their safety and happiness. Prudence, indeed, will dictate that governments long established, should not be changed for light and transient causes; and, accordingly, all experience hath shown, that mankind are more disposed to suffer, while evils are sufferable, than to right themselves by abolishing the forms to which they are accustomed. But, when a long train of abuses and usurpations, pursuing invariably the same object, evinces a design to reduce them under absolute despotism, it is their right, it is their duty, to throw off such government, and to provide new guards for their future security.—Such has been the patient sufferance of these colonies; and such is now the necessity which constrains them to alter their former systems of government. The history of the present king of Great Britain is a history of repeated injuries and usurpations, all having in direct object the establishment of an absolute tyranny over these States. To prove this, let facts be submitted to a candid world.

He has refused his assent to laws the most wholesome and necessary for the public good.

He has forbidden his governors to pass laws of immediate and pressing importance, unless suspended in their operation till his assent should be obtained ; and, when so suspended, he has utterly neglected to attend to them.

He has refused to pass other laws for the accommodation of large districts of people, unless those people would relinquish the right of representation in the legislature, a right inestimable to them and formidable to tyrants only.

He has called together legislative bodies at places unusual, uncomfortable, and distant from the depository of their public records, for the sole purpose of fatiguing them into compliance with his measures.

He has dissolved representative houses repeatedly, for opposing, with manly firmness, his invasions on the rights of the people.

He has refused, for a long time after such dissolutions, to cause others to be elected ; whereby the legislative powers, incapable of annihilation, have returned to the people at large for their exercise ; the State remaining, in the meantime, exposed to all the dangers of invasion from without, and convulsions within.

He has endeavored to prevent the population of these States ; for that purpose obstructing the laws for naturalization of foreigners ; refusing to pass others to encourage their migration hither, and raising the conditions of new appropriations of lands.

He has obstructed the administration of justice, by refusing his assent to laws for establishing judiciary powers.

He has made judges dependent on his will alone for the tenure of their offices, and the amount and payment of their salaries.

He has erected a multitude of new offices, and sent hither swarms of officers to harass our people, and eat out their substance.

He has kept among us in times of peace, standing armies, without the consent of our legislature.

He has affected to render the military independent of, and superior to, the civil power.

He has combined, with others, to subject us to a jurisdiction foreign to our constitution, and unacknowledged by our laws ; giving his assent to their acts of pretended legislation :

For quartering large bodies of armed troops among us :

For protecting them, by a mock trial, from punishment for any murders which they should commit on the inhabitants of these States :

For cutting off our trade with all parts of the world :

For imposing taxes on us without our consent :

For depriving us, in many cases, of the benefits of trial by jury :

For transporting us beyond seas to be tried for pretended offenses :

For abolishing the free system of English laws in a neighboring province, establishing therein an arbitrary government and enlarging its boundaries, so as to render it at once an example and fit instrument for introducing the same absolute rule into these colonies :

For taking away our charters, abolishing our most valuable laws, and altering, fundamentally, the forms of our governments :

For suspending our own legislatures, and declaring themselves invested with power to legislate for us in all cases whatsoever.

He has abdicated government here by declaring us out of his protection, and waging war against us.

He has plundered our seas, ravaged our coasts, burnt our towns, and destroyed the lives of our people.

He is, at this time, transporting large armies of foreign mercenaries to complete the works of death, desolation, and tyranny, already begun, with circumstances of cruelty and perfidy scarcely paralleled in the most barbarous ages, and totally unworthy the head of a civilized nation.

He has constrained our fellow-citizens, taken captive on the high seas, to bear arms against their country, to become the executioners of their friends and brethren, or to fall themselves by their hands.

He has excited domestic insurrections amongst us, and has endeavored to bring on the inhabitants of our frontiers, the merciless Indian savages, whose known rule of warfare is an undistinguished destruction of all ages, sexes, and conditions.

In every stage of these oppressions, we have petitioned for redress in the most humble terms : our repeated petitions have been answered only by repeated injury. A prince, whose character is thus marked by every act which may define a tyrant, is unfit to be the ruler of a free people.

Nor have we been wanting in attention to our British brethren. We have warned them, from time to time, of attempts by their legislature to extend an unwarrantable jurisdiction over us. We have reminded them of the circumstances of our emigration and settlement here. We have appealed to their native justice and magnanimity, and we have conjured them, by the ties of our common kindred, to disavow these usurpations, which would inevitably interrupt our connections and correspondence. They too have been deaf to the voice of justice and consanguinity. We must, therefore, acquiesce in the necessity which denounces our separation, and hold them, as we hold the rest of mankind, enemies in war, in peace friends.

We, therefore, the representatives of the United States of America, in general Congress assembled, appealing to the Supreme Judge of the world

for the rectitude of our intentions, do, in the name, and by authority of the good people of these colonies, solemnly publish and declare, That these United Colonies are, and of right ought to be, free and independent States; that they are absolved from all allegiance to the British crown, and that all political connection between them and the state of Great Britain is, and ought to be, totally dissolved; and that, as free and independent States, they have full power to levy war, conclude peace, contract alliances, establish commerce, and to do all other acts and things which independent States may of right do. And for the support of this declaration, with a firm reliance on the protection of Divine Providence, we mutually pledge to each other our lives, our fortunes, and our sacred honor.

JOHN HANCOCK.

*New Hampshire*

Josiah Bartlett,<sup>1</sup>  
Wm. Whipple,  
Matthew Thornton.

*Massachusetts Bay*

Saml. Adams,  
John Adams,  
Robt. Treat Paine,  
Elbridge Gerry.

*Rhode Island*

Step. Hopkins,  
William Ellery.

*Connecticut*

Roger Sherman,  
Sam'l Huntington,  
Wm. Williams,  
Oliver Wolcott.

*New York*

Wm. Floyd,  
Phil. Livingston,  
Frans. Lewis,  
Lewis Morris.

*New Jersey*

Richd. Stockton,  
Jno. Witherspoon,  
Fras. Hopkinson,  
John Hart,  
Abra. Clark.

*Pennsylvania*

Robt. Morris,  
Benjamin Rush,  
Benja. Franklin,  
John Morton,  
Geo. Clymer,  
Jas. Smith,  
Geo. Taylor,  
James Wilson,  
Geo. Ross.

*Delaware*

Cæsar Rodney,  
Geo. Read,  
Tho. M'Kean.

*Maryland*

Samuel Chase,  
Wm. Paca,  
Thos. Stone,

Charles Carroll of Car-  
rollton.

*Virginia*

George Wythe,  
Richard Henry Lee,  
Th Jefferson,  
Benja. Harrison,  
Thos. Nelson, jr.,  
Francis Lightfoot Lee,  
Carter Braxton.

*North Carolina*

Wm. Hooper,  
Joseph Hewes,  
John Penn.

*South Carolina*

Edward Rutledge,  
Thos. Heyward, Junr.,  
Thomas Lynch, Junr.,  
Arthur Middleton.

*Georgia*

Button Gwinnett,  
Lyman Hall,  
Geo. Walton.

<sup>1</sup> The signatures to the Declaration of Independence and to the Constitution are printed as signed.

# CONSTITUTION OF THE UNITED STATES—1787<sup>1</sup>

---

WE the people of the United States, in order to form a more perfect union, establish justice, insure domestic tranquillity, provide for the common defense, promote the general welfare, and secure the blessings of liberty to ourselves and our posterity, do ordain and establish this Constitution for the United States of America.

## ARTICLE I

SECTION 1. All legislative powers herein granted shall be vested in a Congress of the United States, which shall consist of a Senate and House of Representatives.

SECTION 2. 1 The House of Representatives shall be composed of members chosen every second year by the people of the several States, and the electors in each State shall have the qualifications requisite for electors of the most numerous branch of the State legislature.

2 No person shall be a representative who shall not have attained to the age of twenty-five years, and been seven years a citizen of the United States, and who shall not, when elected, be an inhabitant of that State in which he shall be chosen.

3 Representatives and direct taxes shall be apportioned among the several States which may be included within this Union, according to their respective numbers, which shall be determined by adding to the whole number of free persons, including those bound to service for a term of years, and excluding Indians not taxed, three fifths of all other persons.<sup>2</sup> The actual enumeration shall be made within three years after the first meeting of the Congress of the United States, and within every subsequent term of ten years, in such manner as they shall by law direct. The number of representatives shall not exceed one for every thirty thousand, but each State shall have at least one representative; and until such enumeration shall be made, the State of New Hampshire shall be

<sup>1</sup> This reprint of the Constitution exactly follows the text of that in the Department of State at Washington, save in the spelling of a few words.

<sup>2</sup> Superseded by the 14th Amendment. (See p. 19.)



entitled to choose three, Massachusetts eight, Rhode Island and Providence Plantations one, Connecticut five, New York six, New Jersey four, Pennsylvania eight, Delaware one, Maryland six, Virginia ten, North Carolina five, South Carolina five, and Georgia three.

4 When vacancies happen in the representation from any State, the executive authority thereof shall issue writs of election to fill such vacancies.

5 The House of Representatives shall choose their speaker and other officers, and shall have the sole power of impeachment.

SECTION 3. 1 The Senate of the United States shall be composed of two senators from each State, chosen by the legislature thereof for six years; and each senator shall have one vote.

2 Immediately after they shall be assembled in consequence of the first election, they shall be divided as equally as may be into three classes. The seats of the senators of the first class shall be vacated at the expiration of the second year, of the second class at the expiration of the fourth year, and of the third class at the expiration of the sixth year, so that one third may be chosen every second year; and if vacancies happen by resignation, or otherwise, during the recess of the legislature of any State, the executive thereof may make temporary appointments until the next meeting of the legislature, which shall then fill such vacancies.

3 No person shall be a senator who shall not have attained to the age of thirty years, and been nine years a citizen of the United States, and who shall not, when elected, be an inhabitant of that State for which he shall be chosen.

4 The Vice President of the United States shall be President of the Senate, but shall have no vote, unless they be equally divided.

5 The Senate shall choose their other officers, and also a president *pro tempore*, in the absence of the Vice President, or when he shall exercise the office of President of the United States.

6 The Senate shall have the sole power to try all impeachments. When sitting for that purpose, they shall be on oath or affirmation. When the President of the United States is tried, the chief justice shall preside: and no person shall be convicted without the concurrence of two thirds of the members present.

7 Judgment in cases of impeachment shall not extend further than to removal from office, and disqualification to hold and enjoy any office of honor, trust or profit under the United States: but the party convicted shall nevertheless be liable and subject to indictment, trial, judgment and punishment, according to law.

SECTION 4. 1 The times, places, and manner of holding elections for

senators and representatives, shall be prescribed in each State by the legislature thereof; but the Congress may at any time by law make or alter such regulations, except as to the places of choosing senators.

2 The Congress shall assemble at least once in every year, and such meeting shall be on the first Monday in December, unless they shall by law appoint a different day.

SECTION 5. 1 Each House shall be the judge of the elections, returns and qualifications of its own members, and a majority of each shall constitute a quorum to do business; but a smaller number may adjourn from day to day, and may be authorized to compel the attendance of absent members, in such manner, and under such penalties as each House may provide.

2 Each House may determine the rules of its proceedings, punish its members for disorderly behavior, and, with the concurrence of two thirds, expel a member.

3 Each House shall keep a journal of its proceedings, and from time to time publish the same, excepting such parts as may in their judgment require secrecy; and the yeas and nays of the members of either House on any question shall, at the desire of one fifth of those present, be entered on the journal.

4 Neither House, during the session of Congress, shall, without the consent of the other, adjourn for more than three days, nor to any other place than that in which the two Houses shall be sitting.

SECTION 6. 1 The senators and representatives shall receive a compensation for their services, to be ascertained by law, and paid out of the Treasury of the United States. They shall in all cases, except treason, felony and breach of the peace, be privileged from arrest during their attendance at the session of their respective Houses, and in going to and returning from the same; and for any speech or debate in either House, they shall not be questioned in any other place.

2 No senator or representative shall, during the time for which he was elected, be appointed to any civil office under the authority of the United States, which shall have been created, or the emoluments whereof shall have been increased during such time; and no person holding any office under the United States shall be a member of either House during his continuance in office.

SECTION 7. 1 All bills for raising revenue shall originate in the House of Representatives; but the Senate may propose or concur with amendments as on other bills.

2 Every bill which shall have passed the House of Representatives and the Senate, shall, before it become a law, be presented to the President of the United States; if he approve he shall sign it, but if not he shall

return it, with his objections to that House in which it shall have originated, who shall enter the objections at large on their journal, and proceed to reconsider it. If after such reconsideration two thirds of that House shall agree to pass the bill, it shall be sent, together with the objections, to the other House, by which it shall likewise be reconsidered, and if approved by two thirds of that House, it shall become a law. But in all such cases the votes of both Houses shall be determined by yeas and nays, and the names of the persons voting for and against the bill shall be entered on the journal of each House respectively. If any bill shall not be returned by the President within ten days (Sundays excepted) after it shall have been presented to him, the same shall be a law, in like manner as if he had signed it, unless the Congress by their adjournment prevent its return, in which case it shall not be a law.

3 Every order, resolution, or vote to which the concurrence of the Senate and House of Representatives may be necessary (except on a question of adjournment) shall be presented to the President of the United States; and before the same shall take effect, shall be approved by him, or being disapproved by him, shall be repassed by two thirds of the Senate and House of Representatives, according to the rules and limitations prescribed in the case of a bill.

SECTION 8. 1 The Congress shall have power to lay and collect taxes, duties, imposts and excises, to pay the debts and provide for the common defense and general welfare of the United States; but all duties, imposts and excises shall be uniform throughout the United States;

2 To borrow money on the credit of the United States;

3 To regulate commerce with foreign nations, and among the several States, and with the Indian tribes;

4 To establish an uniform rule of naturalization, and uniform laws on the subject of bankruptcies throughout the United States;

5 To coin money, regulate the value thereof, and of foreign coin, and fix the standard of weights and measures;

6 To provide for the punishment of counterfeiting the securities and current coin of the United States;

7 To establish post offices and post roads;

8 To promote the progress of science and useful arts by securing for limited times to authors and inventors the exclusive right to their respective writings and discoveries;

9 To constitute tribunals inferior to the Supreme Court;

10 To define and punish piracies and felonies committed on the high seas, and offenses against the law of nations;

11 To declare war, grant letters of marque and reprisal, and make rules concerning captures on land and water;

12 To raise and support armies, but no appropriation of money to that use shall be for a longer term than two years ;

13 To provide and maintain a navy ;

14 To make rules for the government and regulation of the land and naval forces ;

15 To provide for calling forth the militia to execute the laws of the Union, suppress insurrections and repel invasions ;

16 To provide for organizing, arming, and disciplining the militia, and for governing such part of them as may be employed in the service of the United States, reserving to the States respectively the appointment of the officers, and the authority of training the militia according to the discipline prescribed by Congress ;

17 To exercise exclusive legislation in all cases whatsoever, over such district (not exceeding ten miles square) as may, by cession of particular States and the acceptance of Congress, become the seat of the government of the United States,<sup>1</sup> and to exercise like authority over all places purchased by the consent of the legislature of the State in which the same shall be, for the erection of forts, magazines, arsenals, dockyards, and other needful buildings ; and

18 To make all laws which shall be necessary and proper for carrying into execution the foregoing powers, and all other powers vested by this Constitution in the government of the United States, or in any department or officer thereof.

SECTION 9. 1 The migration or importation of such persons as any of the States now existing shall think proper to admit, shall not be prohibited by the Congress prior to the year one thousand eight hundred and eight, but a tax or duty may be imposed on such importation, not exceeding ten dollars for each person.<sup>2</sup>

2 The privilege of the writ of *habeas corpus* shall not be suspended, unless when in cases of rebellion or invasion the public safety may require it.

3 No bill of attainder or *ex post facto* law shall be passed.

4 No capitation, or other direct, tax shall be laid, unless in proportion to the census or enumeration hereinbefore directed to be taken.

5 No tax or duty shall be laid on articles exported from any State.

6 No preference shall be given by any regulation of commerce or revenue to the ports of one State over those of another: nor shall vessels bound to, or from, one State be obliged to enter, clear, or pay duties in another.

<sup>1</sup> The District of Columbia, which comes under these regulations, had not then been erected.

<sup>2</sup> See also Article V, p. 14.

7 No money shall be drawn from the treasury, but in consequence of appropriations made by law ; and a regular statement and account of the receipts and expenditures of all public money shall be published from time to time.

8 No title of nobility shall be granted by the United States : and no person holding any office of profit or trust under them, shall, without the consent of the Congress, accept of any present, emolument, office, or title, of any kind whatever, from any king, prince, or foreign State.

SECTION 10.<sup>1</sup> 1 No State shall enter into any treaty, alliance, or confederation ; grant letters of marque and reprisal ; coin money ; emit bills of credit ; make anything but gold and silver coin a tender in payment of debts ; pass any bill of attainder, *ex post facto* law, or law impairing the obligation of contracts, or grant any title of nobility.

2 No State shall, without the consent of the Congress, lay any imposts or duties on imports or exports, except what may be absolutely necessary for executing its inspection laws : and the net produce of all duties and imposts laid by any State on imports or exports, shall be for the use of the treasury of the United States ; and all such laws shall be subject to the revision and control of the Congress.

3 No State shall, without the consent of Congress, lay any duty of tonnage, keep troops, or ships of war in time of peace, enter into any agreement or compact with another State, or with a foreign power, or engage in war, unless actually invaded, or in such imminent danger as will not admit of delay.

## ARTICLE II

SECTION 1. 1 The executive power shall be vested in a President of the United States of America. He shall hold his office during the term of four years, and, together with the Vice President, chosen for the same term, be elected, as follows

2 Each State shall appoint, in such manner as the legislature thereof may direct, a number of electors, equal to the whole number of senators and representatives to which the State may be entitled in the Congress : but no senator or representative, or person holding an office of trust or profit under the United States, shall be appointed an elector.

The electors shall meet in their respective States, and vote by ballot for two persons, of whom one at least shall not be an inhabitant of the same State with themselves. And they shall make a list of all the persons voted for, and of the number of votes for each ; which list they shall sign and certify, and transmit sealed to the seat of the government of the

<sup>1</sup> See also the 10th Amendment, p. 17.



United States, directed to the president of the Senate. The president of the Senate shall, in the presence of the Senate and House of Representatives, open all the certificates, and the votes shall then be counted. The person having the greatest number of votes shall be the President, if such number be a majority of the whole number of electors appointed; and if there be more than one who have such majority, and have an equal number of votes, then the House of Representatives shall immediately choose by ballot one of them for President; and if no person have a majority, then from the five highest on the list the said house shall in like manner choose the President. But in choosing the President, the votes shall be taken by States, the representation from each State having one vote; a quorum for this purpose shall consist of a member or members from two thirds of the States, and a majority of all the States shall be necessary to a choice. In every case, after the choice of the President, the person having the greatest number of votes of the electors shall be the Vice President. But if there should remain two or more who have equal votes, the Senate shall choose from them by ballot the Vice President.<sup>1</sup>

3 The Congress may determine the time of choosing the electors, and the day on which they shall give their votes; which day shall be the same throughout the United States.

4 No person except a natural born citizen, or a citizen of the United States, at the time of the adoption of this Constitution, shall be eligible to the office of President; neither shall any person be eligible to that office who shall not have attained to the age of thirty-five years, and been fourteen years a resident within the United States.

5 In case of the removal of the President from office, or of his death, resignation, or inability to discharge the powers and duties of the said office, the same shall devolve on the Vice President, and the Congress may by law provide for the case of removal, death, resignation, or inability, both of the President and Vice President, declaring what officer shall then act as President, and such officer shall act accordingly, until the disability be removed, or a President shall be elected.

6 The President shall, at stated times, receive for his services a compensation, which shall neither be increased nor diminished during the period for which he shall have been elected, and he shall not receive within that period any other emolument from the United States, or any of them.

7 Before he enter on the execution of his office, he shall take the following oath or affirmation:—"I do solemnly swear (or affirm) that I will faithfully execute the office of President of the United States, and

<sup>1</sup> Superseded by the 12th Amendment. (See p. 18.)

will to the best of my ability, preserve, protect and defend the Constitution of the United States.”

SECTION 2. 1 The President shall be commander in chief of the army and navy of the United States, and of the militia of the several States, when called into the actual service of the United States; he may require the opinion, in writing, of the principal officer in each of the executive departments, upon any subject relating to the duties of their respective offices, and he shall have power to grant reprieves and pardons for offenses against the United States, except in cases of impeachment.

2 He shall have power, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, to make treaties, provided two thirds of the senators present concur; and he shall nominate, and by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, shall appoint ambassadors, other public ministers and consuls, judges of the Supreme Court, and all other officers of the United States, whose appointments are not herein otherwise provided for, and which shall be established by law: but the Congress may by law vest the appointment of such inferior officers, as they think proper, in the President alone, in the courts of law, or in the heads of departments.

3 The President shall have power to fill up all vacancies that may happen during the recess of the Senate, by granting commissions which shall expire at the end of their next session.

SECTION 3. He shall from time to time give to the Congress information of the state of the Union, and recommend to their consideration such measures as he shall judge necessary and expedient; he may, on extraordinary occasions, convene both Houses, or either of them, and in case of disagreement between them with respect to the time of adjournment, he may adjourn them to such time as he shall think proper; he shall receive ambassadors and other public ministers; he shall take care that the laws be faithfully executed, and shall commission all the officers of the United States.

SECTION 4. The President, Vice President, and all civil officers of the United States, shall be removed from office on impeachment for, and conviction of, treason, bribery, or other high crimes and misdemeanors.

### ARTICLE III

SECTION 1. The judicial power of the United States shall be vested in one Supreme Court, and in such inferior courts as the Congress may from time to time ordain and establish. The judges, both of the Supreme and inferior courts, shall hold their offices during good behavior, and shall, at stated times, receive for their services, a compensation which shall not be diminished during their continuance in office.

SECTION 2. 1 The judicial power shall extend to all cases, in law and

equity, arising under this Constitution, the laws of the United States, and treaties made, or which shall be made, under their authority ; — to all cases affecting ambassadors, other public ministers and consuls ; — to all cases of admiralty and maritime jurisdiction ; — to controversies to which the United States shall be a party ; — to controversies between two or more States ; — between a State and citizens of another State ; <sup>1</sup> — between citizens of different States, — between citizens of the same State claiming lands under grants of different States, and between a State, or the citizens thereof, and foreign States, citizens or subjects.

2 In all cases affecting ambassadors, other public ministers and consuls, and those in which a State shall be party, the Supreme Court shall have original jurisdiction. In all the other cases before mentioned, the Supreme Court shall have appellate jurisdiction, both as to law and to fact, with such exceptions, and under such regulations as the Congress shall make.

3 The trial of all crimes, except in cases of impeachment, shall be by jury ; and such trial shall be held in the State where the said crimes shall have been committed ; but when not committed within any State, the trial shall be at such place or places as the Congress may by law have directed.

SECTION 3. 1 Treason against the United States, shall consist only in levying war against them, or in adhering to their enemies, giving them aid and comfort. No person shall be convicted of treason unless on the testimony of two witnesses to the same overt act, or on confession in open court.

2 The Congress shall have power to declare the punishment of treason, but no attainder of treason shall work corruption of blood, or forfeiture except during the life of the person attainted.

## ARTICLE IV

SECTION 1. Full faith and credit shall be given in each State to the public acts, records, and judicial proceedings of every other State. And the Congress may by general laws prescribe the manner in which such acts, records and proceedings shall be proved, and the effect thereof.

SECTION 2. 1 The citizens of each State shall be entitled to all privileges and immunities of citizens in the several States.

2 A person charged in any State with treason, felony, or other crime, who shall flee from justice, and be found in another State, shall on demand of the executive authority of the State from which he fled, be delivered up to be removed to the State having jurisdiction of the crime.

<sup>1</sup> See the 11th Amendment, p. 18.

3 No person held to service or labor in one State, under the laws thereof, escaping into another, shall, in consequence of any law or regulation therein, be discharged from such service or labor, but shall be delivered up on claim of the party to whom such service or labor may be due.

SECTION 3. 1 New States may be admitted by the Congress into this Union ; but no new State shall be formed or erected within the jurisdiction of any other State ; nor any State be formed by the junction of two or more States, or parts of States, without the consent of the legislatures of the States concerned as well as of the Congress.

2 The Congress shall have power to dispose of and make all needful rules and regulations respecting the territory or other property belonging to the United States ; and nothing in this Constitution shall be so construed as to prejudice any claims of the United States, or of any particular State.

SECTION 4. The United States shall guarantee to every State in this Union a republican form of government, and shall protect each of them against invasion ; and on application of the legislature, or of the executive (when the legislature cannot be convened) against domestic violence.

## ARTICLE V

The Congress, whenever two thirds of both Houses shall deem it necessary, shall propose amendments to this Constitution, or, on the application of the legislatures of two thirds of the several States, shall call a convention for proposing amendments, which, in either case, shall be valid to all intents and purposes, as part of this Constitution, when ratified by the legislatures of three fourths of the several States, or by conventions in three fourths thereof, as the one or the other mode of ratification may be proposed by the Congress ; Provided that no amendment which may be made prior to the year one thousand eight hundred and eight shall in any manner affect the first and fourth clauses in the ninth section of the first article ; and that no State, without its consent, shall be deprived of its equal suffrage in the Senate.

## ARTICLE VI

1 All debts contracted and engagements entered into, before the adoption of this Constitution, shall be as valid against the United States under this Constitution, as under the Confederation.

2 This Constitution, and the laws of the United States which shall be made in pursuance thereof ; and all treaties made, or which shall be made, under the authority of the United States, shall be the supreme law of the

land ; and the judges in every State shall be bound thereby, anything in the Constitution or laws of any State to the contrary notwithstanding.

3 The senators and representatives before mentioned, and the members of the several State legislatures, and all executive and judicial officers, both of the United States, and of the several States, shall be bound by oath or affirmation to support this Constitution ; but no religious test shall ever be required as a qualification to any office or public trust under the United States.

## ARTICLE VII

The ratification of the conventions of nine States shall be sufficient for the establishment of this Constitution between the States so ratifying the same.<sup>1</sup>

Done in Convention by the unanimous consent of the States present the seventeenth day of September in the year of our Lord one thousand seven hundred and eighty-seven, and of the independence of the United States of America the twelfth. In witness whereof we have hereunto subscribed our names,

Go : WASHINGTON —

Presidt. and Deputy from Virginia

### *New Hampshire*

John Langdon

Nicholas Gilman

Wm. Paterson

Jona: Dayton

### *Pennsylvania*

B. Franklin

Thomas Mifflin

Robt. Morris

Geo. Clymer

Thos. Fitzsimons

Jared Ingersoll

James Wilson

Gouv Morris

### *Massachusetts*

Nathaniel Gorham

Rufus King

### *Connecticut*

Wm. Saml. Johnson

Roger Sherman

### *New York*

Alexander Hamilton

### *New Jersey*

Wil: Livingston

David Brearley

### *Delaware*

Geo: Read

Gunning Bedford Jun

John Dickinson

Richard Bassett

Jaco: Broom

<sup>1</sup> After the Constitution had been adopted by the Convention it was ratified by conventions held in each of the states.



*Maryland*

James McHenry  
 Dan of St. Thos Jenifer  
 Danl. Carroll

*Virginia*

John Blair —  
 James Madison Jr.

*North Carolina*

Wm. Blount  
 Richd. Dobbs Spaight  
 Hu Williamson.

*South Carolina*

J. Rutledge,  
 Charles Cotesworth Pinckney  
 Charles Pinckney  
 Pierce Butler.

*Georgia*

William Few  
 Abr Baldwin

Attest

WILLIAM JACKSON Secretary.

---

Articles in addition to, and amendment of, the Constitution of the United States of America, proposed by Congress, and ratified by the legislatures of the several States pursuant to the fifth article of the original Constitution.

ARTICLE I<sup>1</sup>

Congress shall make no law respecting an establishment of religion, or prohibiting the free exercise thereof ; or abridging the freedom of speech, or of the press ; or the right of the people peaceably to assemble, and to petition the government for a redress of grievances.

## ARTICLE II

A well regulated militia, being necessary to the security of a free State, the right of the people to keep and bear arms, shall not be infringed.

## ARTICLE III

No soldier shall, in time of peace be quartered in any house, without the consent of the owner, nor in time of war, but in a manner to be prescribed by law.

## ARTICLE IV

The right of the people to be secure in their persons, houses, papers, and effects, against unreasonable searches and seizures, shall not be violated, and no warrants shall issue, but upon probable cause, supported by

<sup>1</sup> The first ten Amendments were adopted in 1791.

oath or affirmation, and particularly describing the place to be searched, and the persons or things to be seized.

#### ARTICLE V

No person shall be held to answer for a capital, or otherwise infamous crime, unless on a presentment or indictment of a grand jury, except in cases arising in the land or naval forces, or in the militia, when in actual service in time of war or public danger ; nor shall any person be subject for the same offense to be twice put in jeopardy of life or limb ; nor shall be compelled in any criminal case to be a witness against himself, nor be deprived of life, liberty, or property, without due process of law ; nor shall private property be taken for public use without just compensation.

#### ARTICLE VI

In all criminal prosecutions, the accused shall enjoy the right to a speedy and public trial, by an impartial jury of the State and district wherein the crime shall have been committed, which district shall have been previously ascertained by law, and to be informed of the nature and cause of the accusation ; to be confronted with the witnesses against him ; to have compulsory process for obtaining witnesses in his favor, and to have the assistance of counsel for his defense.

#### ARTICLE VII

In suits at common law, where the value in controversy shall exceed twenty dollars, the right of trial by jury shall be preserved, and no fact tried by a jury shall be otherwise reëxamined in any court of the United States, than according to the rules of the common law.

#### ARTICLE VIII

Excessive bail shall not be required, nor excessive fines imposed, nor cruel and unusual punishments inflicted.

#### ARTICLE IX

The enumeration in the Constitution of certain rights shall not be construed to deny or disparage others retained by the people.

#### ARTICLE X

The powers not delegated to the United States by the Constitution, nor prohibited by it to the States, are reserved to the States respectively, or to the people.

ARTICLE XI<sup>1</sup>

The judicial power of the United States shall not be construed to extend to any suit in law or equity, commenced or prosecuted against one of the United States by citizens of another State, or by citizens or subjects of any foreign State.

ARTICLE XII<sup>2</sup>

The electors shall meet in their respective States, and vote by ballot for President and Vice President, one of whom, at least, shall not be an inhabitant of the same State with themselves ; they shall name in their ballots the person voted for as President, and in distinct ballots the person voted for as Vice President, and they shall make distinct lists of all persons voted for as President and of all persons voted for as Vice President, and of the number of votes for each, which lists they shall sign and certify, and transmit sealed to the seat of the government of the United States, directed to the president of the Senate ;—The president of the Senate shall, in presence of the Senate and House of Representatives, open all the certificates and the votes shall then be counted ; — The person having the greatest number of votes for President shall be the President, if such number be a majority of the whole number of electors appointed ; and if no person have such majority, then from the persons having the highest numbers not exceeding three on the list of those voted for as President, the House of Representatives shall choose immediately, by ballot, the President. But in choosing the President, the votes shall be taken by States, the representation from each State having one vote ; a quorum for this purpose shall consist of a member or members from two thirds of the States, and a majority of all the States shall be necessary to a choice. And if the House of Representatives shall not choose a President whenever the right of choice shall devolve upon them, before the fourth day of March next following, then the Vice President shall act as President, as in the case of the death or other constitutional disability of the President. The person having the greatest number of votes as Vice President shall be the Vice President, if such number be a majority of the whole number of electors appointed, and if no person have a majority, then from the two highest numbers on the list, the Senate shall choose the Vice President ; a quorum for the purpose shall consist of two thirds of the whole number of senators, and a majority of the whole number shall be necessary to a choice. But no person constitutionally ineligible to the office of President shall be eligible to that of Vice President of the United States.

<sup>1</sup> Adopted in 1798.

<sup>2</sup> Adopted in 1804.

ARTICLE XIII<sup>1</sup>

SECTION 1. 1 Neither slavery nor involuntary servitude, except as punishment for crime whereof the party shall have been duly convicted, shall exist within the United States, or any place subject to their jurisdiction.

2 Congress shall have power to enforce this article by appropriate legislation.

ARTICLE XIV<sup>2</sup>

1 All persons born or naturalized in the United States, and subject to the jurisdiction thereof, are citizens of the United States and of the State wherein they reside. No State shall make or enforce any law which shall abridge the privileges or immunities of citizens of the United States ; nor shall any State deprive any person of life, liberty, or property, without due process of law ; nor deny to any person within its jurisdiction the equal protection of the laws.

2 Representatives shall be apportioned among the several States according to their respective numbers, counting the whole number of persons in each State, excluding Indians not taxed. But when the right to vote at any election for the choice of electors for President and Vice President of the United States, representatives in Congress, the executive and judicial officers of a State, or the members of the legislature thereof, is denied to any of the male inhabitants of such State, being twenty-one years of age, and citizens of the United States, or in any way abridged, except for participation in rebellion, or other crime, the basis of representation therein shall be reduced in the proportion which the number of such male citizens shall bear to the whole number of male citizens twenty-one years of age in such State.

3 No person shall be a senator or representative in Congress, or elector of President and Vice President, or hold any office, civil or military, under the United States, or under any State, who, having previously taken an oath, as a member of Congress, or as an officer of the United States, or as a member of any State legislature, or as an executive or judicial officer of any State, to support the Constitution of the United States, shall have engaged in insurrection or rebellion against the same, or given aid or comfort to the enemies thereof. But Congress may by a vote of two thirds of each House, remove such disability.

4 The validity of the public debt of the United States, authorized by law, including debts incurred for payment of pensions and bounties for services in suppressing insurrection or rebellion, shall not be questioned.

<sup>1</sup> Adopted in 1865.

<sup>2</sup> Adopted in 1868.

But neither the United States nor any State shall assume or pay any debt or obligation incurred in aid of insurrection or rebellion against the United States, or any claim for the loss or emancipation of any slave; but all such debts, obligations and claims shall be held illegal and void.

5 The Congress shall have power to enforce, by appropriate legislation, the provisions of this article.

## ARTICLE XV<sup>1</sup>

SECTION 1. The right of citizens of the United States to vote shall not be denied or abridged by the United States or by any State on account of race, color, or previous condition of servitude.

SECTION 2. The Congress shall have power to enforce this article by appropriate legislation.

## STUDIES ON THE CONSTITUTION OF THE UNITED STATES

Why was the Constitution formed? How long had the United States government existed before the formation of the Constitution? Into what three departments was the government divided?

## ARTICLE I

SECTION 1. — To whom was the lawmaking power given? Into what two houses was Congress divided?

SECTION 2. — Who elect the representatives in Congress, and how often are they chosen? What are the qualifications of a representative? How many persons were first apportioned to a Congressional district? How many are included in a district from which one representative is sent now? How often must a census be taken? How are vacancies filled in the House of Representatives? How is the speaker chosen?

SECTION 3. — By whom are United States senators chosen? How many senators are allowed to each state? For how long is a senator elected? Into what classes were the members of the first Senate divided, and for what purpose? What are the qualifications of a senator? Who is the presiding officer in the Senate? When may he vote? How would a vacancy in the chair of the Senate be filled? What special power is intrusted to the Senate? What is the limit of the Senate's power in impeachments?

SECTION 4. — When does Congress assemble? How often?

SECTION 5. — What does each House decide in regard to its members? What number of members constitutes a quorum? What must each House keep? How is the question of adjournment decided?

<sup>1</sup> Adopted in 1870.



SECTION 6. — What privileges are granted and what restrictions are placed upon members of Congress? What is a congressman's salary? (*Ans.* Each senator and each member of the House of Representatives receives for his services \$5000 per annum, and mileage for his traveling expenses. He may also employ a clerk.)

SECTION 7. — In which house do revenue bills originate? What part of the lawmaking power belongs to the President? Explain the circumstances under which a law may be made without the signature of the President.

SECTION 8. — State the powers delegated to Congress by Section 8.

SECTION 9. — Give the law concerning immigrants. What is the writ of *habeas corpus*? (*Ans.* An order written by a magistrate, and demanding that a person be brought before the court. Its object is to prevent imprisonment without sufficient cause.) When may the writ of *habeas corpus* be suspended? What is a bill of attainder? (*Ans.* A legislative act by which a person guilty of certain crimes loses all civil rights, and can never inherit property or transmit it to heirs.) What is an *ex post facto* law? (*Ans.* A law which makes a deed criminal which was not so when committed.) What is the law for levying capitation and import taxes? State the constitutional law upon the commerce of the states. For what purposes, and in what way, may money be drawn from the United States treasury? Give the law prohibiting titles of nobility in this country; also that forbidding the acceptance of gifts from a foreign power.

SECTION 10. — Give the laws which restrict the action of states.

## ARTICLE II

SECTION 1. — To whom is the executive power intrusted? Explain what is meant by an elector. How are the President and the Vice President elected? For what length of time? What is required of a candidate for the presidency? In the case of the President's death or disability from any cause, how is his office filled? Repeat the President's oath of office. What do the President and the Vice President receive for their services? (*Ans.* The President's salary is \$50,000 per annum. The Vice President receives \$8000 per annum.)

SECTION 2. — What duties and powers belong to the President? What may he do, with the advice and consent of the Senate? When may vacancies be filled by him?

SECTION 3. — What other duties are required of him?

SECTION 4. — What is the law for the removal of all civil officers?

## ARTICLE III

SECTION 1. — In what is the judicial power vested?

SECTION 2. — What cases are tried by the Supreme Court of the United States? What is the difference between original jurisdiction and appellate jurisdiction? (*Ans.* When the first trial of any case is held in a court, that court has the first or original jurisdiction. When the case is appealed from a lower to a higher court, the latter is said to have appellate jurisdiction.) What is the law in regard to trials?

SECTION 3. — What constitutes treason against the United States, and how may a person be convicted of it? By whom is such a person punished, and what are the restrictions to this punishment?

#### ARTICLE IV

SECTIONS 1 AND 2. — What does the Constitution require of each state in regard to other states? What is the law about criminals who have fled from one state to another?

SECTION 3. — Upon what conditions are new states admitted? How does the Constitution provide for the government of territories?

SECTION 4. — What protection may any state claim from the general government?

#### ARTICLE V

How are additions, or amendments, made to the Constitution?

#### ARTICLE VI

What provision was made in regard to the public debt? What is acknowledged to be the supreme law of the land? What ceremony is necessary before the installation of a legislative, executive, or judicial officer? How does the Constitution guarantee religious freedom?

#### ARTICLE VII

In what way was the Constitution established?

#### AMENDMENTS

What rights are promised in the first four amendments? May a person be punished more than once for one offense? State the rights of the accused in criminal trials. What about trial by jury in common law suits? What rights have the people and the states beyond those enumerated in the Constitution? What is the present law for the government and guidance of electors? Should the electors fail to make a choice for President, upon whom does the election devolve? Give the article which excluded the custom of owning slaves from the United States. How was the basis of representation changed? What was the decision in reference to the public debt? Which amendments gave the right to vote to those who had formerly been slaves?

# INDEX

## A

Abolition movement, 271.  
 Acadia, 33, 115.  
 Adams, John, in Paris, 187; elected President, 223; administration of, 223-227; death, 263.  
 Adams, John Q., elected President, 259; administration of, 260-265.  
 Adams, Sam'l, 130, proposes committees, 133.  
 Adolphus, Gustavus, 88.  
 Alabama, admission of, 255; secession of, 295; readmission of, 365.  
 Alabama claims, 372.  
*Alabama*, The, 330; sunk, 351.  
 Alamance, battle of, 132.  
 Alamo, Fort, 277.  
 Alaska purchased, 368.  
 Albany, trading post established near, 79; name changed from Fort Orange, 82; meeting of colonial delegates at, 118.  
 Albemarle colony, 91.  
*Albemarle* lost, 250.  
 Algiers, war with, 250.  
 Alien and Sedition acts, 224.  
 Allen, Ethan, 143.  
 Amendment, thirteenth, 364; fourteenth, 364; fifteenth, 369.  
 American, or Know-nothing, party, 291.  
 American Revolution, 125-189.  
 American system, 265.  
 Amerigo Vespucci, 20.  
 Amherst, General, in command, 116.  
 Anderson, Major, 306.  
 André, Major, 184.  
 Andros, Sir Edmund, 73, 82.  
 Antietam, battle of, 329.  
 Anti-federalists, 218.  
 Appomattox Courthouse, surrender of General Lee at, 355.  
 Archdale, John, 91.  
 Arctic explorations, 381.  
 Arkansas, admission of, 272; secession of, 308; readmission of, 365.  
 Armed Neutrality, 177.

Arnold, Benedict, on Lake Champlain, 156; at Saratoga, 159; treason, 183; in Virginia, 185.  
 Arthur, Chester A., 381; administration of, 380-386; death, 387.  
 Articles of Confederation, 151, 193.  
 Artists, 418.  
 Ashe, General, 168.  
 Atlanta, battles of, 348; burning of, 349.  
 Atlanta Exposition, 402, 403.  
 Atlantic Cable, 366-368.  
 Augusta, settlement of, 101; besieged, 181.  
 Aztecs, 24.

## B

Bacon's Rebellion, 52, 53.  
 Bainbridge, Captain, 229.  
 Bakers Creek, battle of, 336.  
 Balboa, Vasco Nuñez de, 26.  
 Ballot reform, 398.  
 Baltimore, attack on Fort McHenry, 247.  
 Bancroft, George, 416.  
 Bank, national, 218, 250, 269.  
 Banks, General, 327.  
 Bay Psalm Book, 60.  
 Beauregard, Gustave, in Mexico, 283; in Charleston, 306; at Manassas, 311; in Tennessee, 319; retreat of, 319; at Petersburg, 343.  
 Beaver Dam Creek, battle of, 328.  
 Bennington, battle of, 158.  
 Berkeley, Sir W., governor of Virginia, 50.  
 Black Hawk war, 266.  
 Blaine, James G., 385.  
 Blockade, 314; extension of, 324.  
 Blockade of the ports of Europe, 233.  
*Bonhomme Richard*, 171.  
 Boone, Daniel, 169.  
 Booth, John Wilkes, 356.  
 Boston, founding of, 59; massacre, 131; "Tea Party," 134; Port Bill, 134; sympathy for, 135; evacuation of, 147; fire in, 371.  
 Braddock, General, at Fort Duquesne, 114.  
 Bradford, William, 57.

Bragg, Gen., in Tennessee and Kentucky, 320.  
 Brandywine, battle of, 161.  
 Breckenridge, General, 343.  
 Breeds Hill, battle of, 144.  
 Briar Creek, battle of, 163.  
 Brown, General, 245.  
 Brown, Governor J. E., 348.  
 Brown, John, 294.  
 Browne, Colonel, at Augusta, 181.  
 Bryant, William Cullen, 418.  
 Buchanan, James, 292; administration of, 292-298.  
 Buell, General, at Shiloh, 319.  
 Buena Vista, battle of, 281.  
 Bunker Hill, battle of, 144.  
 Burgoyne, General, at Bunker Hill, 144; advance of, 157; surrender, 159.  
 Burke, Edmund, 131.  
 Burnside, General A. E., commander in chief, 330.  
 Burr, Aaron, 226.  
 Butler, General B. F., at New Orleans, 321.

## C

Cable, Atlantic, 366-368.  
 Cabot, John, and Sebastian, 19.  
 Calhoun, John C., 267; on the tariff, 268; death, 288.  
 California, conquest of, 282; gold discovered in, 284; controversy about, 286; admitted, 285.  
 Calvert, Cecil, 76.  
 Calvert, George, 75.  
 Calvert, Leonard, 76.  
 Cambridge poets, 418.  
 Camden, battle of, 173.  
 Campbell, Colonel, at Savannah, 167.  
 Canada, invasions of, 145, 245.  
 Canadian rebellion, 273.  
 Candles and candlesticks, 198.  
 Carolina, Fort, 32.  
 Carolinas, settlement of, 90.  
 Carpetbaggers, 365.  
 Carr, Dabney, 134.  
 Carteret, Sir George, 84.  
 Cartier, Jacques, 32.  
 Carver, Governor, 57.  
 Cavaliers, 50, 93.  
 Cedar Creek, battle of, 346.  
 Cedar Mountain, battle of, 328.  
 Census report, 397.  
 Centennial celebrations, 374; 384; 393.  
 Chads Ford, battle of, 161.  
 Chambersburg, burning of, 345.  
 Champlain, Lake, battle of, 246.

Champlain, Sam'l, 33; founds Quebec, 33.  
 Chancellorsville, battle of, 332.  
 Charleston earthquake, 389.  
 Charleston, settlement of, 93.  
 Charles I, 50.  
 Charter, 85; of Rhode Island, 65; new, of New England, 74; of Georgia, 97.  
 Cherokees, war with, 119; trouble in Georgia with, 260; removal of, 261.  
 Cherry valley, 166.  
*Chesapeake*, and *Leopard*, 233; and *Shannon*, 243.  
 Chicago, burning of, 371.  
 Chickamauga, battle of, 338.  
 Chile, trouble with, 396.  
 China, treaty with, 292.  
 Chinese immigration, 391.  
 Chippewa, battle of, 245.  
 Christina, Fort, 89.  
 Cibola, Seven Cities of, 27.  
 Civil Service reform, 381, 386.  
 Clarendon colony, 91.  
 Clark, G. R., conquest of Northwest, 169.  
 Clarke, Colonel, 168.  
 Clay, Henry, on the Missouri Compromise, 256; on the tariff, 268; compromise, 287; death, 289.  
 Clayborne, William, 76, 77.  
 Cleveland, Grover, elected President, 384; administration, 386-392; second administration, 399-405.  
 Clinton, De Witt, 263.  
 Clinton, General, 144; in the South, 148, 164; at Stony Point, 181; at Yorktown, 185.  
 Coal, discovery of, 219.  
 Coast defenses, 404.  
 Coins, 206.  
 Cold Harbor, battle of, 343.  
 Coligny, 32.  
 Colonial Congress, First, 130.  
 Colorado, admission of, 375.  
 Columbia, burning of, 353.  
 Columbia River, exploration of, 232.  
 Columbian naval review, 401, 402.  
 Columbus, Christopher, 13-19.  
 Committees of Correspondence, 133.  
 Compromise, Missouri, 256.  
 Compromise, or Omnibus, Bill, 287.  
 Concord, battle of, 138.  
 Conestoga wagons, 262.  
 Confederate commanders, 358.  
 Confederate disabilities removed, 404.  
 Confederate States, 296.  
 Confederation, Articles of, 151, 193.  
 Confederation of New England, 70-75.  
 Conflicting claims, 39; of French and English, 105.

Congress, First Colonial, 130; First Continental, 135; Second, 143; Peace, 297.  
 Connecticut, settlement of, 65.  
 Constitution adopted, 210.  
 Constitution of the United States, 210-212; Appendix, 5-20.  
 Constitutional Union party, 294.  
*Constitution and Guerriere*, 242.  
 Continental Congress, First, 135; Second, 143.  
 Convention, Constitutional, 208; at Hartford, 247; First National, 269.  
 Conway Cabal, 164.  
 Cooper, J. F., 417.  
 Copyright, international, law, 375.  
 Cornwallis, General, in New York, 153; in South Carolina, 173; proclamation of, 176; at Guilford Courthouse, 179; at Yorktown, 185; surrender, 186.  
 Coronado, 27.  
 Cotton gin, invention of, 219.  
 Court, Supreme, 212.  
 Cowpens, battle of, 178.  
 Cows, the first, in America, 47.  
 "Craigie House," 145.  
 Credit Mobilier, 373.  
 Creek War, 245.  
 Cromwell, Oliver, 50, 51, 78.  
 Cross Keys, battle of, 327.  
 Crown Point, Fort, English campaigns against, 114, 117; Allen and Arnold's capture of, 143.  
 Culpeper, Lord, 51.  
 Cumberland road, 261.  
 Currency, 206; decimal, 207, 218.  
 Custer, General, 373.

## D

Davis, Jefferson, 296; elected President, 296; re-elected, 316; captured, 357; death, 296.  
 Dean, Silas, 159.  
 De Balboa, Vasco Nuñez, 26, 27.  
 Debates in Congress, 267.  
 Debt, state, and national, 217.  
 Decatur, Lieutenant, in the war with Tripoli, 229.  
 Declaration of Independence, 150, 423-426.  
 De Grasse, Count, at Yorktown, 185.  
 De Kalb, Baron, 174.  
 Delaware, Lord, 46.  
 Delaware, settlement of, 88, 89.  
 Democrats, 218, 265, 277.  
 Desolation of the South, 364.  
 De Soto, Fernando, 27-30.  
 D'Estaing, Count, 171.  
 Detroit, captured by the English, 242.

Dingley Tariff Bill, 406.  
 Dinwiddie, Governor, 109.  
 Discoveries, 11-26.  
 Dissenters, 93.  
 Donelson, Fort, fall of, 318.  
 Douglas, Stephen A., 291.  
 Downie, Commodore, on Lake Champlain, 246.  
 Dred Scott case, 292.  
 Dress, in colonial days, 199.  
 Duke of York, 81, 84.  
 Dunnmore, Lord, 146.  
 Duquesne, fort at, 113; expedition against, 114, 115; occupied by the English, 116.  
 Dustin, Mrs., 108.  
 Dutch in the Hudson, 38-40; in Connecticut, 65; traders, 79; home of, 80, 81; customs of, 81.  
 Dutch West India Company, 79.

## E

Early, General, at Lynchburg, 343; in Maryland, 344; at Chambersburg, 345; at Cedar Creek, 346; retreat of, 354.  
 Edison, Thomas, 375, 378, 385.  
 Education, 417.  
 Election troubles, 376.  
 Electoral College, 211.  
 Electoral votes, law for counting, 388.  
 Electric light, 378; car, 385.  
 Elliot, John, 72.  
 Emancipation proclamation, 330.  
 Embargo act, 234.  
 Emerson, Ralph W., 418.  
 Emigrants, 230; from Europe, 254.  
 Endicott, John, 59.  
 England, condition of, 176.  
 Erie Canal, 263.  
 Eutaw Springs, battle of, 180.  
 Exposition, Centennial, 374; Cotton International, 384; World's Fair, 400, 401; Atlanta Cotton, 402, 403.

## F

Fair Oaks, battle of, 325.  
 Farragut, Admiral, at New Orleans, 321; at Mobile, 352.  
 Federalists, 218, 223, 225, 226.  
 Federal troops, removal of, 377.  
 Ferdinand, King, 17, 18.  
 Ferguson, Major, at Kings Mountain, 176.  
 Field, Cyrus W., 367.  
 Fifteenth Amendment, 369.  
 Fillmore, Millard, succession to presidency, 288; administration of, 292.  
 Financial trouble of 1893, 399.



- Fire in Boston, 371.  
 Fisher, Fort, bombardment of, 352; surrender of, 353.  
 Fisheries, settlement of, 372; seal, 399, 400.  
 Fitch's, John, steamboat, 235.  
 Five bleeding wounds, 287.  
 Five Nations (Indians), 109.  
 Flag, American, 151, 153.  
 Flag, Confederate, 308.  
 Flamborough Head, naval battle of, 171.  
*Florida*, 330; captured, 351.  
 Florida, discovery of, 26; efforts to conquer, 27; ceded to England, 119; ceded to Spain, 187; war in, 270; bought Spain, 253; admission of, 276; secession of, 295; readmission of, 365.  
 "Force Bill," 395.  
 Forest fires, 371.  
 Forrest, General, at Meridian, 341.  
 Fort Fisher, attacked, 351, 353.  
 Forts on the Delaware surrender, 162; on the frontier, 202.  
 Fourteenth Amendment, 364.  
 France, troubles with, 223.  
 Franklin, battle of, 349.  
 Franklin, Benjamin, 88; plan for union, 113; sent to France, 160, 187.  
 Franklin, state of, 204.  
 Fraziers Farm, battle of, 323.  
 Fredericksburg, battle of, 329.  
 Free-soilers, 285.  
 Free-soil party, 285.  
 Frémont, John C., in California, 282; campaign in the Shenandoah valley, 327.  
 French Alliance, 160.  
 French and Indian War, 109-121; cause of, 109; results, 120.  
 French fleet, 167; 171; return of, 182; 185.  
 French settlers, 95.  
 French territory, expansion of, 109.  
 Frontenac, Fort, capture of, 116.  
 Fugitive slave law, 290.  
 Fundamental Orders, 67.  
 Furs, 37, 39, 77, 79, 96.  
 Fur trade, 33, 108, 109.
- G
- Gage, General, 133, 144.  
 Gaines Mill, battle of, 323.  
 Garfield, James, elected President, 380; death, 381.  
 Garrison, William Lloyd, 271.  
 Gates, General, succeeds Schuyler, 158; in the South, 174; at Camden, 174.  
 Gates, Sir Thomas, 47.  
 Genet, French envoy, 231.  
 Georgia, settlement of, 97-104; first settlers, 98; rents, 99; Indians, 99; Salzburgers, 100; the Wesleys, 101; Whitefield, 102; silk, indigo, rice, 103; a royal province, 104; cession of western claims, 204, 233; secession of, 295; readmission of, 370.  
 Germantown, battle of, 162.  
 Gettysburg, battle of, 334, 335.  
 Gilbert, Sir Humphrey, 34, 35.  
 Gold, 45; discovery of, in California, 284.  
 Gordon, General J. B., 345; at Cedar Creek, 346; at Appomattox, 355.  
 Gorges, Ferdinando, 67; grant of, 69.  
 "Grand Model," 90.  
 Grant, General U. S., capture of Forts Henry and Donelson, 318; at Shiloh, 319; on the Mississippi, 336; at Vicksburg, 337; made lieutenant general, 341; battles of the Wilderness, Spottsylvania, and Cold Harbor, 342, 343; at Richmond, 354.  
 Greene, General Nathanael, 178; retreat, 179.  
 Guadalupe Hidalgo, treaty of, 283.  
*Guerriere* war ship, 242.  
 Guilford Courthouse, battle of, 179.
- H
- Habersham, Joseph, 146.  
 Halleck, General H. W., commander in chief, 323.  
 Hamilton, Alexander, Secretary of the Treasury, 216; his financial plan, 217; leader of the Federalist party, 218; duel, 226.  
 Hardee, General, at Savannah, 350.  
 Harpers Ferry, capture of, 329.  
 Harrison, Benjamin, elected President, 392; administration of, 392-398.  
 Harrison, William Henry, 274; in the battle of Tippecanoe, 237; administration of, 274.  
 Hartford, 66; convention at, 247.  
 Hart, Nancy, 168.  
 Harvard University, 60.  
 Haverhill, 108.  
 Hawthorne, Nathaniel, 417.  
 Hayes, R. B., elected President, 376; administration of, 377-380.  
 Haymarket riot, 389.  
 Heights of Abraham, battle of, 118.  
 Hendricks, Vice President, death, 387.  
 Henry, Fort, fall of, 318.  
 Henry, Patrick, 126, 130, 146.  
 Hessians, 146.  
 Historians, 419.  
 Hobkirks Hill, battle of, 180.  
 Hoke, General, 351.  
 Holmes, Oliver W., 418.  
 Homes of the settlers, 62, 80, 103.

Hood, General John B., 348, 349.  
 Hooker, Rev. Thomas, 65.  
 Hooker, General Joseph, in command, 332.  
 Howe, Admiral, 152.  
 Howe, General, 144; leaves Boston, 147; at Long Island, 152; at the Brandywine, 161; in Philadelphia, 162; recalled to England, 165.  
 Hudson, Henry, 38, 39.  
 Hudson River, 39.  
 Huguenots, 32, 95.  
 Hull, General, 242.  
 Hunter, General, 343.  
 Hutchinson, Mrs. Anne, 65, 80.

## I

Idaho, admission of, 392.  
 Ill feeling among the states, 207.  
 Illinois, admission of, 255.  
 Impeachment, 368.  
 Independence of the United States acknowledged by France, 160.  
 India, 13.  
 Indiana, admission of, 250.  
 Indian massacre, 48, 49; war, 50, 80, 96, 246, 372.  
 Indians, 16, 22-25, 80, 92, 99; at work for the French, 108; of the Northwest subdued, 222; removal of, 261.  
 Indigo, cultivation of, 94, 102.  
 Industries, 194.  
 Interstate commerce, 388.  
 Invasions from Canada, 156.  
 Inventions, 416, 417.  
 Iowa, admission of, 276.  
 Iron, discovery, 219.  
 Iroquois, 33; treaty with, 83; between French and English, 109; another treaty with, 113.  
 Irrigation, 414.  
 Irving, Washington, 417.  
 Isabella, Queen, 14, 17.  
 Island No. 10, surrender of, 319.

## J

Jackson, Andrew, in Creek war, 245; at New Orleans, 248; in Florida war, 253; elected President, 265; administration of, 265-272.  
 Jackson, General F. J., 326; in valley campaign, 326; at Manassas, 328; at Harpers Ferry, 329; wounded, 333.  
 James I, 36.  
 Jamestown, settlement of, 42.  
 Japan, negotiations with, 292.  
 Jasper, Sergeant, 150; death, 171.

Jay, John, in Paris, 187; treaty with England, 221.

*Jeannette*, 381.

Jefferson, Thomas, writes the Declaration, 150; made Secretary of State, 216; leads the Republican party, 218; elected Vice President, 223; elected President, 226; administration of, 227-236; death, 263.

Johnson, Andrew, 363; plan for reconstruction, 363; trial, 368.

Johnston, Albert S., in Utah, 294; in the West, 317; at Shiloh, 319; killed, 319.

Johnston, General J. E., at Winchester, 310; at Manassas, 311; wounded, 325; in Georgia, 339; at Dalton, 347; retreat to Atlanta, 347, 348; in North Carolina, 353; his surrender, 356.

Johnstown flood, 393.

Joliet reaches the Mississippi, 106.

Jones, Paul, 170.

## K

Kansas-Nebraska bill, 291.

Kansas, war in, 291; admitted, 295.

Kearny, General, in New Mexico and California, 280; governor, 282.

Kennesaw Mountain fortified, 348.

Kentucky, settlement of, 169; admitted, 222.

Kernstown, battle of, 326.

Key, Francis, 247.

Kidd, Captain, 83.

King George's War, 107.

King Philip's War, 72, 73.

Kings Mountain, battle of, 176.

King William's War, 107.

Knights of Labor, 388.

Know-nothings, 291.

Knox, General Henry, 216.

Kuklux Klan, 366.

## L

Lafayette, Marquis de, arrival of, 161; at Brandywine, 162, 182; visit to America, 258; at Yorktown, 185.

Lake Champlain, 33.

La Salle explores the Mississippi River, 106.

Laurens, Henry, in Paris, 187.

Lawrence, Captain, on the *Chesapeake*, 243.

Lee, Fort, retreat from, 153.

Lee, General Charles, made major general, 143; in command in the South, 149; at North Castle, 153; his treason, 160; court-martialed, 166.

Lee, General Henry, 178; at Paulus Hook, 182.

- Lee, General R. E., in Mexico, 282; against John Brown, 294; commands the army of North Virginia, 325; in Seven Days' Battles, 327, 328; defeats Pope, 329; invades Maryland, 329; at Antietam, 329; defeats Burnside at Fredericksburg, 330; defeats Hooker at Chancellorsville, 332; defeated by Meade at Gettysburg, 334; at battle of the Wilderness, 342; at Spottsylvania, 342; at North Anna, 343; at Cold Harbor, 343; surrenders at Appomattox, 355; death, 370.
- Lee, Colonel Richard Henry, 150.
- Legislative Assembly, First, 47.
- Leisler, Jacob, 83.
- Lexington, battle of, 138.
- Lincoln, Abraham, election of, 295; inauguration, 305; administration of, 305-356; assassination of, 356.
- Lincoln, General, in command in the South, 167, 171.
- Little Belt*, 238.
- Locke, John, 90.
- London Company, 37; sent out a colony, 42; charter revoked, 50.
- Longfellow, Henry W., 418.
- Longstreet's steamboat, 235.
- Long Island, battle of, 152.
- Losses, 357.
- Loudon, Lord, 115.
- Louisburg, expedition against, 115; surrender of, 116.
- Louisiana, French claim to, 106; purchase of, 231; admitted, 250; secession of, 295; readmission of, 365.
- Lundys Lane, battle of, 246.
- M
- MacDonough, Commodore, on Lake Champlain, 246.
- Madison, James, elected President, 236; administration, 236-251; reelected, 242.
- Madison, Mrs., 247.
- Mafia, 395.
- Magellan, Ferdinand, 27.
- Magruder, General J. B., 311.
- Mail, line from Philadelphia, 78, 197.
- Maine, settlement of, 69; admission of, 257.
- Malvern Hill, battle of, 328.
- Manassas, first battle of, 311; second, 328.
- Manhattan Island, 79.
- Mansfield, battle of, 341.
- Mansion, colonial, 196.
- Marion, General Francis, 173, 174, 175, 180.
- Marquette, 106.
- Martial law in the South, 364.
- Maryland, settlement of, 75-78; invasion of, 344.
- Massachusetts Bay Colony, 58.
- Massachusetts, settlement of, 55-63; government, 59; laws, 60; cession of western territory, 203.
- Mason and Dixon's Line, 88.
- Mason, Captain John, 70.
- Mason, J. M., commissioner, 315.
- Mayflower*, 56.
- McClellan, General G. B., in western Virginia, 310, 314; before Richmond, 317; again in command, 329; death, 387.
- McCullough, General, 314; killed, 320.
- McDowell, battle of, 326.
- McDowell, General, 311.
- McKinley Bill, 394.
- McKinley, William, elected President, 405; administration of, 405.
- McMaster, J. B., 419.
- Meade, General, 324.
- Mechanicsville, battle of, 328.
- Mecklenburg Declaration, 142.
- Memorial Day, 365.
- Menendez founds St. Augustine, 80.
- Merrimac*, 322.
- Mexico independent of Spain, 276; war with, 280-284; fall of the city, 282.
- Michigan, admission of, 272.
- Mill Springs, battle of, 318.
- Milroy, General, 326.
- Minnesota, admission of, 295.
- Minuit, Peter, 79, 88.
- Missionary Ridge, battle of, 339.
- Mississippi, admission of, 255; secession of, 295; readmission of, 369.
- Mississippi River explored, 106; valley claimed by the French, 106.
- Missouri, admission of, 257.
- Missouri Compromise, 256.
- Missouri Territory organized, 250.
- Mobile, capture of, 351.
- Modoc war, 372.
- Money, continental, 205.
- Monitor*, 323.
- Monmouth, battle of, 165.
- Monroe Doctrine, 258.
- Monroe, James, 251; administration, 251-259.
- Montana, admission of, 392.
- Montcalm, Marquis, 115.
- Monterey, battle of, 281.
- Montreal, surrender of, 119, 146.
- Moores Creek, battle of, 148.
- Morgan, General, 157, 178.
- Morgan, John H., raid of, 337.
- Mormons, 293, 294.

Morris, Gouverneur, 207.  
 Morris, Robert, 205, 206.  
 Morse, Professor, 275.  
 Motley, John Lothrop, 419.  
 Motte, Rebecca, 180.  
 Moultrie, Colonel, 149.  
 Moultrie, Fort, battle of, 149.  
 Mound builders, 25.  
 Murfreesboro, battle of, 321.

## N

Napoleon I, 232, 238, 254.  
*Nashville*, 315.  
 Nashville, battle of, 349.  
 National Bank, 218, 250, 269.  
 Navigation Acts, 51, 125.  
 Navy, 239; victories of, 242; new, 396.  
 Nebraska, admission of, 368.  
 Necessity, Fort, 113.  
 Nevada, admission of, 352.  
 New Amsterdam, 79.  
 Newbern surrendered, 324.  
 New France, 31.  
 New Hampshire, 67; union with Massachusetts, 71.  
 New Haven settled, 67.  
 New Hope, battle of, 347.  
 New Jersey, settlement of, 84, 85.  
 New Netherlands, 79.  
 New Orleans, ceded to Spain, 119; battle of, 248; fall of, 321.  
 Newport, Captain, 42.  
 New Sweden, 88.  
 New York, Greater, 406.  
 New York, settlement of, 79-83.  
 Niagara, Fort, 114, 115.  
 Non-intercourse Act, 235.  
 North Anna, battle of, 343.  
 North Carolina, settlement of, 90-92; cession of western claims, 204; secession of, 308; readmission of, 365.  
 North Dakota, admission of, 392.  
 Northeastern boundary, 275.  
 Northmen, 11, 12.  
 Northwestern boundary, 279, 372.  
 Northwest Territory, 202, 203.  
 Nullification, 268.

## O

Oak Grove, battle of, 328.  
 Ocean Pond, or Olustee, battle of, 340.  
 Ocean steamer, 253.  
 Oglethorpe, James, 50.  
 Ohio, admission of, 231.  
 Okeechobee, battle of, 270.

Oklahoma opened for settlement, 392, 393.  
 Old Dominion, 50.  
 Omnibus Bill, 287.  
 Ontario, Fort, captured by Montcalm, 115.  
 Orange, Fort, 79.  
 "Orders in Council," 233.  
 Ordinance of 1787, 203; of secession, 295.  
 Oregon, admission of, 295.  
 Oregon Territory purchased, 253; organized, 280.  
 Oriskany, 158.  
 Osceola, 270.  
 Oswego, Fort, captured by Montcalm, 115.  
 Otis, James, 128.

## P

Pacific Slope, development of, 415, 416.  
 Pakenham, General, 248.  
 Palo Alto, battle of, 280.  
 Pan-American Congress, 394.  
 Panic, of 1837, 272; of 1873, 374.  
 Paris, treaty of, 119; 187.  
 Parker, John, at Lexington, 138.  
 Parson's Cause, 125.  
 Partisan leaders, 173.  
 Patroons, 81.  
 Paulus Hook, 182.  
 Peace commission, 164; commissioners, 297.  
 Pea Ridge, battle of, 320.  
 Pemberton, General, at Vicksburg, 336.  
 Peninsular campaign, 324-328.  
 Pennsylvania, settlement of, 85-88.  
 Penn, William, 85; treaty with Indians, 86.  
 People's party, 397.  
 Pequots, war with, 70, 71.  
 Perry, Commodore M. C., 292.  
 Perry, Oliver H., on Lake Erie, 243.  
 Personal liberty bills, 290.  
 Peruvians, 24.  
 Petersburg, siege of, 343; mine, 344.  
 Philadelphia, settlement of, 86; Howe's capture of, 162; British left, 165; the capital, 223.  
 Pickens, Colonel, 168.  
 Pierce, Franklin, elected President, 289; administration, 289-292.  
 Pilgrims, 55-58.  
 Pinckney, Charles C., 224, 226.  
 Pirates, 83.  
 Piteairn, Major, 138.  
 Pitt, Fort, 116.  
 Pitt, William, 115, 131.  
 Plattsburg, battle of, 246.  
 Plymouth Company, 37.  
 Plymouth, N.C., captured, 351.  
 Plymouth, settlement of, 57.  
 Pocahontas, 44, 45.

Poe, Edgar Allan, 418.  
 Point Levi, Wolfe at, 117.  
 Polke, James K., elected President, 279; administration, 279-285; death, 280.  
 Ponce de Leon, 26.  
 Pontiac's conspiracy, 120.  
 Pope, General John, in Virginia, 323.  
 Population of Great Britain, 136.  
 Population of the United States, 412.  
 Port Gibson, battle of, 336.  
 Port Republic, battle of, 327.  
 Powhatan, Indian chief, 44, 48.  
 Presidential succession, law of, 387.  
*President and Little Belt*, 238.  
 Prescott, Colonel, 144.  
 Prevost, General, 168; at Plattsburg, 246.  
 Price, General Sterling, in Missouri, 314; at Pea Ridge, 320.  
 Princeton, battle of, 155, 156.  
 Princeton University, 85.  
 Printing press, first, 60.  
 Proclamation, the king's, 146; of Cornwallis, 176.  
 Providence, settlement of, 64.  
 Pulaski, Count, 162; killed, 171.  
 Pulaski, Fort, taken, 324.  
 Puritans, 55-58.  
 Putnam, General Israel, 143; at the battle of Long Island, 152.

## Q

Quakers, 61; persecution of, 61; in New Jersey, 85.  
 Quebec, founding of, 33; expeditions against, 116, 117, 146.  
 Queen Anne's War, 107.  
 Quitrents, 94.

## R

Railroad, First, 271; development and extension of, 413.  
 Raleigh, Sir Walter, 35, 36.  
 Rawdon, Lord, 179.  
 Raynond, battle of, 336.  
 Reasons for war, Southern, 308; Northern, 309.  
 Red River campaign, 341.  
 Reduction of postage, 382.  
 Regulators, 132.  
 Religion, differences, 194.  
 Rents, 99.  
 Republicans, 218, 223, 259; National, 265; new Republican party, 292.  
 Resaca, battle of, 347.  
 Resaca de la Palma, battle of, 280.

Resources, Northern, 357; Southern, 357.  
 Retreat from New York, 153.  
 Returning boards, 376.  
 Revere, Paul, 137.  
 Rhode Island, settlement of, 63-65; invaded, 156, 167.  
 Richmond, siege of, 354; evacuation of, 354.  
 Rice, cultivation of, 94, 102.  
 Right of search, 233, 238.  
 Roanoke colonies, 36.  
 Rochambeau, Count, 183, 185.  
 Rosecrans, General, at Murfreesboro, 321; in Chattanooga, 338.  
 Ross, General, in Chesapeake Bay, 246; killed, 247.  
 Royal governments destroyed, 146.

## S

Sagas, 12.  
 Salem, 59.  
 Saltillo taken, 281.  
 Salzburgers, 100.  
 Santa Anna, General, 277, 283.  
 Santo Domingo, 18.  
 San Salvador discovered by Columbus, 16.  
 Saratoga, battles of, 158.  
*Savannah*, first ocean steamer, 253.  
 Sassacus, Indian chief, 70, 71.  
 Savages Station, battle of, 328.  
 Savannah, settlement of, 98; captured, 167; siege of, 171; evacuated, 350.  
 Saybrook, 65.  
 Schools, free, 54, 78; district, and "old field," 200.  
 Schuyler, Phillip, 143, 157.  
 Schuyler, Fort, 157.  
 Scientists, 420.  
 Scott, Colonel Winfield, in Canada, 246; removing the Indians, 261; in the Seminole war, 270; in Mexico, 281; in 1861, 311, 314.  
 Sculptors, 421.  
 Seal fisheries, 399, 400.  
 Search of American vessels, 233, 238.  
 Seat of government changed, 226.  
 Secession, 295.  
 Seceding states, 295; 308.  
 Sedition Law, 224.  
 Seminole war, 270.  
 Semmes, Captain Raphael, 351.  
*Serapis*, 171.  
 Seven Days' Battle, 327-328.  
 Seven Pines, battle of, 325.  
 Seven Years' War, 114.  
 Sevier, John, governor of Franklin, 204; at Kings Mountain, 176.  
 Sharpsburg, battle of, 329.  
 Shays's rebellion, 207.



- Sherman, William F., at Vicksburg, 337;  
from Chattanooga to Atlanta, 347-349;  
march to the sea, 350; through the Carolinas, 353; captures Johnston's army, 354.
- Sherman Silver Bill, 394, 399.
- Sheridan, General, in the Shenandoah valley, 345.
- Sherman-Johnston convention, 356.
- Shields, General, 326.
- Shiloh, battles of, 319.
- Ships, Confederate, 330.
- Sigel, General, 342, 343.
- Silk, production of, 102.
- Silver, demonetized, 374; Bland Bill, 379;  
Sherman Bill, 394; repeal of Silver Bill, 399.
- Six Nations, or Iroquois, subdued, 113, 166.
- Slavery, introduced, 48, 93; forbidden, 101;  
profitable in the South, 255; agitation of the  
slavery question, 285-298.
- Slave trade, 59, 209.
- Slidell, John, commissioner, 315.
- Sloughter, Governor, 83.
- Smith, Captain John, 42-45, 57.
- Smith, Colonel, 138.
- Smith, General Kirby, at Manassas, 311; in  
Kentucky, 320; in command of Trans-  
Mississippi department, 341.
- Smith, Governor Henry, 277.
- Smith, Joseph, founds Mormonism, 293.
- Smuggling, 126.
- Social life in the colonies, 195.
- Soldiers' Aid Societies, 331.
- "Sons of Liberty," 129, 142.
- South Carolina, settlement of, 93-96; con-  
quest of, 172; cession of western claims,  
204; secession, 295; readmission of, 365.
- South Dakota, admission of, 392.
- South, development of, 412, 413.
- Southern Confederacy, 295, 296; navy of, 315.
- Southern writers, 420.
- Specie payments resumed, 379.
- Spoils system, 266.
- Spottsylvania, battle of, 343.
- St. Augustine, colony at, 30.
- St. Clair, 157.
- St. Johns River, 32.
- St. Lawrence, discovery of, 32.
- St. Leger, Colonel, 157.
- Stamp Act, passed, 128; repealed, 131.
- Standard time, 383.
- Standish, Captain Miles, 57.
- Stanwix, Fort, 157.
- Stark, General, 158.
- "Star-Spangled Banner," 247.
- "Starving time," 45, 46.
- State rights, 267.
- Statue of Liberty, 390.
- Steamboats, invention of, 235; in the West,  
253.
- Stephens, Alexander H., 296.
- Steuben, Baron, 164.
- Stockton, Commodore, 252.
- Strikes, in 1873, 377, 378; in Chicago, 402.
- Stuart, General J. E. B., 327; succeeds  
Jackson, 333.
- Stuyvesant, Governor, 82.
- Subtreasury bill, 273.
- Sullivan, General, 166, 167.
- Sumter*, 315.
- Sumter, Colonel, 173; defeat, 175.
- Sumter, Fort, 306; fall of, 307; bombard-  
ment, 339.
- Sunbury, 168.
- Supreme Court, 212.
- Surrender of Lee's army, 355.
- Sympathy for Boston, 135.

## T

- Tariff, 216; protective, 263, 264, 391, 394;  
revised, 399, 405.
- Tarleton, Colonel, 175, 178, 179.
- Taxes, 51, 131, 132.
- Taylor, General Richard, at Mansfield, 341;  
succeeds Hood, 349.
- Taylor, Zachary, in the Seminole war, 270;  
in the Rio Grande, 280; administration of,  
286-288; death, 288.
- Tecumseh, 237; killed, 244.
- Telegraph, 275; message sent around the  
world, 404, 405.
- Telephone, 375.
- Tennessee, admission of, 222; secession, 308;  
readmission, 364.
- Tenure of Office Bill, 368.
- Territorial growth, 412.
- Territory of the Southwest, 204.
- Texas, 106; settlement of, 276; independence  
of, 276; annexation, 277; secession, 295;  
readmission of, 369.
- Thames, battle of, 244.
- Thanksgiving Day, 58.
- Thirteenth Amendment, 364.
- Thomas, General, in Kentucky, 318.
- Ticonderoga, Fort, English campaigns  
against, 117; Allen and Arnold's capture  
of, 143; Burgoyne's capture of, 157.
- Tilden, Samuel J., 376.
- Tinder box and matches, 198.
- Tippecanoe, battle of, 237.
- Tobacco, first used, 36; in Virginia, 47, 125,  
126; carried to market, 197.
- Toleration Act passed, 78.
- Tomochichi, 99, 101.

Totem, The, 24.  
 Treaty, of Paris, 119, 187; Jay's, 221; of peace with France, 225; of peace with England, 248; of Washington, 372.  
 Trent affair, 315.  
 Trenton, battle of, 154.  
 Tripoli, war with, 229.  
 Troup, Governor, 260.  
 Tryon, royal governor, 132; in Connecticut, 181.  
 Turner, Nat, 271.  
 Tyler, John, 275; administration, 275-279.

## U

Union Pacific Railroad, 373.  
 Utah, admission of, 403.

## V

Valley Campaign, 326.  
 Valley Forge, Washington's army at, 163.  
 Van Buren, Martin, 272; administration of, 272-274.  
 Van Dorn, General, in the West, 320.  
 Vasco da Gama, 20.  
 Venango, Fort, 109.  
 Venezuela and the Monroe doctrine, 403.  
 Vera Cruz surrendered, 282.  
 Vermont, settlement of, 69; admission of, 222.  
 Verrazano, 31.  
 Vespucci, Amerigo, 20.  
 Vicksburg, siege of, 335, 336; surrender, 337.  
 Vinland, 12.  
*Virginia*, 322, 323; destroyed, 325.  
 Virginia and Kentucky resolutions, 225.  
 Virginia, named, 35; settlement of, 42-54; the Valley, 54; cession of territory, 203; secession of, 308; readmission of, 369.

## W

War: Pequot, 70-71; King Philip's, 72-73; French and Indian, 109-121; Revolutionary, 125-189; with Tripoli, 229; war of 1812, 239-250; with Algiers, 250; Black Hawk, 266; with Mexico, 279-284; between the states, 305-358; Sioux, 373.  
 War between the states, 305-358; events of 1861, 305-316; events of 1862, 316-331; events of 1863, 332-340; events of 1864, 340-352; events of 1865, 353-358.  
 War debt, 358.  
 Ward, General Artemas, 144.  
 Washington, city of, 218, 226.  
 Washington, Fort, surrendered, 153.  
 Washington, George, journey to the French fort, 109; at Fort Necessity, 113; with General Braddock, 114; commander in chief at Boston, 145; captures Boston, 147; retreats from New York, 153; at Trenton

and Princeton, 154, 155; at Morristown, 156; at Brandywine, 161; at Germantown, 162; at Valley Forge, 163; at Monmouth, 165; at Morristown, 182; joins Rochambeau, 185; at Yorktown, 186; farewell to the army, 188; presides over the convention, 208; elected President, 215; administration of, 215-223; death, 225.  
 Washington, state, admission of, 392.  
 Washington treaty, 372.  
 Wayne, General Anthony, at Stony Point, 182; in the Northwest, 222.  
 Weather bureau, 370.  
 Webster, Daniel, 267, 268; death, 239.  
 Wentworth, Governor, 69.  
 Wesleys, 101.  
 West, the, 230; development of, 413, 414.  
 West Virginia, admission of, 339.  
 Whigs, 151, 265, 279.  
 Whisky insurrection, 220.  
 White, Captain John, 36.  
 Whitefield, Rev. George, 102.  
 White Oak Swamp, battle of, 328.  
 White Plains, 153.  
 Whitney, Eli, 219.  
 Whittier, John G., 418.  
 Wilderness, battle of, 342.  
 William and Mary College, 53.  
 William Henry, Fort, surrendered, 115.  
 Williamsburg, 135, 146; battle of, 325.  
 Williams, Mrs. Mary A., 365.  
 Williams, Roger, 63-65, 70.  
 Wilkes, Captain, 315.  
 Wilmington, fall of, 353.  
 Wilmot Proviso, 285.  
 Wilson tariff bill, 399.  
 Winchester, battle of, 327.  
 Windsor, settlement of, 66.  
 Winthrop, Governor, 59.  
 Wisconsin, admission of, 235.  
 Witchcraft, 74.  
 Wolfe, General, 116, 117.  
 Wool, General, in Mexico, 281.  
 World's Fair, 400, 401.  
 Wright, Governor, 146.  
 Writs of Assistance, 127.  
 Wyoming, admission of, 392.  
 Wyoming Valley, 166.

## X

X. Y. Z. correspondence, 224.

## Y

Yellow fever, 379.  
 Yemassee war, 96.  
 Yorktown, siege of, 185; surrender of, 186.  
 Young, Brigham, 294.

# GEOGRAPHY

---

## Natural Elementary Geography

By JACQUES W. REDWAY, F.R.G.S. Linen Binding, Quarto, 144 pages. With numerous Maps and Illustrations . . . . . Price, 60 cents

The publication of the Natural Elementary Geography marks a new era in the study and teaching of geography. Some of the important features which distinguish this book from all other primary geographies are:

**Central Idea.**—The study of man in his geographic relations, leading to the industrial and commercial treatment of countries and cities.

**Method**—Development of the subject in a perfectly natural manner; hence the title—the Natural Series of Geographies.

**Treatment.**—Simple, inductive, and progressive.

**Maps.**—The physical relief maps and colored political maps are distinct and easily read. Those of corresponding divisions are drawn on a uniform scale to facilitate direct comparison of areas.

**Illustrations.**—The subject-matter is made clear and impressive by attractive and appropriate pictures on almost every page.

**Other Special Features.**—Topical outlines for language work; exercises in correlation and comparisons; natural subdivisions of continents and countries; use of suggestive questions, etc.

THE NATURAL ADVANCED GEOGRAPHY is in preparation.

An Illustrated Circular describing the plan and method of the Natural Elementary Geography will be sent free to any address on application.

---

*Copies of the Natural Elementary Geography will be sent prepaid to any address, on receipt of the price, by the Publishers:*

American Book Company

New York

Cincinnati

Chicago

## Carpenter's Geographical Reader—Asia

By FRANK G. CARPENTER. Cloth, 12mo, 304 pages. With colored Maps and numerous Illustrations.

**Price, 60 cents**

In the interest of its subjects, as well as in its artistic, literary, and mechanical execution, this new Geographical Reader is by far the most attractive and noteworthy book of its kind. It combines in one volume studies in geography to supplement the regular text-books in use, and a book of travels adapted to serve as a reading book in school or in the home.

The studies in geography are not mere compilations from other books, or stories of imaginary travels, but are based on actual travel and personal observation. The author, who is an experienced traveler and writer, has given interesting and vivacious descriptions of his recent extended journeys through the different countries of Asia, together with graphic pictures of their native peoples, just as they are found to-day in their homes and at their work. This has been done in such simple language and charming manner as to make each chapter in the book as entertaining as a story.

The interest and effectiveness of the book are greatly enhanced by the illustrations found on almost every page. These are all new, being mostly reproductions from photographs taken by the author on the ground. The book is also well supplied with maps of Asia and all the countries described.

---

*Copies of Carpenter's Geographical Reader will be sent, prepaid, to any address, on receipt of the price, by the Publishers :*

**American Book Company**

New York



Cincinnati



Chicago

# Elementary English

---

The following books are adapted for beginners in the study of Language and Composition :

## LONG'S

New Language Exercises. Part I. . . . .	20 cents
New Language Exercises. Part II. . . . .	25 cents
Lessons in English (Grammar and Composition) . . . . .	35 cents

## MAXWELL'S

First Book in English . . . . .	40 cents
---------------------------------	----------

## METCALF AND BRIGHT'S

Language Lessons. Part I. . . . .	35 cents
Language Lessons. Part II. . . . .	55 cents

## METCALF'S

Elementary English . . . . .	40 cents
------------------------------	----------

## SWINTON'S

Language Primer . . . . .	28 cents
Language Lessons . . . . .	38 cents
School Composition . . . . .	32 cents

## Language Tablets and Blanks

### NATIONAL

Language Tablets. 15 Nos. . . . .	Per dozen, 90 cents
-----------------------------------	---------------------

### STICKNEY'S

Child's Book of Language. 4 Nos. . . . .	Each, 8 cents
Letters and Lessons in Language. 4 Nos. . . . .	Each, 16 cents
The Same. No. 5. Grammar . . . . .	35 cents

### WARD'S

Grammar Blanks. 2 Nos. . . . .	Per dozen, 90 cents
--------------------------------	---------------------

These Tablets and Blanks supply a great variety of graded exercises for practice and review in Language Lessons, Grammar and Composition. Their use will economize the time of both pupil and teacher.

---

*Specimen copies of any of the above books will be sent prepaid to any address, on receipt of the price, by the Publishers :*

American Book Company

New York



Cincinnati



Chicago



# English Grammar

---

## Conklin's English Grammar and Composition

Cloth, 12mo. 296 pages . . . . . 60 cents

A complete graded course in Grammar and Composition for Intermediate or Grammar School grades.

## Harvey's Elementary Grammar and Composition—Revised

Cloth, 12mo. 160 pages . . . . . 42 cents

## Harvey's Practical English Grammar—Revised

Cloth, 12mo. 272 pages . . . . . 65 cents

A practical and systematic course in language study, including Language Lessons, Composition and English Grammar.

## Maxwell's First Book in English

Cloth, 12mo. 176 pages . . . . . 40 cents

## Maxwell's Introductory Lessons in English Grammar

Cloth, 12mo. 172 pages . . . . . 40 cents

A brief graded course in English for Elementary and Grammar grades.

## Metcalf's Elementary English

Cloth, 12mo. 200 pages . . . . . 40 cents

## Metcalf's English Grammar

Cloth, 12mo. 288 pages . . . . . 60 cents

A logical and progressive series based on the inductive method. Adapted for use in graded or ungraded schools.

## Swinton's New English Grammar

Cloth, 12mo. 256 pages . . . . . 56 cents

A working class book for the study and practice of English.

## FOR ADVANCED CLASSES

## Baskervill and Sewell's English Grammar

Cloth, 12mo. 349 pages . . . . . 90 cents

An advanced English Grammar based on the actual use of the language. For use in High School, Academy and College classes.

## Maxwell's Advanced Lessons in English Grammar

Cloth, 12mo. 334 pages . . . . . 60 cents

For use in higher Grammar classes and High Schools.

## Lyte's English Grammar and Composition

Cloth, 12mo. 270 pages . . . . . 65 cents

---

*Copies of any of the above books will be sent prepaid to any address, on receipt of the price, by the Publishers:*

American Book Company

New York

Cincinnati

Chicago

# Eclectic School Readings

---

A carefully graded collection of fresh, interesting, and instructive supplementary readings for young children. The books are well and copiously illustrated by the best artists, and are handsomely bound in cloth.

## Folk-Story Series

Lane's Stories for Children

First Reader Grade. 12mo, 104 pages . . . 25 cents

Baldwin's Fairy Stories and Fables

Second Reader Grade. 12mo, 176 pages . . . 35 cents

Baldwin's Old Greek Stories

Third Reader Grade. 12mo, 208 pages . . . 45 cents

## Famous Story Series

Baldwin's Fifty Famous Stories Retold

Second Reader Grade. 12mo, 172 pages . . . 35 cents

Baldwin's Old Stories of the East

Third Reader Grade. 12mo, 215 pages . . . 45 cents

Defoe's Robinson Crusoe

Fourth Reader Grade. 12mo, 246 pages . . . 50 cents

Clarke's Arabian Nights

Fourth Reader Grade. 12mo, 271 pages . . . 60 cents

## Historical Story Series

Eggleston's Stories of Great Americans

Second Reader Grade. 12mo, 159 pages . . . 40 cents

Eggleston's Stories of American Life and Adventure

Third Reader Grade. 12mo, 214 pages . . . 50 cents

Guerber's Story of the Greeks

Fourth Reader Grade. 12mo, 288 pages . . . 60 cents

Guerber's Story of the Romans

Fourth Reader Grade. 12mo, 288 pages . . . 60 cents

Guerber's Story of the Chosen People

Fourth Reader Grade. 12mo, 240 pages . . . 60 cents

Clarke's Story of Troy

Fourth Reader Grade. 12mo, 255 pages . . . 60 cents

## Natural History Series

Kelly's Short Stories of Our Shy Neighbors

Third Reader Grade. 12mo, 214 pages . . . 50 cents

Dana's Plants and Their Children

Fourth Reader Grade. 12mo, 272 pages . . . 65 cents

---

*Copies of any of these books will be sent prepaid to any address, on receipt of the price, by the Publishers:*

American Book Company

New York

Cincinnati

Chicago

# Business Forms and Letter Writing

---

## **Eaton's Business Forms, Customs and Accounts**

By Seymour Eaton, Director of the Department of Business, Drexel Institute. Quarto . . . . . **\$1.00**

This is a book of blank business forms, being exact facsimiles of those used in common business transactions, such as orders for goods, bills of all kinds, statements of accounts, checks, pay rolls, receipts, bank deposit tickets, telegrams, business correspondence, etc.

## **Eaton's Exercise Manual of Business Forms**

Designed to accompany Eaton's Business Forms, containing appropriate material and directions for filling out each of the blanks in the Form Book. Boards, 12mo, 110 pages . . . . . **50 cents**

**Key to Eaton's Business Forms, etc.** . . . . . **50 cents**

## **Ward's Letter Writing and Business Forms.** Four Numbers.

Numbers 1 and 2 . . . . . Each **10 cents**

Numbers 3 and 4 . . . . . Each **15 cents**

A graded series of books for elementary schools, designed to teach letter writing, business forms, rules of punctuation, and the proper use of capitals. No. 1 includes letters and bills; No. 2, letters, receipts, and accounts; No. 3, notes, drafts, and letters; No. 4, business correspondence and business forms.

## **Appletons' Business Series of Copy Books.** Three Numbers.

Numbers 1 and 2 . . . . . Per doz. **\$1.20**

Number 3 . . . . . Per doz. **96 cents**

For the higher grades in public schools, academies, and high schools. The course includes exercises in the different forms of commercial paper, business correspondence, etc.

## **Spencerian Business Course**

Numbers 8, 9, 10 and 11 . . . . . Per doz. **96 cents**

A series of copy books for higher grades, uniting business forms and bookkeeping with a practical course in penmanship. No. 8 includes ordinary business writing and business forms; No. 9, single entry bookkeeping; No. 10, connected business forms; No. 11, double entry bookkeeping.

---

*Specimen copies of any of the above books will be sent prepaid to any address, on receipt of the price, by the Publishers:*

**American Book Company**

New York

Cincinnati

Chicago

# Fisher's Brief History of the Nations

## AND OF THEIR PROGRESS IN CIVILIZATION

By GEORGE PARK FISHER, LL.D.

Professor in Yale University

Cloth, 12mo, 613 pages, with numerous Illustrations, Maps, Tables, and Reproductions of Bas-reliefs, Portraits, and Paintings. Price, \$1.50

---

This is an entirely new work written expressly to meet the demand for a compact and acceptable text-book on General History for high schools, academies, and private schools. Some of the distinctive qualities which will commend this book to teachers and students are as follows:

It narrates in fresh, vigorous, and attractive style the most important facts of history in their due order and connection.

It explains the nature of historical evidence, and records only well established judgments respecting persons and events.

It delineates the progress of peoples and nations in civilization as well as the rise and succession of dynasties.

It connects, in a single chain of narration, events related to each other in the contemporary history of different nations and countries.

It gives special prominence to the history of the Mediæval and Modern Periods, — the eras of greatest import to modern students.

It is written from the standpoint of the present, and incorporates the latest discoveries of historical explorers and writers.

It is illustrated by numerous colored maps, genealogical tables, and artistic reproductions of architecture, sculpture, painting, and portraits of celebrated men, representing every period of the world's history.

---

*Copies of Fisher's Brief History of the Nations will be sent prepaid to any address, on receipt of the price, by the Publishers :*

American Book Company

New York

Cincinnati

Chicago

# General History

---

## Appletons' School History of the World

By JOHN D. QUACKENBOS, A.M. Cloth, 12mo. 492 pages, \$1.22

A comprehensive history of the world from the earliest ages to the present time, written in a clear, concise and interesting style, and copiously illustrated with numerous maps and engravings.

## Barnes's Brief General History of the World

By J. DORMAN STEELE and ESTHER B. STEELE.

Cloth, 12mo. 642 pages, . . . . . \$1.60

A complete history of ancient, mediæval and modern peoples, as interesting to the general reader as it is valuable as a text-book. Whether considered for its choice of material, its teaching quality, its charm of style or its richness of illustration, this book stands preëminent as a manual for the class room or for the general reader. It is one of the best known and most widely used text-books on the subject.

## Fisher's Brief History of the Nations

By GEORGE PARK FISHER, LL.D.

Cloth, 12mo. 613 pages, with Illustrations, etc., . . . \$1.50

This is an entirely new work, specially prepared to meet the needs of High School students and general readers. It presents in compact form a graphic and impressive delineation of the world's progress in civilization from the earliest historical period down to the present time. It is by far the most attractive, impartial, and trustworthy text-book on the subject ever written.

## Swinton's Outlines of the World's History

By WM. SWINTON. Revised Edition. Cloth, 12mo. 510 pages, \$1.44

This is a work on ancient, mediæval and modern history, with special reference to the history of civilization and the progress of mankind. It is inspiring to the student and its use will stimulate him to wider reading and research.

## Thalheimer's General History

By M. E. THALHEIMER.

Revised Edition. Cloth, 12mo. 448 pages, . . . . . \$1.20

These outlines of General History aim to combine brevity with a clear and simple narrative. The large number of sketch and colored maps and apposite illustrations constitute an important feature of the book, greatly adding to its value as a text-book or for reference.

---

*Copies of any of these books will be sent, prepaid, to any address on receipt of the price by the Publishers :*

American Book Company

New York

Cincinnati

Chicago

(39) **R D - 232**



# Popular Books for Young Readers

---

## Dana's Plants and their Children

By Mrs. WILLIAM STARR DANA, author of "How to Know the Wild Flowers." Illustrated by Alice Josephine Smith.

Cloth, 12mo. 265 pages . . . . . 65 cents

## Kelly's Short Stories of Our Shy Neighbors

By Mrs. M. A. B. KELLY.

Cloth, 12mo. Illustrated. 214 pages . . . . . 50 cents

## McGuffey's Natural History Readers

Two books, 12mo. Illustrated.

McGuffey's Familiar Animals and their Wild Kindred 50 cents

McGuffey's Living Creatures of Water, Land, and Air 50 cents

## Lockwood's Animal Memoirs

By SAMUEL LOCKWOOD, Ph.D. Two books, 12mo. Illustrated.

Part I. Mammals. 317 pages . . . . . 60 cents

Part II. Birds. 397 pages . . . . . 60 cents

## Treat's Home Studies in Nature

By Mrs. MARY TREAT.

Cloth, 12mo. 244 pages . . . . . 90 cents

Part I.—Observations on Birds. Part II.—Habits of Insects.

Part III.—Plants that Consume Animals. Part IV.—Flowering Plants.

## Monteith's Popular Science Reader

By JAMES MONTEITH.

Cloth, 12mo. 360 pages . . . . . 75 cents

## The Geographical Reader and Primer

Cloth, 12mo. 298 pages . . . . . 60 cents

## Johonnot's Geographical Reader

By JAMES JOHONNOT.

Cloth, 12mo. 418 pages . . . . . \$1.00

## Shepherd's Historical Readings

By HENRY E. SHEPHERD, A.M.

Cloth, 12mo. 345 pages . . . . . \$1 00

---

*Copies of any of these books will be sent prepaid to any address, on receipt of the price, by the Publishers :*

American Book Company

New York

Cincinnati

Chicago

# Pupils' Outline Studies

IN THE

## HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES

BY  
FRANCIS H. WHITE, A.M.

Paper, Square Octavo, 128 pages . . . Price, 30 cents

---

This is a book of Outline Studies, Maps and Blanks, intended for use in connection with the study of United States History. It contains an original and systematic combination of devices consisting of outline maps, graphic charts, and blanks for historical tables and summaries, for the reproduction of pictures, for biographical sketches, for studies in civil government, etc. It also contains valuable suggestions to teachers and pupils, and carefully selected lists of historical books and authorities for collateral reading and reference.

Its use will encourage the pupil to observe closely, to select the leading and salient facts of history, to classify his knowledge, to investigate for himself, and to carry his investigations up to recognized authorities and even to original sources. It also furnishes opportunity and material for the best exercises and training in English Composition.

The book is conveniently arranged for either class or individual instruction and may be used in connection with any text-book on United States History.

---

*Copies of White's Pupils' Outline Studies will be sent prepaid to any address, on receipt of the price, by the Publishers:*

American Book Company

New York  
(28)

• Cincinnati •

Chicago















DOBBS BROS.  
LIBRARY BINDING

OCT 79  
ST. AUGUSTINE



FLA.

32084

LIBRARY OF CONGRESS



0 011 448 681 4

